This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

UC-NRLF
$B 310 805

BELLUM HELVETICUM

GIFT

117 Wallenrod Berkley 1795

THE LIBRARY
OF
THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

IN MEMORY OF

PROFESSOR WILLIAM MERRILL
AND
MRS. IMOGENE MERRILL

Inter-Collegiate Latin Series.

BELLUM HELVETICUM

FOR BEGINNERS IN LATIN.

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE READING OF LATIN AUTHORS, BASED ON THE INDUCTIVE METHOD AND ILLUSTRATING THE FORMS AND CONSTRUCTIONS OF CLASSICAL LATIN PROSE.

BY

CORNELIUS MARSHAL LOWE, PH. D.
HEIDELBERG UNIVERSITY

AND

NATHANIEL BUTLER, JR., M. A.
UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO.

CHICAGO:
ALBERT, SCOTT AND CO.
1894.

GIFT
Merrill

Copyright 1894,
BY ALBERT, SCOTT & CO.

WHEATON COLLEGE PRESS
WHEATON, ILLINOIS.

PA2096
L69

CONTENTS.

	Page
Introduction	5
To Teachers	11
Caesar and the Helvetian War	14
Abbreviations and References	16
Introductory Lesson	17
Pensa I.–LXXXII.	22
Capita 15–29	201
Connected Text, Chapters 1–29	245
Appendix	264
Latin-English Vocabulary	289
Glossary	305

M684051

INTRODUCTION

THIS book has been prepared to satisfy the demand of many teachers that the Latin be made, at the beginning, a living subject for the student; and that the ability to compose and think in Latin be developed, along with translating and the acquiring of grammatical principles.

Its present form is due to a close observation of the needs of the student as determined by the actual use of these lessons in the class-room in years past, and to the uniformly resulting increase in enthusiasm, thoroughness, and amount of work done by the student.

To master the Latin, the Latin itself must be used. To the English student the theory must be presented in English, but the class-room practice may be largely in Latin, and thus the student will become familiar with the language by using it in thought and speech. To bring the student to this familiar use of the Latin the following plan is pursued.

First: Immediately after the text, the meaning of the Latin words, as they occur in the order of the text, is given in English, and the student is required to give both the English equivalent for the Latin and the Latin for the English as pronounced by the teacher. Each vocabulary contains an entirely new set of words. It is expected that the pupil will thoroughly master the words of each lesson, so that he will recognize them as they occur again and again in the text. This saves the time of the student—so often wasted

in repeatedly looking up the same word—strengthens the memory, cultivates the attention, and secures accurate knowledge. The general vocabulary at the end of the book should be unnecessary, except, perhaps, for words which rarely occur.

Second: The study of the composition of Latin words is early introduced and persistently continued. The derivation of English words from the Latin is considered of such great importance that a call for such derivative words is affixed to each vocabulary.

Third: The text of the first twenty-nine chapters of Caesar's Gallic War (up to the end of the Helvetian War) is used as presenting a model of perfect Latinity, sufficiently simple in form and structure for the beginner. It affords an illustration of the most important principles of the language, and prepares the student for a further study of Caesar. After thoroughly learning the words and translating into English, the student is advised to memorize the text for a few lessons, for the purpose of securing a model for the order of words as well as fixing the pronunciation. This may not be deemed advisable by all teachers; but it is earnestly urged, as essential to entire thoroughness, that the student become so familiar with the text that he can give the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English when pronounced by the teacher. The text of the twenty-nine chapters, given connectedly after the lessons, will be found convenient for reviews.

Fourth: For the convenience of teachers, and to give definite direction to the student's work, the substance of the text is given in short portions in dictation exercises,—the student being required to translate orally as pronounced by the teacher. This gives opportunity to vary forms and constructions, fixes the meaning of words, and insures familiarity with the text. The matter given in these exercises can easily be modified and extended at the pleasure of the instructor.

Fifth: The same text is used as the basis for English sen-

tences to be written in Latin. While the thought of the passage is retained in these sentences, their structure is so varied from the original as to afford thorough grammatical drill. No new words are introduced in this exercise, that no time may be lost in looking them up. This abundant practice, with Caesarian models fresh in the mind of the student, produces readiness in Latin composition and a correct style.

Sixth: The text is treated a fourth time in questions in Latin to be answered in Latin by the student. These questions, sometimes grammatical, sometimes on the facts of the passage under discussion, promote that mastery of the language which is to be attained only by its use in this way. These questions are suggestive, and the teacher can vary them and increase their number, so as to give a large part of the instruction in this form if he desires.

Seventh: Paradigms of declensions and conjugations with the principles of syntax are introduced gradually, after the student has acquired words and sentences illustrating these forms and principles. The book is complete without a grammar, but references are continually made to the leading grammars, and the student is encouraged to study by subjects from illustrative examples. Each principle is explained but once, and when illustrations of the same fact appear, reference is made by figures to the first example and explanation. The explanations of the text and of grammatical principles are given in notes in connection with each lesson. These notes are to be thoroughly learned and recited, to insure thoroughness and prevent waste of time in frequently referring to the same subject.

No apology is offered for the use of words and terms in the colloquial exercises which are not found in classical authors, but only in grammars and commentaries. The use of such words and terms is necessary to conversation in Latin, and a knowledge of the later Latin is to be desired rather than to be avoided.

The authors desire to acknowledge their indebtedness to those who have kindly assisted them by reviewing the work and offering suggestions. Special thanks are due to Professors S. C. Derby of the Ohio State University; M. L. Fox, of the Chicago Manual Training School; Ernest Sicard, of the Chicago High Schools; W. W. Troup, of Carthage College; J. D. S. Riggs, of Granville Academy, O.; and the late M. M. Fisher, D. D., LL. D., of the University of Missouri.

The favorable reception of this book by so many teachers, in the first year of its publication, and their co-operation in furnishing corrections for succeeding issues, calls for grateful recognition on the part of the authors. The statement of Conditional Sentences (General and Future) and of *cum* clauses has been modified in accordance with the treatment of Professor W. G. Hale in his Cornell University Studies in Philology.

INTRODUCTION TO THE REVISED EDITION

The hearty welcome accorded to Bellum Helveticum upon its first publication in 1889 and the results obtained from its widely increased use in succeeding years have demonstrated the correctness and value of its methods. The present revision seeks to embody more completely and clearly the principles commended in the 'Introduction' and in the remarks 'To Teachers.'

Additional aid has been given to enable students, immature in years or preparation, to proceed with greater facility and pleasure in the mastery of the difficult beginnings of the Latin tongue. The importance of the methods explained in the 'Introduction' and remarks 'To Teachers' is emphasized by their renewed insertion. Each division in all the lessons with the Vocabulary, text and Appendix, has been subjected to a careful review.

The following are some of the more important features of this revision:

Shortening of many of the lessons.

Conformation of all the lessons to the same general form.

Exhibition of all the grammatical forms in the body of the successive lessons.

Additional notes, references, and practice exercises for all difficult constructions, especially for Indirect Discourse.

Insertion of maps and illustrative cuts of weapons and armor.

The text carefully revised, made consistent throughout, and distinguished in the lessons by more prominent type.

Marking of all long vowels.

Additions in the vocabularies of definitions and of words helpful in conversational exercises.

A more perfect presentation of the principles of syntax in the Appendix, making it more complete as an elementary grammar for the first year in Latin.

Many teachers have co-operated in the revision by their suggestions on the general plan and on special passages. For this valued service the authors make grateful acknowledgement.

Dr. W. G. Hale has urged the marking of all long vowels as necessary to ensure a correct pronunciation without expenditure of time. Professor G. W. Barber has placed at our disposal his valuable Latin charts and read the proofs of the book. Professor Geo. E. Mellor has made valuable suggestions on the presentation of the verb. The earlier part of the proof has been read by Professor Omar Wilson, Butler University, Ind.; Mr. George M. Davison, Seattle High School, Wash.; Miss Alice E. Brown, Lafayette High School, Ind.; Miss Arletta Warren, Aurora High School, Ill.; Principal C. T. Meredith, Union High School, Azusa, Cal. Professor Hiram H. Bice of the St. Joseph (Mo.) High School has read the entire proofs, and in the conversational exercises we have had the benefit of the practical and thorough scholarship of Professor Arcade Mogyorossy, of Philadelphia, editor of *Tusculum*. It is believed that the result of these joint labors is a nearer approach to the ideal Latin book for beginners.

TO TEACHERS

The lessons are intended to be studied in the order in which they occur, and in general it will be well to follow the order of the divisions as laid down. Explain in advance *how the lesson should be studied,* and direct the student's attention to the special points to be considered.

Insist from the beginning upon a correct pronunciation, and secure a ready and intelligent reading of the Latin text.

Require a thorough mastery of the vocabularies, and of each form and principle as taken up, and then review, *review,* REVIEW. Besides a daily review, have a general examination as often as once a month. In daily review much of the work may be done rapidly by the class in concert.

In the recitation of the lesson,—

1. Pronounce the words in the vocabularies, and require the pupil to give not only the English definitions but also Latin equivalent as the corresponding English is pronounced. If there are English derivatives, or nearly synonymous Latin words, let them be given in connection with each new word.

2. After translation (see 6. below) and the recitation of any memorized passages, break up the text of the lesson into short passages, and let the pupil answer as the words are pronounced by the teacher. This exercise should be mainly English into Latin, using the exercise presented in the lesson, or abridging, extending or otherwise varying it, so that the pupil will have such a complete knowledge of the text that he will promptly render English into Latin or Latin into English as soon as the words of either language are pronounced.

3. The writing of the prescribed sentences, both in an exercise book and on the blackboard, should be required throughout all the lessons.

4. The exercise for questioning in Latin, like the dictation exercise, is intended to be suggestive, and can easily be varied and amplified. This is a most inspiring as well as a most profitable exercise. The Glossary furnishes terms necessary for its extension.

5. The principles and facts of the notes should be thoroughly learned and recited. Although frequent references are made to the same principle, it should not be necessary for the student to occupy his time in turning to the first explanation.

6. In translating, the student should be taught to ascertain the thought in the Latin order, and first translate the words literally, just as they stand in the text, noting the grammatical form of each word and all its possible constructions. Thus, *Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent comparāre*, etc., should come to the mind in the order of the original: "By these things led and by the influence of Orgetorix thoroughly roused, they determined, those things which to departing pertained, to prepare." An excellent exercise for training the student to use the Latin order and prevent his picking out words in the attempt to find an English order, is to take a sentence (the teacher giving the meaning of the first form of unfamiliar words) and write it on the blackboard one word at a time, calling upon the student to give the meaning, word by word, as the sentence progresses. Here the student should be taught to think of the possible constructions of each word and to anticipate the following words, and yet reserve his decision until the end of the sentence is reached.* After the thought has been ascertained

*This method is explained and illustrated in Professor W. G. Hale's pamphlet, "The Art of Reading Latin," published by Ginn & Co., in 1887; and there are valuable suggestions in the same line in the article "On Reading Latin" in "Allen's Latin Method," copyrighted by the same firm in 1876.

in the Latin order, and it is desired to translate into English, teachers should insist that good idiomatic English be used and purely Latin idioms avoided. Thus the frequent use of the perfect passive participle in Latin is not to be imitated in English, but an active participle, or more frequently a clause, should be used instead; the Subjunctive must be rendered more frequently by the indicative or infinitive than by the potential, the auxiliaries of the potential are to be employed in the translation of *possum* and *licet*. A translation that fails to transfer the Latin idioms into good idiomatic English is but half a translation. The student's knowledge of his own language and his further mastery of it demand that all translations shall be made in the purest idiomatic English. A translation is by no means always necessary, as the teacher can easily judge whether the pupil has an intelligent grasp of the author's meaning, by the manner in which the Latin is read, and by questions in Latin on syntax and subject matter. And he can generally make the subject clear to the student by a proper reading of the text and explanation in Latin; provided, of course, that the student is familiar with the forms and meanings of the words.

The division into lessons has been made, largely, in reference to convenience in dividing the text or in the presentation of a subject with a general average of ten new words daily. As a rule, this number, with the related facts, can be readily and thoroughly learned. However, no rule in regard to the length of lessons can be absolute, except the imperative one that it be so measured to the capabilities of the class as to insure its complete mastery. With favorable circumstances, the work here laid down has been completed in two-thirds of a college year. The mastery of the contents of this book, however, represents a considerably greater knowledge of the language than is usually acquired in one year, and so much time should be taken, if necessary, to assure its thorough completion.

CAESAR AND THE HELVETIAN WAR

The name of Caius Julius Caesar has been called the greatest in history. He was Rome's greatest general. He laid the foundation of an empire which ruled the world for centuries, and from which have sprung, in a large degree, the modern nations of Europe. Although continually occupied with war and politics, he was also great in literature. We possess his two most important works, the "Commentaries on the Gallic War," which describe the conquest of Gaul, and the "Commentaries on the Civil War," which record his struggles with Pompey. The style of his works is characterized by great simplicity, conciseness, and vigor. Written also in the purest Latin, they furnish excellent models for the study of the language.

When Caesar was forty-two years old,—that is, in the year 58 B. C.,—he set out for Gaul, ostensibly for the purpose of protecting Roman territory, but as the event showed, for the subjugation of the land. In nine years he subdued the whole of Gaul, and converted it into a Roman province. In the campaigns of these nine years he disciplined and attached to himself an army which afterward made him the master of Rome. The first Gallic people which Caesar encountered were the Helvetii, the inhabitants of modern Switzerland. The Helvetii thought their country was too small, and besides were harassed by the neighboring tribes of Germany, and so resolved to seek wider limits and a more peaceful home to the west, on the borders of the ocean. Before leav-

ing their country they provided themselves plentifully with provisions, and burned all their houses, some four hundred villages and twelve walled towns. By appointment they met at the southern point of Lake Geneva. There they assembled in the spring of 58 B. C., to the number of three hundred and sixty-eight thousand, of whom ninety-two thousand were men-at-arms. Under modern civilization, the same country now supports a population of two millions eight hundred and fifty thousand.

At Lake Geneva the Helvetii found their advance opposed by Caesar. Their most natural course was to cross the Rhone, passing through a corner of the Roman province in south-eastern Gaul. They sent a deputation asking permission to pass through the province without damage. To gain time, Caesar put them off to a second conference, spent the interval in constructing a line of fortifications along the Rhone, and then formally forbade their passage.

After vainly endeavoring to force a passage of the Rhone, the Helvetii, by arrangement with the Sequani, their neighbors on the northwest, proceeded to cross the Saone instead of the Rhone and thence to march westward. Caesar added five fresh legions to the four already at his disposal, and after about three-fourths of the Helvetian troops had crossed the Saone, fell upon and cut to pieces the remainder. Efforts on the part of the Helvetii to procure terms of peace satisfactory to themselves proved unavailing, and after some minor contests, the final decisive battle was fought at the Aeduan town, Bibracte, now Autun. Caesar acknowledges that the battle was closely contested and for a long time doubtful, but in the end Roman arms and discipline won a victory that ended all the hopes of the Helvetii. At the command of Caesar they returned to their desolated homes, but with the loss of more than two-thirds of their entire number. Remains of skeletons, ornaments, and arms have been unearthed on the field of the great battle near Autun.

ABBREVIATIONS AND REFERENCES

THE lessons are indicated by Roman, and the notes by Arabic characters; thus, XIII., 1.=Lesson *thirteen*, note *one*. Rem.=remark; thus, III., rem.=lesson three, remark. The figures 1, 2, 4, placed after the verbs, denote the conjugation; thus, **portō**(1)=*portō*, first conjugation. App. is for the Appendix; A. for Allen and Greenough's Revised Latin Grammar; G. for Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar; H. for Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar; P. for Andrew's and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, revised by Preble. Other abbreviations are:—

abl. **ablātīvus**, *ablative.*
abs. **absolūtus**, *absolute.*
acc. **accūsātīvus**, *accusative.*
act. (**vōx**) **āctīva**, *active.*
adj. **adiectīvum**, *adjective.*
adv. **adverbium**, *adverb.*
c. **cum**, *with.*
cap. **caput**, *chapter.*
cf. **cōnfer**, *compare,*
com. (**genus**) **commūne**, *common (gender).*
comp. **comparātīvus**, *comparative.*
conj. **coniūnctiō**, *conjunction.*
dat. **datīvus**, *dative.*
decl. **dēclīnātiō**, *declension.*
def. (**verbum**) **dēfectīvum**, *defective(verb).*
dem. (**prōnōmen**) **dēmōnstrātīvum**, *demonstrative (pronoun).*
dep. **dēpōnēns**, *deponent.*
dir. disc. (**ōrātiō rēcta**), *direct discourse.*
e. g. **exemplī grātiā**, *for example.*
etc. **et cetera**, *and other(things), and so forth.*
et seq., ff. **et sequentia**, *and what follows.*
F., fem. (**genus**) **fēminīnum**, *feminine.*
ff. see *et seq.*
fut. (**tempus**) **futūrum**, *future.*
gen. **genetīvus**, *genitive.*
ibid. **ibīdem**, *in the same place.*
id. **idem**, *the same.*
i. e. **id est**, *that is.*
imp. **imperātīvus**, *imperative.*
impf. (**tempus imperfectum**), *imperfect.*
indecl. **indēclīnābile**, *indeclinable.*
ind., indic. **indicātīvus**, *indicative.*
indir. disc. (**ōrātiō oblīqua**), *indirect discourse.*
inf. **infīnītīvus**, *infinitive.*
intr. **introductārius**, *introductory.*
irr. **irregulāre**, *irregular.*
less. (**pēnsum**), *lesson.*
lit. **litterātē**, *literally.*
M., masc. (**genus**) **māsculīnum**, *masculine.*
N., neut. (**genus**) **neutrum**, *neuter.*
nom. **nōminātīvus**, *nominative.*
p. pp. **pāgina, pāginae**, *page, pages.*
part. **participium**, *participle.*
pass. (**vōx**) **passīva**, *passive.*
pers. **persōna**, *person.*
pf. (**tempus**) **perfectum**, *perfect.*
pl. plu. **plūrālis**, *plural.*
plpf. **plūsquamperfectum**, *pluperfect.*
(prep.) praep. **praepositiō**, *preposition.*
(pres.) praes. **praesēns**, *present.*
pron. (**prōnōmen**), *pronoun.*
rel. (**prōnōmen**) **relātīvum**, *relative.*
sc. **scilicet**, *understand.*
sing. **singulāris**, *singular.*
subj. **subiūnctīvus**, *subjunctive.*
sup. **superlātīvus**, *superlative.*
vid. **vidē**, *see.*
voc. **vocātīvus**, *vocative.*
vocab. **vocābulōrum index**, *vocabulary.*

BELLUM HELVETICUM

INTRODUCTORY LESSON

Note. It is assumed that the student knows the names and significance of the parts of speech, their forms, case, number, mode, etc., in his own language. Such knowledge of the English language is essential in beginning the study of Latin. The study of English grammar, however, may be pursued profitably in connection with the Latin and the mutual relation of the two languages made clearer by such comparative study.

I. **The Latin Language.** The Latin language, the language of the ancient Romans, derives its name from the *Latīnī*, or Latins, who once inhabited Latium in Italy. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal are mainly derived from the Latin, and about sixty per cent of the words of the English tongue have a similar origin.

II. **The Alphabet.** The alphabet is the same as the English excepting **j**, **v**, and **w**. **J** was introduced in the seventeenth century to represent consonant **i**, but the more common usage is to employ **i** both as vowel and consonant. The Romans employed **v** and **u**, without distinction, both as vowel and consonant. Modern editors generally confine **v** to the consonant use, employing **u** only as a vowel. **K** was early supplanted by **c** and is seldom employed: **y** and **z** were only used in foreign words, especially to represent the Greek **v** and **z**. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The diphthongs (double sounds) are **ae, au, ei, eu, oe, ui**. The principal divisions of the consonants are *mutes* (voiceless or explosive sounds), *liquids* (flowing sounds, **l, m, n, r**), *sibilants* (**s, z**), *double consonants* (**x** (*cs*) **z** (*ds*)), *semi-vowels* (**i, v**).

Of the mutes,

the labials (lip sounds), are **p, b, f** (*ph*), **v**;

the palatals (palate sounds) are **c** (*k*), **q, g, ch**;

the linguals *or* dentals (tongue *or* teeth sounds) are **t, d, th**. A. 1–4 G. 1–7; H. 2–4; P. 14.

III. **Pronunciation.** The pronunciation of Latin varies in different countries. In America the methods most commonly employed are the Roman and the English. At present the Roman method is more largely followed, while the English method is retained by those who desire to give special prominence to the principles of English pronunciation and to the derivation of English words from the Latin.

IV. **The Roman Method.** By the Roman method every letter has always the same sound, as follows:

Vowels: **ā** as in *father;* **a** as in *idea.*
ē " *they;* **e** " *net.*
ī " *machine;* **i** " *bodily.*
ō " *holy;* **o** " *obey.*
ū as oo in *moon;* **u** " *full.*
y like French *u* or German *ü.*

It will be observed that the short vowels have the same sounds as the long vowels, but they are pronounced more quickly and lightly.

A long vowel marked ū is counted as equal to two short ones not marked.

Diphthongs: **ae** like *aye* or **ai** in *aisle;* **oe** like **oi** in *coin;*
au like *ow* in *now;* **ei** as in eight;
eu like *ew* (*eh-oo*); **ui** like *we* (*ooee*).

Consonants as in English except:
c and **g** always hard, as in *come, gun;* **t** always hard;
i consonant (**j**) like *y*; **s** sharp as in *sale, lips;* **v** like *w;*
z like *dz* in *adze;* **qu** as in English; **bs, bt** like *ps, pt;*
ph like *f;* **ch** like *k*: **n** before **c, g, k, q, x** as in *anchor, anguish, anxious.* A. 16; G. 3–7; A. 6, 7; P. 15–18.

V. **The English Method.** In the English method the sounds are generally the same as in English.*

1. Thus, vowels have their long English sounds —

a. In final syllables ending in a vowel, as **sē, dō,** except that unaccented final **a** is sounded like final *a* in *America.*

b. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong, as **deus, deōrum.**

c. In penultimate syllables (the last but one), and in unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid; as **frāter, dolōris, cōnsulis, patrem:** but unaccented **i** and **y,** except in the first and last syllable, are usually short.

d. In words like **Achaia, Pompeius,** **i** preceded by an accented **a, e, o,** or **y,** and followed by another vowel, has the sound of *y;* thus, **A-ka-ya, Pom-pe-yus.**

*If the English method of pronunciation be adopted, it is recommended that it be learned by actual practice with portions of Latin text, these rules being used for reference, and not for recitation.

2. Vowels have their short English sound—

a. In final syllables ending in a consonant: but final **es** is pronounced *ease* and final **os** like *ose* in *dose*.

b. In all syllables before **x** or two consonants, except a mute before a liquid; e. g. **tēxit, templum,** but in **peplum** e is long.

c. In all accented syllables not penultimate, before one or more consonants: but in words like **aciēs, dēleō, moneō**; where accented **a, e,** or **o,** comes before a single consonant (or a mute and a liquid) followed by **e, i,** or **y** before another vowel, the long sound is used.

3. **i** before another vowel in the same syllable is **i** consonant (**j**) and is to be pronounced as **j**: thus **iugum**=*jugum*; **Iulius**=*Julius*; **iaciō**=*jaciō*.

4. Diphthongs: **ae** and **oe** are pronounced as *e*, **au** as in *laud*, **ei** and **ui** like long *i* (thus, **huic** and **cui** are pronounced *hīke* and *kī*), **eu** is pronounced as in *neuter*.

5. Consonants: **c** and **g** are soft (like *s* and *j*) before **e, i, y, ae, oe, eu.** and hard in other situations. **C** and **t** before **i,** often have the sound of *sh* but the hard sound is retained after **s, t,** and **x. Ch** is always hard, like *k*. Final **s** after **e, ae, au, b, m, n,** and **r,** is pronounced like *z*.

a. In **tibi** and **sibi** the **i** in both syllables is short, as in *city*. A. 17; H 9-14.

VI. **Syllables.** Each Latin word contains as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In dividing words, a consonant is generally joined to the following vowel; but compound words should show their component parts. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, the *penult* (**paene** *almost* and **ūltima** *last*); the one before the penult, the *antepenult*. A. 14; G. 8, 9; H. 8, 14; P. 19-25.

VII. **Quantity.** 1. A syllable is long *by nature* if it contains a long vowel or diphthong. It is long *by position* if it contains a short vowel followed by **x,** or **z,** or any two consonants except a mute before a liquid: but before consonant **i, nf, ns, gn, gm** a vowel becomes long by nature, thus **cūius, māgnus.**

2. A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel, a diphthong, or the aspirate **h.**

3. A syllable is common in poetry, i. e. either long or short, when a short vowel is followed by a mute before a liquid.

4. The pronunciation of a vowel in the syllable is determined solely, by its length *by nature*, length *by position* affecting only the accent and the metrical value in poetry. A. 18; G. 10-13; H. 17; P. 26-29.

VIII. **Accent.** 1. Words of one syllable (except enclitics and proclitics) are regarded as accented.

2. Words of two syllables always have the accent on the penult.

3. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult if

it is long either by nature or by position, but if short, on the antepenult.

When an enclitic is joined to a word the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic. A. 19; G. 14; H. 16; P. 30-36.

Since the quantity of the penult determines the accent of any Latin word of more than two syllables, it will be necessary, in order to accent a Latin word with certainty, to know the quantity of that syllable only. This is readily ascertained by a knowledge of the principles in section VII, and by observing the marking of all long vowels in this book. The pronunciation of each syllable is also easily known, since all syllables (except diphthongs) not marked long are sounded short.

The teacher is advised at this point to turn to some page of the text and require the pupils to apply these principles in pronouncing Latin words.

IX. **Order of words.** The order of words in a Latin sentence is best learned by observation. After the text has been examined the student should observe how far the following principles are verified, and in connection with the models of the text, apply them in writing Latin sentences.

1. In a Latin sentence the relations of the words are indicated by their *form*, and great liberty is allowed in the order of their arrangement; e. g. *Puer amat mātrem, Puer mātrem amat, Mātrem puer amat, Amat mātrem puer*, all mean *The boy loves his mother*. The form of *puer* shows that it is in the nominative case, and therefore is the subject; and the form of *mātrem* shows that it is in the case of the object; so that whatever may be the order of the words, there can be but one meaning to the sentence, so long as the form of each word remains unchanged. Contrast the English arrangement in these respects.

2. While much more liberty is allowed in the arrangement of Latin than of English words in a sentence, there are nevertheless some general principles which Latin usage has established and which are varied only for a definite reason:

a. The usual order in a Latin sentence is, (1,) subject; (2,) modifiers of the subject; (3,) modifiers of the verb; (4,) verb.

b. Governed and dependent words usually stand before the words on which they depend; but

c. A genitive usually follows its word.

d. The indirect object usually stands before the direct.

e. Adjectives generally prefer the place after their words.

f. When an adjective and a genitive modify the same word, the order is *adjective, genitive, noun*; e. g. *an old friend of the Romans, vetus Rōmānōrum amīcus.*

g. Adverbs stand before their verbs, but **quoque** always follows its verb.

h. When a noun modified by an adjective is governed by a preposition of one syllable, the order is adjective, preposition, noun; e.g. *māgnā ex parte, quā dē causā.*

i. **Enim, vērō, autem, quoque, quidem,** never stand at the beginning of a sentence or clause.

j. The words **nē . . . quidem** (*not even*), used to emphasize a word, re-

ceive the emphatic word between them; e. g. *not even the Romans*, nē **Rōmānī quidem** (*not the Romans even*).

k. Any word is made emphatic by being placed in an unusual position. A desire for emphasis is, therefore, the chief reason for modifying the usual order of Latin words. The flow of the sentence no doubt had much to do with the choice and arrangement of its words. The individual peculiarities of authors would also produce variety in order.

A. 343-346; G. 674-684; H. 559-573; P. 584-597.

PENSUM PRIMUM

Recite and write this text from memory; translate into English:

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs;

*VOCABULORUM INDEX

†**pēnsum**, N. lesson, task	**omnis** every, all, as a whole
prīmum first	**dīvīsa** divided
vocābulōrum index vocabulary	**in** into
Gallia, F. Gaul	**partēs** parts
est is	**trēs** three

The English words *omnibus, omniscient, etc.*, are derived from **omnis**; *part, party, partner, partial, etc.*, from **partēs**. Name other English words derived from these and other words in the vocabulary.

Give orally the Latin equivalents for the following:

Gaul — Gaul as a whole — is divided — Gaul is divided — parts — into parts — into three parts — Gaul is divided into parts — Gaul as a whole is divided into parts — Gaul is divided into three parts.

Answer in Latin, following the model answers. See note 2.

Estne‡ Gallia dīvīsa? (Gallia est dīvīsa). Quōmodo (*how*)

*Memorize accurately all the vocabularies, so that you can instantly name or write the Latin equivalent for the English word, or the English equivalent for the Latin word. In learning a language it is absolutely necessary to learn the words. In the recitation the English word should generally be pronounced and the pupil required to give the Latin equivalent. Master one word at a time.

†Although *pensum* originally meant 'a weaver's task' and its use to designate an exercise assigned to a pupil is modern, it will be used in this book as the most convenient term to designate our word *lesson*, which itself is generally employed apart from its original sense, *a reading*.

‡ne is used in questions where the answer is not implied, and is joined to the first word of the question. It is not to be translated.

est Gallia dīvīsa? (Gallia in partēs est dīvīsa). Quot in (*into how many*) partēs est Gallia dīvīsa? Nōnne (*is not*) Gallia est omnis dīvīsa?

*NOTES

1. The Latin has no article. *The*, *an*, or *a* must therefore be supplied by the student in translating, whenever the sense requires it.

2. In Latin questions are answered as follows:

a. Sometimes the substance of the question asked, is repeated in the answer, as in the above cases.

b. The verb or the emphatic word may be repeated for affirmation and **nōn** added to the verb or emphatic word for denial.

c. More rarely a simple *yes* is represented by such confirmatory words as **ita**, *so*; **sānē**, *surely*; **certē**, *certainly*; and the simple negative by **nōn**, *not*, *no*; **nōn vērō (quidem)**, *no indëed*; **minimē**, *by no means*. A. 212; G. 473; H. 352; P. 582.

3. The interrogative particle **nōnne** expects an affirmative answer, and is rendered *is not*, *are not*, *do not*, etc. Thus, **nōnne vērum est?** is translated, *is it not true?* or, *it is true, is it not?*

4. Be exact in the pronunciation and accent of each word. When in doubt consult the Introductory Lesson, IV–VIII, or the grammars.

DECLENSION

†In Latin there are six cases, which are distinguished by different endings. Below are given the forms of **Gallia** in the singular number.

NOMINATIVE.	Galli-**a**	*Gaul*
GENITIVE.	Galli-**ae**	*of Gaul*
DATIVE.	Galli-**ae**	*to* or *for Gaul*
ACCUSATIVE.	Galli-**am**	*Gaul*
VOCATIVE.	Galli-**a**	*O Gaul*
ABLATIVE.	Galli-**ā**	*with, by, from Gaul*

*The notes to each lesson contain statements of facts and principles absolutely essential in acquiring the elements of Latin and must be thoroughly learned and recited. References to the parallel treatment of these subjects in the grammars are made for convenience in consultation and comparison, if desired, and not as an additional requirement.

†The explanation of cases is given in Pensum V and the paradigm of the first declension in Pensum VII. This declension and the exercises based upon it may be omitted until that lesson is studied.

PENSUM SECUNDUM

Review and recite all of the first lesson.

Recite and write from memory. Translate at first in the order of the Latin and then in a good English order, contrasting the different arrangements. See Introductory Lesson, IX.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

secundum second
quārum of which
ūnam one
incolunt (they) inhabit
Belgae (the) Belgae, *Belgians
aliam other, another
Aquitānī (the) Aquitani, (Aquitanians)
tertiam third
quī who, those who
ipsōrum of themselves, their own
linguā, (in the) tongue, language
Celtae (the) Celts
nostrā (in) our, (in) ours
Gallī (the) Gauls, Galli
appellantur are called, are named

Name the English derivatives from these words.

In cases of doubt about derivative words a good English dictionary may be advantageously consulted.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Of which — one — one of which — (they) inhabit — the Belgae inhabit — one of which the Belgae inhabit — they inhabit one part (*partem*) — the Belgae inhabit one part — another — the Aquitani — the Aquitani inhabit another — another part — the Aquitani inhabit another part — who (those who) — language — in their own language — their

*The modern use of some proper nouns and adjectives permits the employment of either the Latin form or the Anglicized form, as in the designation of tribes, but the Anglicized form, if used, should have some modern sanction.

own language is divided — into the parts of Gaul — three Aquitani — for the language of Gaul.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quot in partēs est Gallia dīvīsa? (Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs). Quī (*who*) incolunt partem ūnam? Nōnne (*do not*) partem ūnam Belgae incolunt? (Ita [*yes*], Belgae partem ūnam incolunt). Quī incolunt partem aliam? Estne Gallia dīvīsa? (Dīvīsa est). Estne Gallia omnis dīvīsa? (Omnis). Belgaene trēs partēs incolunt? (Nōn (*no*), ūnam partem Belgae incolunt).

NOTES

1. **quot in partēs:** What is the usual order of words when a noun modified by an adjective is governed by a monosyllabic preposition? See Introductory Lesson, IX, 2, *h*.

2. **incolu-nt,** *they inhabit*: **-nt** is the ending of the third person, plural number, active voice. When no subject is expressed the personal pronoun of that person and number must be supplied in translation: thus, **incolunt,** *they inhabit*, but **Belgae incolunt,** *the Belgians inhabit.*

DECLENSION

Declension of Belgae, representing the plural of first declension nouns.

NOMINATIVE.	Belg-**ae**	*the Belgae (Belgians)*
GENITIVE.	Belg-**ārum**	*of the Belgae*
DATIVE.	Belg-**īs**	*to* or *for the Belgae*
ACCUSATIVE.	Belg-**ās**	*the Belgae*
VOCATIVE.	Belg-**ae**	*O (ye) Belgae*
ABLATIVE.	Belg-**īs**	*by, from, with the Belgae*

Decline lingua in the singular with the endings given in the declension of **Gallia,** and in the plural with the endings of **Belgae.** Observe the endings in **qu-ārum, ūn-am, ali-am, terti-am.**

PENSUM TERTIUM

Review and recite rapidly the previous lessons.

Recite and translate:

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

tertium third
hī these
īnstitūtīs (in) customs
lēgibus (in) laws
inter among
sē themselves
differunt differ

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Who (those who) — Celts — are called — who are called Celts — who are called Gauls — in their own language — in our language — the Celts are called Gauls in our language — in their own language they are called Celts — the Belgae inhabit one part — the Celts inhabit the third part — another part of which the Aquitanians inhabit — these — all these — all these differ — they differ in language and in laws — they differ from one another in customs.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quō nōmine (*by what name*) appellantur Celtae nostrā linguā? (Celtae nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur). Quī differunt inter sē? Quō modo (*how*) inter sē differunt? Quī differunt linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus? Nōnne Belgae et Gallī inter sē differunt?

NOTES

1. **appella-ntur,** *are called.* **-ntur** is the ending of the third person, plural number, passive voice. What is the ending of the third, plural, active? II, 2.

2. **inter sē differunt,** *differ from one another.*

DECLENSION

Below are given the forms of **Gallus,** of the second declension:

	Singular	
NOMINATIVE.	Gall-us	*a Gaul*
GENITIVE.	Gall-ī	*of a Gaul*
DATIVE.	Gall-ō	*to* or *for a Gaul*
ACCUSATIVE.	Gall-um	*a Gaul*
VOCATIVE.	Gall-e	*O Gaul*
ABLATIVE.	Gall-ō	*from, by, with a Gaul*
	Plural	
NOMINATIVE.	Gall-ī	*the Gauls*
GENITIVE.	Gall-ōrum	*of the Gauls*
DATIVE.	Gall-īs	*to* or *for the Gauls*
ACCUSATIVE.	Gall-ōs	*the Gauls*
VOCATIVE.	Gall-ī	*O Gauls*
ABLATIVE.	Gall-īs	*from, by, with the Gauls*

In the same manner decline **Aquitānī.**

PENSUM QUARTUM

Recite and translate with preceding text:

Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

quartum fourth	**Mātrona,** M. the Marne
ab, ā *prep.* from	**et,** *conj.* and
Garumna, M. the Garonne	**Sēquana,** M. the Seine
flūmen, N. river	**dīvidit** divides, separates

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Verte in Anglicum (*translate into English*)**:**

Hī ipsōrum linguā Celtae appellantur. Omnēs Gallī lēgibus inter sē differunt. Hī populī (*nations*) linguā et īnstitūtīs differunt. Garumna flūmen Gallōs ab Aquitānīs dīvidit. Mātrona et Sēquana Gallōs ā Belgīs dīvidit. Mātrona est flūmen.

Decline Garumna, Mātrona, Sēquana, Celtae.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

From the Aquitani — from the Belgae — the river divides the Aquitani from the Gauls — the Seine river — the Marne and the Garonne.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quod (*what*) flūmen dīvidit Gallōs ab Aquitānīs? Quās (*what*) partēs dīvidit flūmen Garumna? (Garumna dīvidit aliam partem ā tertiā). Quās partēs dīvidit Mātrona et Sēquana?

NOTES

1. **ā, ab:** **ā** is used before a consonant, e. g. **ā Belgīs; ab** before vowels or consonants: as **ab Aquitānīs, ab Sēquanīs.**

2. **dīvidi-t,** (*he, she, it*) *divides;* **es-t,** (*he, she, it*) *is;* **-t** is the ending of the third person singular. What is the ending of the third person plural in the active? In the passive? II, 3.

3. **Mātrona et Sēquana:** These two nouns have their verb in the singular because the two rivers form one boundary line and therefore constitute but one subject. A. 205, *b*; G. 285, 2; H. 463, II, 3; P. 320 (1).

Note on the map the position of the three rivers mentioned in this lesson.

PENSUM QUINTUM

THE CASES

The term *case* is applied to show the relation of a noun to other words. The Latin has six cases:

a. The nominative case (**cāsus nōminātīvus**) corresponds to the nominative in English. **Gallia** *divisa est.*

b. The genitive (**genetīvus**) generally corresponds to the English possessive or the objective with the preposition *of*. *Partēs trēs* **Galliae.**

c. The dative (**datīvus**) is the case of the indirect object showing *to* or *for* which anything is or is done. It is often translated like the English objective with *to* or *for*.

d. The accusative (**accūsātīvus**) is the case of the direct object, following transitive verbs and many Latin prepositions. **Unam partem** *incolunt Belgae.*

e. The vocative (**vocātīvus**) is the case of direct address. **Caesar!**

f. The ablative (**ablātīvus**) expresses various adverbial relations such as are frequently expressed by the English objective with *from, by, in, with.* It is also often used with certain Latin prepositions. **Linguā** *differunt.*

Pēnsa (*lessons*) I, II, III, IV, **recōgnōsce** (*review*).

Redde et recitā cum textū priōre (*translate and recite with the preceding text*):

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt,

VOCABULORUM INDEX

quīntum fifth
***hōrum** (of) these
omnium (of) all
fortissimī bravest, most brave
sunt are
propterea, *adv.* on account of this, for this reason
quod, *conj.* because
cultū civilization, culture
atque and also, and
hūmānitāte refinement
prōvinciae (of the) province
longissimē, *adv.* very far
absunt are distant, are away
cūr why?

*Genitive plural of which **hī** is the Nominative plural.

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

In connection with the translation of the text of this and the preceding lessons, name the cases of the nouns used. The case can usually be named correctly from the relation suggested by the translation as subject or object, or as used with OF *or with* TO *or* FOR, *or with* BY, IN, FROM, WITH, *etc.*

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

These — of these — all — of all — of all these — the bravest of all — is — are — the Belgae are bravest — they (II, 2) are bravest of all these — they are bravest on account of this — because they are very far distant — the Belgae are distant from civilization — and also — and they are also distant from refinement — from the refinement of the province — the bravest Belgians differ from the Aquitanians — the river separates the Gauls from the civilization of these — because in their own language they are called the bravest.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quī sunt fortissimī? Nōnne Belgae sunt fortissimī? Cūr sunt Belgae fortissimī? (Propterea, quōd ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt). Absumusne (*are we distant*) ā cultū longissimē?

PENSUM SEXTUM

Pēnsa priōra recōgnōsce.

Verte in Anglicum:

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important;

VOCABULORUM INDEX

sextum sixth
minimē, *adv.* by no means, least
-que and (*enclitic*)
ad, *prep. c. acc.* to, towards
eōs them
mercātōrēs merchants, traders
saepe, *adv.* often
minimē . . . saepe least often, very seldom
commeant resort
ad . . . commeant visit
ea those things
quae which
***effēminandōs** weaken, enervate
animōs spirit, courage, minds
pertinent extend, tend
important bring in, import

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Resort to, visit — the merchants visit them — least often, very seldom — they very seldom visit them — they visit the Gauls — the traders import those things — those things which tend to weaken the courage — the merchants of the province resort to them — the Belgae do not visit the merchants — all these import those things — the very brave Belgae often visit the river — the river separates the traders from the Belgae — they by no means differ in language — they are not often distant from civilization — because — on account of this.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Ad quōs (*whom*) commeant mercātōrēs? (Mercātōrēs ad Belgās commeant). Mercātōrēsne† ad Belgās saepe commeant? (Nōn, minimē saepe commeant). Quae rēs (*what things*) important mercātōrēs? Suntne hī mercātōrēs Gallī? (Nēsciō [*I don't know*]). Nōnne mercātōrēs sunt Rōmānī? (Cēnseō [*I think so*]). Suntne mercātōrēs fortissimī? (Nōn, Belgae fortissimī sunt).

*The particular form and force of this word will be explained hereafter. The definitions given show its root-meaning and its use in this passage. In like manner, while the brief definitions of such verbs as *commeant*, *pertinent* do not give the force of the ending **-nt**, their force in the text will be clearly understood from the principle stated in II, 2.

†See p. 22 ‡.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. They differ in laws from the Aquitani who inhabit one part of the province. 2. They import these things on this account, because they are very far distant. 3. Those who are bravest inhabit another part. 4. They are very seldom called merchants in their own language. 5. The bravest of these often visit all parts.

So far as time permits let the pupil from the definitions given in the vocabulary and the principles heretofore explained, determine the form (case or tense, number, etc.) and use of each word.

NOTES

1. **estne,** *is?*

a. The interrogative particle **-ne** is not translated but is added to the emphatic word in its clause to denote a question without implying the answer. Compare this with the use of **nōnne,** I, 3 (=*pēnsum prīmum*, note 3).

b. Words like **-ne** which are joined in writing to the preceding word are called *enclitics* (**enclitica**). How do they affect accent? See Intr. Lesson, VIII.

2. Observe that of the three connectives given, **et,** *and,* simply connects words or clauses; **-que,** which is always enclitic, connects more closely than **et; atque** generally gives prominence to what follows. A. 156, *a*; G. 475–477; H. 554, 2; P. 562.

PENSUM SEPTIMUM

FIRST DECLENSION

Introductory Notes:

1. The formation of a noun, pronoun, or adjective in its various terminations is called declension (*dēclīnātiō*).

2. Latin nouns are inflected in five declensions, distinguished from one another by the final letter (characteristic) of their stem and by the termination of the Genitive singular. As the characteristic letter undergoes various phonetic changes the termination of the Genitive singular is given in vocabularies and lexicons after the Nominative and the

declension thus readily and certainly made known. In those nouns which have only plural forms, the ending of the Genitive plural is placed after the Nominative form. A. 32; G. 26; H. 47; P. 89.

3. In the first declension the stem vowel, or characteristic, is **a**, the Genitive singular ends in **-ae**. From the characteristic vowel, **a**, this is called the **a** declension. A. 32; G. 29; H. 47.

Learn thoroughly the paradigm of **lingua**, observing the base, to which the endings are affixed, and the meaning of each case. Cf. V, Intr. note *a–f*.

Lingua (*tongue, language*), F.

Singular			Termination
Nom.	**lingu-a**	a language	**a**
Gen.	**lingu-ae**	of a language	**ae**
Dat.	**lingu-ae**	to *or* for a language	**ae**
Acc.	**lingu-am**	a language	**am**
Voc.	**lingu-a**	O (*or* thou) language	**a**
Abl.	**lingu-ā**	by, from, in, with a language	**ā**
Plural			
Nom.	**lingu-ae**	languages	**ae**
Gen.	**lingu-ārum**	of languages	**ārum**
Dat.	**lingu-īs**	to *or* for languages	**īs**
Acc.	**lingu-ās**	languages	**ās**
Voc.	**lingu-ae**	O (*or* ye) languages	**ae**
Abl.	**lingu-īs**	by, from, in, with languages	**īs**

CASES ALIKE

Singular		Plural	
Nom., Voc.	**-a**	Nom., Voc.	**-ae**
Gen., Dat.	**-ae**	Dat., Abl.	**-īs**

Inflect with the same endings as in **lingua**, the nouns **Gallia** and **prōvincia**; also **Mātrona** and **Sēquana** in the singular and **Celtae** and **Belgae** in the plural. For other examples see App. 2; A. 35; G. 29; H. 48; P. 91. Hereafter nouns of the first declension will be given in the manner usually followed in vocabularies and lexicons. In the text of the preceding lessons determine by their endings the form of **quārum, ūnam, Belgae, Belgīs**, etc.

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

proximīque sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

septimum seventh
proximī nearest, next to
Germānīs the Germans
trāns, *prep. c. acc.* across
Rhēnum the Rhine
lingua, -ae, F. (note 1) tongue, language
cum, *prep. c. abl.* with
quibuscum (**-cum** *enclitic*) with whom
continenter continually
bellum war
gerunt carry on, wage

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Latīnē loquere:

They are — they are nearest — the next to the Germans — next to the Aquitani — with — with whom — with a language — with laws — with civilization — with customs — with refinement — inhabit, dwell — they dwell across the Rhine — who dwell across the Rhine — across the river — who wage war — they wage war continually — three parts wage war — the merchants of the province — very seldom visit them — a language — their own language — in their own language — in our language — the languages of the province — of the language of Gaul — to the languages of Gaul — they speak (*dicunt*) the languages — they inhabit the province — they are next to the province — in the language of the provinces.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnis mandātō:

1. The Belgians are next to the Celts. 2. All these who dwell (inhabit) across the river wage war continually. 3. The bravest of these very seldom import those things which tend to weaken the courage. 4. The Belgians of Gaul and the Celts of the province differ in language. 5. The Aquitani inhabit one province. 6. The three provinces of the Celts. 7. All

parts differ in laws. 8. The provinces are very far distant from civilization.

NOTES

1. Nouns of the first declension are of the feminine gender, excepting the names of tribes, the names of men, and nouns denoting the occupations of men; e. g. **Belgae, Galba, scrība,** (*clerk*).

2. The *stem* is that part of the word which is common to each case.

3. The termination consists of the case-ending united with the characteristic vowel. When a case-ending is added to a stem ending in a vowel, one of the vowels usually disappears, or the two are contracted into one.

4. **Fīlia** (*daughter*) and **dea** (*goddess*) have the dative and ablative plural in **-ābus,** instead of **-īs,** to distinguish these forms from the cases of **fīlius** and **deus.**

PENSUM OCTAVUM

SECOND DECLENSION

INTRODUCTORY NOTE:

In the second declension the stem vowel, or characteristic, is o; the genitive singular ends in **-ī.** From the characteristic vowel this is also called the **o** declension.

Learn thoroughly the paradigm of **animus** (*spirit, mind*) and **bellum** (*war*), observing the stem and giving the meaning of the word for each case as in the paradigm of **lingua.** Cf. V, Intr. note, *a–g.*

	Animus (*spirit, courage, mind*), M.		**Bellum** (*war*), N.	
	Singular	Termination	Singular	Termination
Nom.	**anim-us (-os)**	**us**	**bell-um (-om)**	**um**
Gen.	**anim-ī**	**ī**	**bell-ī**	**ī**
Dat.	**anim-ō**	**ō**	**bell-ō**	**ō**
Acc.	**anim-um**	**um**	**bell-um**	**um**
Voc.	**anim-e**	**e**	**bell-um**	**um**
Abl.	**anim-ō**	**ō**	**bell-ō**	**ō**

	Plural		Plural	
Nom.	anim-ī	ī	bell-a	a
Gen.	anim-ōrum	ōrum	bell-ōrum	ōrum
Dat.	anim-īs	īs	bell-īs	īs
Acc.	anim-ōs	ōs	bell-a	a
Voc.	anim-ī	ī	bell-a	a
Abl.	anim-īs	īs	bell-īs	īs

CASES ALIKE

Singular

Masculine		Neuter	
Dat. Abl.	-ō	Nom. Acc. Voc.	-um
		Dat. Abl.	-ō

Plural

Nom. Voc.	-ī	Nom. Acc. Voc.	-a
Dat. Abl.	-īs	Dat. Abl.	-īs

Review the text of the preceding lessons and give the case and number of the nouns in the first and second declensions.

Like **animus** decline: **Gallus,** *a Gaul;* **vīcus,** *village;* **Rhēnus,** *the Rhine:* also **Aquitānī** and **Germānī** in the plural. Like **bellum** decline: **initium,** *beginning;* **rēgnum,** *kingdom;* **īnstitūtum,** *custom;* **pēnsum,** *lesson.* For other examples see App. 3; A. 38; G. 33; H. 51; P. 95.

Hereafter nouns of the second declension will be given in the manner usually followed in vocabularies and lexicons.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

octāvum eighth
īnstitūtum, -ī, N. custom, institution
Belgae, -ārum, M. the Belgae
Mātrona, -ae, M. the Marne
Sēquana, -ae, M. the Seine
prōvincia, -ae, F. province
animus, -ī, M. spirit, courage, mind
Germānī, -ōrum, M. the Germans
Rhēnus, -ī, M. the Rhine
bellum, -ī, N. war
pēnsum, -ī, N. lesson

Verte in Anglicum:

1. Aquitānī aliam* Galliae partem incolunt. 2. Belgae nōn sunt proximī Aquitānīs. 3. Fortissimī Celtārum trāns flūmen Mātronam incolunt. 4. Germānī ad eōs saepe commeant quod frūmentum (*grain*) important. 5. Nostra prōvincia Galliam ā Germāniā dīvidit. 6. Germānī, quibuscum Belgae bellum gerunt, trāns Rhēnum incolunt. 7. Īnstitūta Aquitānōrum ab īnstitūtīs Belgārum differunt. 8. Germānī, quī proximī Belgīs sunt, cum Celtīs bella gerunt. 9. Mercātōrēs ā bellīs longissimē absunt.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The bravest of the Gauls often wage wars. 2. These continually import those things which tend to weaken the courage. 3. All the Gauls differ in laws from the Belgae. 4. A river separates the provinces from refinement. 5. The Rhine separates the Belgians from the Germans with whom they wage wars. 6. Their own languages differ. 7. All these, who are next to the provinces, are not very far distant. 8. They carry on wars for this reason, because they differ in laws and languages.

Oral exercises of short phrases, varying the case and number, should be employed as time will permit.

NOTES

1. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** are with very few exceptions masculine. Those ending in **-um** are neuter. App. 47; A. 39; G. 4; H. 51; P. 95, 96.

2. The nominative is regularly formed from the stem by adding **s** for the masculine and **m** for the neuter. The endings **-os, -om** (**-on** neuter) are found in the older Latin.

3. The characteristic **o** is weakened to **u** in the endings **-us** and **-um**, and to **e** in the voc., e. g. **anime**; in the dat. and abl. sing. it is lengthened to **ō**. The ending **-ī** is for **-oi**, and **-īs** for **-oīs**. A. 38; G. 31; H. 51, 2, 2).

*Intr. Lesson, IX, 2, *f.*

PENSUM NONUM

Cum textū priōre recitā:

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt,

VOCABULORUM INDEX

nōnum ninth
causa, -ae, F., cause, reason
dē, *prep. c. abl.* from, concerning, for
quā dē causā for this reason; *or* for what reason? why?
Helvētiī, -ōrum, M., the Helvetians
quoque, *adv.* also, likewise, too
reliquōs the rest of, remaining
virtūte (in) valor
praecēdunt go before, precede, surpass
ferē, *adv.* almost
cotīdiānīs (quotīd-) daily
proelium, -ī, N., battle
contendunt strive, contend, hasten

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Verte in Anglicum:

Quod — quod contendunt — proeliīs contendunt — ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs — cum Germānīs contendunt — Helvētiī cum Germānīs contendunt — animus Helvētiōrum — proelia cum Belgīs — linguae inter sē differunt — proeliīs praecēdunt — causae bellōrum — ea ad proelia important — minimē ā cultū prōvinciārum absunt.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

For this reason — the Helvetians surpass the Gauls — they surpass them in valor — they contend in battles — the Helvetians contend with the Germans — the Germans contend in almost daily battles — the causes of the wars — they extend to the provinces.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. All the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Celts. 2. They

import those things which pertain to wars and battles. 3. The Celts and Helvetians inhabit the provinces. 4. They wage wars continually because they are the bravest.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quā dē causā praecēdunt Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs? Quōs (*whom*) praecēdunt Helvētiī? Quī contendunt proeliīs cum Germānīs? Quibuscum contendunt Helvētiī? In quō cāsū (*in what case*) est nōmen *causā?* (In cāsū ablātīvō.) *Helvētiī?* (In cāsū nōminātīvō.) *Gallōs?* (Accūsātīvō.) *virtūte? proeliīs? proeliō?* Datīvō an (*or*) ablātīvō? *causārum? causae?* In quō numerō (*in what number*) est nōmen *causā?* (In numerō singulārī.) *Helvetiī?* (In numerō plūrālī.) *Gallōs?* (Plūrālī.) *virtūte? proeliīs?*

PENSUM DECIMUM

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

INTRODUCTORY NOTE:

In Latin, adjectives are inflected like nouns. They agree with the noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case. Adjectives like **māgnus**, whose feminine terminations are like feminine nouns of the first declension, and whose masculine and neuter terminations are like masculine and neuter nouns of the second declension, are called adjectives of the first and second declensions.

Learn thoroughly the inflection of the adjective **māgnus**, observing that the terminations are exactly the same as in **animus**, **causa**, and **bellum**.

Numerus singulāris (singular number)

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**māgn-us** (*great, large*)	**māgn-a**	**māgn-um**
Ger.	**māgn-ī**	**māgn-ae**	**māgn-ī**
Dat	**māgn-ō**	**māgn-ae**	**māgn-ō**
Acc.	**māgn-um**	**māgn-am**	**māgn-um**
Voc.	**māgn-e**	**māgn-a**	**māgn-um**
Abl	**māgn-ō**	**māgn-ā**	**māgn-ō**

plūrālis (plural)

Nom.	**māgn-ī**	**māgn-ae**	**māgn-a**
Gen.	**māgn-ōrum**	**māgn-ārum**	**māgn-ōrum**
Dat.	**māgn-īs**	**māgn-īs**	**māgn-īs**
Acc.	**māgn-ōs**	**māgn-ās**	**māgn-a**
Voc.	**māgn-ī**	**māgn-ae**	**māgn-a**
Abl.	**māgn-īs**	**māgn-īs**	**māgn-īs**

Now decline the noun and adjective together thus: **causa māgna, causae māgnae,** etc. Also **animus māgnus, animī māgnī, animō māgnō,** etc. The student must understand that the adjective does not agree with the noun in spelling, but in gender, number, and case. For other examples see App. 7; A. 81; G. 73; H. 148; P. 143.

Hereafter adjectives of the first and second declensions will be given in the manner usually followed in vocabularies and lexicons.

Let the student give the Nominative forms of the ordinals, *first, second, etc.*

Review the text of the preceding lessons, noting the forms of the adjectives in connection with the nouns which they modify.

In the declension of adjectives the forms for each gender should be given before passing to the next case. A rapid daily review of the forms learned is required to insure perfect readiness in their use.

Verte in Anglicum:

Gallia māgna est — Gallī proximī Belgīs sunt — trēs Gallī — linguae Gallicae — īnstitūta cotīdiāna — nostrīs lēgibus — nostrōrum īnstitūtōrum — Belgārum fortissimōrum — Rhēnus flūmen māgnum est — māgnā prōvinciā — in māgnam prōvinciam — ad māgnās prōvinciās — causae reliquae — causīs reliquīs — bellum māgnum — bella māgna gerunt — bellō māgnō contendunt — prōvincia dīvīsa est — prōvinciae dīvīsae sunt — dīvīsae partēs Galliae incoluntur — reliquī Gallī virtūte praecēduntur.

Verte in Latīnum:

The three languages of Gaul — the Latin language — in the Latin language — into the Latin language — of the Latin language — the language of all the Romans — the most brave

Belgae resort to the great province — the great courage of these Belgians — the cause of the great wars — the causes of the great war — the daily battles of these Aquitani — the parts of Gaul are divided among the merchants of the Romans.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

decimus, -a, -um tenth
numerus, -ī, M. number
masculīnus, -a, -um masculine
fēminīnus, -a, -um feminine
alius, -a, -ud (note 2), another, other
ūnus, -a, -um (note 2), one
dīvīsus, -a, -um divided
fortissimus, -a, -um bravest
proximus, -a, -um next, nearest
reliquus, -a, -um the rest of, remaining
cotīdiānus, -a, -um (quotīd-), daily
Latīnus, -a, -um Latin
Rōmānus, -a, -um Roman
Germānus, -a, -um German
Anglicus, -a, -um English
Americānus, -a, -um American
Francicus, -a, -um *or*
Gallicus, -a, -um French.

NOTES

1. Adjectives like **noster**, *our*, whose stems end in **-ro** do not add **s** for the nom. masc. The **o** is dropped and **e** is inserted before **r**. The vocative is the same as the nominative. In other respects the endings are the same as in **māgnus**. App. 7, *b*; A. 38, 82; G. 73; H. 149, note and 150; P. 143.

2. **ūnus, neuter, alius,** and a few other adjectives have the genitive singular ending **-īus,** and the dative ending **-ī.** They have no vocative forms. It will be observed that **alius** has the neuter singular ending in **-ud.** In other respects these adjectives are inflected like **māgnus.**

PENSUM UNDECIMUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs conten-

dunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

ūndecimus, -a, -um eleventh
cum, (**quum**), *conj.* (note 1) when, since, although
aut, *conj.* or
aut . . . aut either . . . or
suus, -a, -um, (note 2) his, her, its their, (own)
fīnibus limits, boundaries, territories
prohibent hold from, prohibit, keep away
ipsī (they) themselves
in, *prep. c. abl.* (cf. **in,** into, *prep. c acc.* note 4) in
eōrum, cf. **eōs,** their, of them

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

When — them — when they keep them away — they keep them away from their own boundaries — they either keep them away or wage war — they themselves — they themselves wage war — they wage war in their boundaries — in their own boundaries — the Helvetians keep them away for this reason — (there) is one language — (there) are other languages — they themselves keep them away.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Belgians, Celts, and Aquitani inhabit the divided parts of Gaul. 2. The Rhine is next to the Belgae. 3. They wage war for this reason, because they keep away their merchants. 4. The battles of the Celts are almost daily. 5. The Aquitani strive with great courage.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quī praecēdunt Gallōs virtūte? Quibuscum contendunt Helvētiī? Quot (*how many*) proeliīs contendunt? Quī prohibent Germānōs? In quōrum (*whose*) fīnibus gerunt Helvētiī ipsī bellum? In quō cāsū est *causā?* (In cāsū ablātīvō.) *Helvētiī?* (Nōminātīvō). *Gallōs? virtūte? proeliīs? fīnibus?*

eōs? ipsī? In quō numerō est *Helvētiī?* (In numerō plūrālī). *virtūte?* (Singulārī.) *Germānīs? bellum? fīnibus?* Quae ōrātiōnis pars (*what part of speech*) est *Helvētiī?* (*Helvētiī* nōmen est). *Gallōs? bellum? ipsī?* (*Ipsī* prōnōmen est.) *eōs?* Quae ōrātiōnis pars est *reliquōs?* (*Reliquōs* adiectīvum est.) *cotīdiānīs? suīs?*

NOTES

1. **cum,** (also spelled **quum**) is here a temporal conjunction meaning *when,* and not the preposition meaning *with.* It can usually be distinguished by its position in the clause, while the preposition is regularly followed by a noun in the ablative case.

2. **suus,** inflected like **māgnus,** may mean *his, her, its, their* (or *his own, her own,* etc) according to the gender and number of the subject of the sentence or clause in which it stands. The forms of **suus** and of the reflexive **sē** regularly refer to this subject. App. 26; A. 196; G. 309, 1–4. Rem.; H. 448, 449; P. 445 (1).

3. Words like **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or,* used in pairs, are called correlatives.

4. **in,** with the ablative, means *in,* i. e. rest in a place; with the accusative, *to, into,* i. e. motion toward a place; thus **in fīnibus,** *in the* (*boundaries,* but **in partēs,** *into parts.*

PENSUM DUODECIMUM

Verte in Anglicum:

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum;

VOCABULORUM INDEX

duodecimus, -a, -um twelfth
quam, (note 1) which, and this
obtinēre (to) hold, possess, occupy
dictum est (it) has been said
initium, -ī, N. beginning
capit takes
initium capit ā begins at

Rhodanus, -ī, M. the Rhone
continētur is bounded
Ōceanus, -ī, M. the Ocean
Atlanticus, -a, -um Atlantic

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

A part — one part — of these — one part of these — which, and this — to possess, hold — it has been said — and it has been said the Gauls possess this — beginning — takes (its) beginning (begins at) — begins at the river — begins at the Rhone — one part begins — one is bounded — is bounded by the river — by the river Garonne — it is bounded by the Ocean — by the Atlantic ocean — the part is bounded by the territories of the Belgians — they are bounded (*note* 2) by the great Ocean — they keep them from their territory.

Latīnē scrībe:

1. It has been said that the Gauls possess one part of Gaul. 2. The river Rhone separates the rest of the Germans from our province. 3. They are bounded by the Celts and Helvetians, with whom they often strive in battle. 4. The Belgae themselves surpass them in valor because they often strive with the rest of the Gauls.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quī obtinent (*possess*) ūnam partem? Unde (*whence*) capit initium haec (*this*) ūna pars? Quam partem (*what part*) continent Garumna et Ōceanus et fīnēs Belgārum? Nōnne Ōceanus et flūmen trēs partēs continent? (Nōn, ūnam partem continent.) Quō in cāsū est *eōrum? pars? initium? Rhodanō? fīnibus? Belgārum?* In quō numerō est *pars? Gallōs? flūmine?*

NOTES

1. **quam:** cf. **ūnam, aliam, māgnam,** and thus determine its gender and number. Cf. the forms **quārum, quibus, quī, quā, quam** noting the stem (the part common to each) and (excepting **quibus**) determine from the endings of **māgnus** the form of each word.

2. Compare **dīvidit,** *separates;* **continētur,** *is bounded;* **important,**

(*they*) *bring in;* **appellantur,** (*they*) *are called,* and observe that **-t** is the ending of the third singular active, **-tur** of the third singular passive, **-nt** of the third plural active, **-ntur** of the third plural passive.

3. Distinguish between the passive ending **-tur** in **continētur** and the adverb ending **-ter** in **continenter.**

PENSUM TERTIUM DECIMUM

THE THIRD DECLENSION

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. The stems of nouns of the third declension end in a vowel, **i**; or a liquid, **l, n, r**; or a mute (Intr. Less. II). The termination of the genitive singular is **-is.** A. 43; G. 35; H. 56; P.

2. Masculine and feminine nouns whose stems end in a mute regularly form the nominative by adding **-s.** A lingual mute (**d** or **t**) is suppressed before **-s.** Thus the nominative **pars** is from the stem **part-**, **hūmānitās** from the stem **hūmānitāt-.** A palatal mute, (**c** or **g**) unites with **-s** forming **x.** Thus the nominative **lēx** is from the stem **lēg-** + **-s.** A labial mute (**b** or **p**) remains unchanged before the **-s**; thus **prīnceps** from the stem **prīncip-.** App. 4, *a*; A. 44; G. 50; H. 58, 1, 3; P. 101.

3. In nouns whose stems end in a liquid (**l, n, r**) the nominative is the same as the stem, or a modification of the stem. Thus the nominative **cōnsul** is from the stem **cōnsul-**; **mercātor** is from the stem **mercātōr-**, the long vowel **ō** of the stem being weakened to **o**; **flūmen,** *river*, is from the stem **flūmin-**, the vowel **i** of the stem being strengthened to **e** to form the nominative. App. 4, *b*; A. 48; G. 39. 40; H. 60, 1, 3; P. 103.

4. Masculine and feminine nouns whese stems end in **i**, form the nominative by adding **s** to the stem. Thus the nominative **fīnis,** *end, limit,* is from the stem **fīni-.** The **i** of the stem is sometimes modified to **e** in the nominative. Thus **nūbēs,** *cloud,* is from the stem **nūbi-.** App. 4, *c.* A. 51–59; G. 56, 57; H. 62, 64; P. 108.

5. Consonant stems of the third declension may always be found by cutting off the termination (**-is**) of the genitive singular, but nouns with vowel (**i**) stems show this stem vowel independently of the termination only in the nominative and vocative singular (here sometimes modified to **e**) and in the genitive plural. That the stem vowel (**i**) in the other

forms is dropped before the case ending or unites with it, will be clear from a comparison of the paradigm of **fīnis** given below.

Learn thoroughly the paradigms of **lēx**, *law*; **fīnis**, *end, limit*; **flūmen**, *river*, noting the stem and termination for each case.

Numerus Singulāris

	lēx (*law*) F.		**fīnis** (*end*) M.		**flūmen** (*river*) N.	
	Stem **lēg-**		**fīni-**		**flūmin-**	
Nom.	**lēx**	**s**	**fīni-s**	**s**	**flūmen**	
Gen.	**lēg-is**	**is**	**fīn-is**	**is**	**flūmin-is**	**is**
Dat	**lēg-ī**	**ī**	**fīn-ī**	**ī**	**flūmin-ī**	**ī**
Acc.	**lēg-em**	**em**	**fīn-em**	**em**	**flūmen**	
Voc.	**lēx**	**s**	**fīni-s**	**s**	**flūmen**	
Abl.	**lēg-e**	**e**	**fīn-e** (-ī)	**e**(-ī)	**flūmin-e**	**e**

Numerus Plūrālis

Nom.	**lēg-ēs**	**ēs**	**fīn-ēs**	**ēs**	**flūmin-a**	**a**
Gen.	**lēg-um**	**um**	**fīni-um**	**um**	**flūmin-um**	**um**
Dat.	**lēg-ibus**	**ibus**	**fīn-ibus**	**ibus**	**flūmin-ibus**	**ibus**
Acc.	**lēg-ēs**	**ēs**	**fīn-ēs** (-īs)	**ēs** (**īs**)	**flūmin-a**	**a**
Voc.	**lēg-ēs**	**ēs**	**fīn-ēs**	**ēs**	**flūmin-a**	**a**
Abl.	**lēg-ibus**	**ibus**	**fīn-ibus**	**ibus**	**flūmin-ibus**	**ibus**

CASES ALIKE

Singular

M. and F.	N.
Nom. } Voc. }	Nom. } Acc. } Voc. }

Plural

Nom. } Acc. } Voc. } -ēs	Nom. } Acc. } Voc. } -a
Dat. } Abl. } -ibus	Dat. } Abl. } -ibus

Hereafter the forms of the nominative and genitive singular of nouns of the third declension will be given in the manner regularly followed in vocabularies and lexicons.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

tertius (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um, thirteenth
index, indicis, m. index, list
pars, partis, f. part, portion
lēx, lēgis, f. law
flūmen, -inis, n. river
hūmānitās, -tātis, f. refinement
mercātor, -ōris, m. merchant, trader
virtūs, virtūtis, f. manliness, valor, courage
fīnis, -is, m. end, limit; *pl.* boundaries, territory
Caesar, Caesaris, m. Caesar
nōmen, -inis, n. name, noun

Inflect each of the above nouns and also the nouns and adjectives of the first and second declensions given in the preceding pages. Note carefully the stem of each noun and the formation of the nominative as explained in the introductory notes to this lesson. For other examples see App. 4; A. 44 ff; G. 43 ff; H. 57 ff; P. 104 ff.

Verte in Anglicum:

Lēgēs bellī — hūmānitās nostrae prōvinciae — ad mercātōrem Rōmānum commeant — virtūs Gallōrum māgna est — in proximīs partibus — ad proximās partēs — Belgae māgnae virtūtis sunt — flūmina proxima Celtīs sunt — Caesaris lēgī — hī ad eōrum fīnēs pertinent — nōmina hōrum flūminum — pars fīnium — ūnā in parte flūminis — partēs Gallōs obtinēre dictum est.

NOTES

1. The third declension includes nouns of all three genders.

a. Nouns like **lēx** (lēg- + s), with the nominative ending in **s** following a consonant, are regularly feminine. App. 47; A. 65, *b*; G. 55; H. 105; P. 118.

b. Parisyllabic nouns (i. e. with the same number of syllables in nominative and genitive singular) ending in **-is** or **-ēs** are by rule feminine. They include, however, a number of masculine nouns (as **fīnis**; **mēnsis**, *month*; **ignis**, *fire*; **collis**, *hill*). App 4; A. 65, *b*; G. 58; H. 105; P. 118–128.

c. Nouns like **flūmen**, with the nominative ending in **-men**, are neuter. A. 65, *c*; G. 43, 2; H. 111; P. 118–123.

2. Vowel stems include:

a. Parisyllabic nouns ending in **-is**, **-ēs**, or **-e**.

b. Neuters in **-e**, **-al** and **-ar**.

c. Many nouns whose stems apparently end in two consonants. These must be determined from observation and a comparison of their forms.

PENSUM QUARTUM DECIMUM

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. Adjectives of the third declension are called adjectives of *one*, *two* or *three terminations* according as they have the same termination for each gender in the nominative singular (*of one termination*), or the same form for the masculine and feminine and another for the neuter (*of two terminations*), or a different form for each gender (*of three terminations*)

2. Adjectives like **omnis** (of two terminations) are **-i** stems, having the ablative singular ending in **-ī**, the genitive plural **-ium**, the neuter plural **-ia**, and the accusative plural **-īs** or **-ēs**.

Learn the inflection of the adjective **omnis**, noting that the masculine and feminine genders are alike, and that the endings are the same as in **fīnis**. The neuter will be easily remembered by recalling the cases that have the same form.

	Numerus singulāris		**Numerus plūrālis**	
	Stem **omni-**			
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem	Neut.
N.	**omn-is**	**omn-e**	**omn-ēs**	**omn-ia**
G.	**omn-is**	**omn-is**	**omn-ium**	**omn-ium**
D.	**omn-ī**	**omn-ī**	**omn-ibus**	**omn-ibus**
Ac.	**omn-em**	**omn-e**	**omn-ēs (-īs)**	**omn-ia**
V.	**omn-is**	**omn-e**	**omn-ēs**	**omn-ia**
Ab.	**omn-ī**	**omn-ī**	**omn-ibus**	**omn-ibus**

Decline the nouns **animus, causa, bellum, pars, flūmen,** and others in each case modifying with the adjective **omnis**, thus: **omnis animus — omnis animī — omnī animō — omnem animum**, etc. The student will need to remember that the adjective agrees with the noun, not in spelling, but in gender, number, and case. For a fuller exhibition of forms, see the Appendix or the grammars. A daily review of these important forms will insure permanence of knowledge. Hereafter, adjectives of the third declension will be given in the manner usually followed in vocabularies and lexicons.

Verte in Anglicum:

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

quartus (-a, -um) decimus (-a, -um) fourteenth
omnis, -e every, all, the whole of, as a whole
fortis, -e strong, brave
attingit touches upon, extends to, reaches
etiam, *conj.* and now, even, also
ā, ab, *prep. c. abl.* from, by, at, on the side of
vergit inclines, slopes
septentriōnēs, -um; septentriō, -ōnis, M. the seven stars, (of the Great Bear), the North

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Verte in Anglicum:

Ūna pars Garumnā flūmine continētur — Ūna pars flūmen Rhēnum attingit — omnis mercātor ea ad septentriōnēs importat — hūmānitās nostrae prōvinciae etiam Germānōs trāns Rhēnum attingit.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

One part is bounded — a part is bounded by the ocean and the boundaries of the Belgians — one part touches upon the river Rhine — one part is bounded by the river — the river begins (*takes a beginning*) at one part — the refinement also of the Gauls — Belgae dwell toward the north — all these are on the side of (*ab*) the Sequanians — the Helvetians import these things — the merchants visit the north — it has been said the Gauls possess (*Gallōs obtinēre*) these things.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Unde capit initium ūna pars? Quō modo (*how*) continētur? Quō (*by what*) flūmine continētur? Quid attingit?

Quō vergit? Nōnne ad septentriōnēs vergit? (Ita, ad septentriōnēs vergit.) Sumusne (*are we*) Belgae? (Minimē, nōn [*not*] sumus Belgae: sumus Americānī.) Habitāsne (*do you live*) in septentriōne (*at the North*)? (Ita est, in septentriōne habitō [*I live*].) Quō in cāsū est *Sēquanīs? flūmen? septentriōnēs?* Quō in numerō est *Helvētiīs? Rhēnum?* Cūius dēclīnātiōnis (*declension*) est *pars?* (Dēclīnātiōnis tertiae.) *Rhēnum?* (Dēclīnātiōnis secundae.) *Garumnā? Ōceanō? fīnibus*?

NOTES

1. **ab** denotes position as well as separation and in the phrase **ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs,** etc., may be rendered, *on the side of.* Compare its use in previous lessons.
2. **sumusne:** use of **-ne? I,** foot note.

PENSUM QUINTUM DECIMUM

Introductory Notes:

1. The comparative degree of adjectives is formed by adding **-ior to** the stem of the positive, less the stem vowel, for the masculine and feminine genders, and **-ius** for the neuter. Thus **īnferus,** stem **īnfer(o) + -ior =īnferior.**

2. With the nominative, thus formed, as a stem, **comparatives** are inflected with endings of the third declension.

Learn thoroughly the paradigm of **īnferior,** *lower,* observing (1) that the masculine and feminine genders are alike (as in **omnis**), (2) that the endings are those already learned in the the third declension, (3) as the neuter singular has the accusative and vocative like the nominative it does not show the stem **īnferior-** in these cases and (4) the genitive plural ends in **-um** and the neuter plural ends in **-a** (not **-ium** and **-ia** for these cases as in parisyllabic words). Compare the other endings with **those** of **omnis.**

Numerus singulāris		Numerus plūrālis	
Stem **īnferior-**			
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. **īnferior**	**īnferius**	N. **īnferiōr-ēs**	**īnferiōr-a**
G. **īnferiōr-is**	**īnferiōr-is**	G. **īnferiōr-um**	**īnferiōr-um**
D. **īnferiōr-ī**	**īnferiōr-ī**	D. **īnferiōr-ibus**	**īnferiōr-ibus**
Ac. **īnferiōr-em**	**īnferius**	Ac. **īnferiōr-ēs(īs)**	**īnferiōr-a**
V. **īnferior**	**īnferius**	V. **īnferiōr-ēs**	**īnferiōr-a**
Ab. **īnferiōr-e(-ī)**	**īnferiōr-e(-ī)**	Ab. **īnferiōr-ibus**	**īnferiōr-ibus**

Like **īnferior** inflect the comparative of **fortis**, *brave;* **fortior, fortius,** etc.

Inflect together **pars īnferior; Gallia īnferior; animus īnferior; flūmen īnferius,** thus, **animus īnferior, animī īnferiōris, animō īnferiōrī,** etc.

3. Adjectives whose nominative form is the same for all genders are called adjectives of one termination. They are consonant stems but have the form of i stems in the ablative singular (**-īor-e**), in the genitive plural (**-ium**) and in the neuter (nom., acc., voc., **-ia**).

Recite the paradigm of **oriēns,** *rising*, noting the formation of the nominative from the stem as explained in XIII, Intr. note 2. Compare these forms with those of **omnis.**

Numerus singulāris		Numerus plūrālis	
Stem **orient-**			
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. **oriēns**	**oriēns**	N. **orient-ēs**	**orient-ia**
G. **orient-is**	**orient-is**	G. **orient-ium**	**orient-ium**
D. **orient-ī**	**orient-ī**	D. **orient-ibus**	**orient-ibus**
Ac. **orient-em**	**oriēns**	Ac. **orient-ēs(-īs)**	**orient-ia**
V. **oriēns**	**oriēns**	V. **orient-ēs**	**orient-ia**
Ab. **orient-e(-ī)**	**orent-e(-ī)**	Ab. **orient-ibus**	**orient-ibus**

Inflect together **sōl oriēns; lingua oriēns; bellum oriēns:** thus, **bellum oriēns, bellī orientis, bellō orientī,** etc.

Verte īn Anglicum:

Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

quīntus (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um fifteenth
extrēmus, -a, -um farthest, extreme, most remote
oriuntur arise, rise, begin
īnferus, -a, -um low (in position); late (in time)
spectant look, face
oriēns, orientis rising
sōl, sōlis, M. sun
oriēns sōl the east

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

The Belgians rise — they rise (begin) from the boundaries — from the farthest boundaries of Gaul — they extend — they extend to a part of the river — to the lower part of the river Rhine — to the lower parts of the rivers — they face — toward the north — toward the east — toward the north and east — the very brave Belgae face toward the east and north — one part extends to the Rhone — it slopes to the north.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Unde oriuntur Belgae? Quō pertinent Belgae? Ad quod (*what*) flūmen dīxistī (*did you say*)? Quam ad partem flūminis? Quō spectant Belgae? Quam in partem (*in what direction*) dīxistī? Quae ōrātiōnis pars (*what part of speęch*) est *oriēns?* (*Oriēns* participium est.) Cūius dēclīnātiōnis (*of what declension*)? (Dēclīnātiōnis tertiae.) Quae ōrātiōnis pars est *īnferior?* Quō in gradū comparātiōnis (*in what degree of comparison*)? (In gradū comparātīvō est.) Potesne dēclīnāre (*can you decline*) *īnferior?* Certē, nam audī (*just listen*).

PENSUM SEXTUM DECIMUM.

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam

partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

sextus (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um sixteenth
Aquitānia, -ae, f., (see map) Aquitania
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um Pyrenean, Pyrenees
mōns, mōntis, m. mountain
eam (cf. **eōs, eōrum**) this, that
Hispānia, -ae, f. Spain
occāsum falling, setting
occāsum sōlis the setting sun, the west
quam, *conj., used after comparative to connect the objects compared,* than

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Aquitania extends to the mountains — to the mountains and the ocean — the part which is near Spain — (it) extends to that part which is near the west — between the west and north — between the north and east — the Garonne river flows (*fluit*) towards the north and west — the mountain — the mountains — these mountains are called Pyrenean — Aquitania slopes toward the ocean — the Atlantic ocean extends toward the west.

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Aquitānia, quae est ad Ōceanum, ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis pertinet. Flūmen Garumna inter Aquitānōs et Gallōs est. Flūmen Aquitāniae inter mōntēs est. Montēs ad Hispāniam Pyrēnaeī appellantur. Aquitānia Hispāniā, Ōceanō, Garumnā flūmine continētur. Pyrēnaeī mōntēs inter Aquitāniam et Hispāniam sunt. Pertinent ā Mediterrāneō ad Atlanticum. Belgae fortiōrēs quam Aquitānī sunt. Nōn omnēs Gallī fortēs sunt. Garumna flūmen Aquitānōs ab Celtīs dīvidit et Ōceanum attingit. Aquitānī suīs fīnibus Germānōs prohibent et ad nostram prōvinciam saepe commeant.

Eōrum lēgēs ā lēgibus Rōmānōrum differunt. Īnferior pars Aquitāniae ad occāsum sōlis spectat. Hī ad īnferiōrem partem pertinent.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Those who (*quī*) inhabit Aquitania are called Aquitanians in our language. 2. Aquitania is separated (*dīvīsa*) from Spain by the Pyrenees mountains. 3. For this reason the merchants very seldom visit Spain. 4. The Belgians, who are braver than the Celts, (do) not import those things which tend to weaken their courage. 5. One part, which extends to the ocean, is bounded by the mountains and rivers. 6. The Pyrenees mountains are very far distant from the Belgae. 7. It has been said (that) the Aquitani possess that part which is toward Spain. 8. The lower parts of the river extend to the great mountains. 9. The brave Aquitani are not kept away from the civilization of the Romans.

Latīnē hīs respondēto:

Ā quō flūmine (*from what river*) ad quōs montēs, pertinet Aquitānia? Ad quem ōceanum? Nōnne Aquitānia ad (*near*) Hispāniam est? Ita, vērō (*yes, indeed*). Quō (*whither*) vergit Aquitānia? In quō cāsū est nōmen (*the noun*) *partem?* (In cāsū accūsātīvō.) *mōntēs? Ōceanī? sōlis?* In quō numerō est *partem? flūmine? montēs?*

Inflect together **Pȳrēnaeus mōns, oriēns sōl,** and **īnferior pars,** giving the meaning in each case, thus: **orientis sōlis,** *of the rising sun.*

PENSUM SEPTIMUM DECIMUM

The preceding lessons cover the text of the first chapter of Caesar's "De Bello Gallico." The connected text will be found in the pages immediately preceding the appendix.

Review rapidly the text of this chapter together with the review work given below.

REVIEW VOCABULARY

I

Pēnsum, -ī, N.
prīmus, -a, -um
vocābulōrum index
Gallia, -ae, F.
est
omnis, -e
dīvīsus, -a, -um
in
pars, partis, F.
trēs, tria

II

secundus, -a, -um
quārum, quī
ūnus, -a, -um
incolunt
Belgae, -ārum, M.
alius, -a, -um
Aquitānī, -ōrum, M.
tertius, -a, -um
ipsōrum
lingua, -ae, F.
Celtae, -ārum, M.
noster, -tra, -trum
Gallī, -ōrum, M.
appellantur

III

hī, hōrum
lēx, lēgis, F.
inter
sē
differunt

IV

quartus, -a, -um
ab, ā
Garumna, -ae, M.
flūmen, flūminis, N.
Mātrona, -ae, M.
et
Sēquana, -ae, M.
dīvidit

V

quīntus, -a, -um
fortissimus, -a, -um
sunt
propterea
quod
cultū
atque
hūmānitās, -tātis, F.
prōvincia, -ae, F.
longissimus, -a, -um
absunt
cūr

VI

sextus, -a, -um
minimē
-que
ad
eōs
mercātor, -ōris, M.
saepe
minimē . . . saepe
commeant
ea
quae
effēminandōs
animus, -ī, M.
pertinent
important

VII

septimus, -a, -um
proximus, -a, -um
Germānus, -ī, M.
trāns
Rhēnus, -ī, M.
cum
quibus
continenter
bellum, -ī, N.
gerunt

VIII

octāvus, -a, -um
īnstitūtum, -ī, N.

IX

dē
causa, -ae, F.
Helvētius, -ī, M.
quoque
reliquus, -a, -um
virtūs, -tūtis, F.

praecēdunt
ferē
cotīdiānus, -a, -um
proelium, -ī, N.
contendunt

X

decimus, -a, -um
numerus, -ī, M.
masculīnus, -a, -um
fēminīnus, -a -um
Latīnus, -a, -um
Rōmānus, -a, -um
Anglicus, -a, -um
Americānus, -a, -um
Gallicus, -a, -um

XI

ūndecimus, -a, -um
cum
aut
aut . . . aut
prohibent
ipsī
in
eōrum

XII

duodecimus, -a, -um
quam
obtinēre
dictum est
initium, -ī, N.
capit
initium capit ā
Rhodanus, -ī, M.
continētur
Ōceanus, -ī, M.
Atlanticus, -a, -um

XIII

tertius, (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um
index, indicis, F.
pars, partis, F.
fīnis, -is, M.
Caesar, Caesaris, M.
nōmen, -inis, N.

XIV

quartus, (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um
fortis, -e
attingit
etiam
ā, ab
vergit
septentriōnēs, M.

XV

quintus, (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um
extrēmus, -a, -um
oriuntur
īnferus, -a, -um
spectant
oriēns, -ntis
sōl, sōlis
oriēns sōl

XVI

sextus, (-a, -um) decimus, -a, -um
Aquitānia, -ae, F.
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um
mōns, mōntis, M.
Hispānia, -ae, F.
occāsum
occāsum sōlis

REVIEW TOPICS

(1) Use of the enclitic **-ne**. (2) Answers to questions in Latin. (3) Use of **nōnne**. (4) Endings of verbs in the active voice, third person, singular and plural. (5) Cases and their uses. (6) Distinction between **et**, **-que**, and **atque**. (7) Declensions and how distinguished. (8) First declension. (9) Second declension. (10) Agreement of adjectives. (11) Adjectives of the first and second declensions. (12) Use of **suus**. (13) **In** with accusative, with ablative. (14) Endings of verbs in passive voice, third person, singular and plural. (15) Third declension. (16) Adjectives of the third declension. (17) Formation and declension of comparatives.

Stem ending		I.	II.		III.				IV.		V.
		-ă	-ŏ		Consonant			-ī	-ū		-ē
		F[1].	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.
SING.	N.	-a[1]	-us, -er, -ir	-um	-s[2] *or* —[3]	—[3]	-g[2] *or* —[3]	—[3]	-us	-ū	-ēs
	G	-ae	-ī		-is				-ūs	-ēī	
	D.	-ae	-ō		-ī				-uī(ū)	-ū	-ēī
	Ac.	-am	-um		-em	Nom.	-im (em)	Nom.	-um	-ū	-em
	V.	-a	-e, -er, -ir	-um	Nom.				-us	-ū	-ēs
	Ab.	-ā	-ō		-e		-ī (e)		-ū		-ē
PLUR.	N	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	G.	-ārum	-ōrum		-um		-ium		-uum		-ērum
	D.	-īs	-īs		-ibus				-ibus		-ēbus
	Ac	-ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs	-a	-īs (ēs)	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	V.	-ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ia	-ūs	-ua	-ēs
	Ab.	-īs	-īs		-ibus				-ibus		-ēbus

MODEL NOUNS.

		mens-[4]	serv-	bell-	duc-	capit-	tuss-	mar-	fruct-	gen-	di-
SING.	N.	mensa	servus	bellum	dux	caput	tussis	mare	fructus	genū	diēs
	G.	mensae	servī	bellī	ducis	capitis	tussis	maris	fructūs	genūs	diēī
	D.	mensae	servō	bellō	ducī	capitī	tussī	marī	fructuī	genū	diēī
	Ac.	mensam	servum	bellum	ducem	caput	tussim	mare	fructum	genū	diem
	V.	mensa	serve	bellum	dux	caput	tussis	mare	fructus	genū	diēs
	Ab.	mensā	servō	bellō	duce	capite	tussī	marī	fructū	genū	diē
PLUR.	N.	mensae	servī	bella	ducēs	capita	tussēs	maria	fructūs	genua	diēs
	G.	mensārum	servōrum	bellōrum	ducum	capitum	tussium	marium	fructuum	genuum	diērum
	D.	mensīs	servīs	bellīs	ducibus	capitibus	tussibus	maribus	fructibus	genibus	diēbus
	Ac.	mensās	servōs	bella	ducēs	capita	tussis(ēs)	maria	fructūs	genua	diēs
	V.	mensae	servī	bella	ducēs	capita	tussēs	maria	fructūs	genua	diēs
	Ab.	mensīs	servīs	bellīs	ducibus	capitibus	tussibus	maribus	fructibus	genibus	diēbus

[1] In the first three declensions some exceptions in the use of case endings and in genders occur in Greek nouns. See Grammars.

[2] Stem usually undergoes euphonic change in the nominative.

[3] Wanting, and stem usually undergoes euphonic change in the nominative.

[4] This much of the stem is called the base which may always be found by dropping the ending of the Genitive singular; the declension of any noun may be built up by adding the proper case endings of the above table to the base. In consonant stems the base and stem are usually identical.

II. DECLENSIONS OF ADJECTIVES.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: A AND O STEMS.

SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
bon us	bon a	bon um	miser	miser a	miser um	niger	nigr a	nigr um
bon ī	bon ae	bon ī	miser ī	miser ae	miser ī	nigr ī	nigr ae	nigr ī
bon ō	bon ae	bon ō	miser ō	miser ae	miser ō	nigr ō	nigr ae	nigr ō
bon um	bon am	bon um	miser um	miser am	miser um	nigr um	nigr am	nigr um
bon e	bon a	bon um	miser	miser a	miser um	niger	nigr a	nigr um
bon ō	bon ā	bon ō	miser ō	miser ā	miser ō	nigr ō	nigr ā	nigr ō
PLURAL.			PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
bon ī	bon ae	bon a	miser ī	miser ae	miser a	nigr ī	nigr ae	nigr a
bon ōrum	bon ārum	bon ōrum	miser ōrum	miser ārum	miser ōrum	nigr ōrum	nigr ārum	nigr ōrum
bon īs	bon īs	bon īs	miser īs	miser īs	miser īs	nigr īs	nigr īs	nigr īs
bon ōs	bon ās	bon a	miser ōs	miser ās	miser a	nigr ōs	nigr ās	nigr a
bon ī	bon ae	bon a	miser ī	miser ae	miser a	nigr ī	nigr ae	nigr a
bon īs	bon īs	bon īs	miser īs	miser īs	miser īs	nigr īs	nigr īs	nigr īs

The following nine adjectives have **-īus** in the genitive singular in all genders and **-ī** in the dative: ***alius, nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, ūllus, ūnus, alter, neuter, uter.***

THIRD DECLENSION.

Three Terminations.

SINGULAR.		
M.	F.	N.
ācer	ācr is	ācr e
ācr is	ācr is	ācr is
ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī
ācr em	ācr em	ācr e
ācer	ācr is	ācr e
ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī
PLURAL.		
ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
ācr ium	ācr ium	ācr ium
ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus
ācr īs (ēs)	ācr īs (ēs)	ācr ia
ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus

Two Terminations.

SINGULAR.			
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
lev is	lev e	melior	melius
lev is	lev is	meliōr is	meliōr is
lev ī	lev ī	meliōr ī	meliōr ī
lev em	lev e	meliōr em	melius
lev is	lev e	melior	melius
lev ī	lev ī	meliōr e (ī)	meliōr e (ī)
PLURAL.			
lev ēs	lev ia	meliōr ēs	meliōr a
lev ium	lev ium	meliōr ium	meliōr um
lev ibus	lev ibus	meliōr ibus	meliōr ibus
lev īs (ēs)	lev ia	meliōr īs (ēs)	meliōr a
lev ēs	lev ia	meliōr ēs	meliōr a
lev ibus	lev ibus	meliōr ibus	meliōr ibus

One Termination.

SINGULAR.	
M. & F.	N.
prūdēns	prūdēns
prūdent is	prūdent is
prūdent ī	prūdent ī
prūdent em	prūdēns
prūdēns	prūdēns
prūdent ī (e) [1]	prūdent ī (e)
PLURAL.	
prūdent ēs	prūdent ia
prūdent ium	prūdent ium
prūdent ibus	prūdent ibus
prūdent ēs (īs)	prūdent ia
prūdent ēs	prūdent ia
prūdent ibus	prūdent ibus

[1] The present participle usually has **-e.**

Write a translation of chapter I in good English.

Inflect the nouns and adjectives of this chapter, and name the case and number of the forms found in the text.

PENSUM DUODEVICESIMUM

Caput prīmum memoriter prōfer (*chapter first from memory recite*).

A rapid recitation of the first chapter each day is earnestly recommended. This need not occupy more than two minutes, and is invaluable in furnishing models and fixing in the mind the exact order of the words. Hereafter the memorizing of the text need not be required; but the student should be so familiar with it as to render the Latin into English or the English into Latin when pronounced in short sentences by the teacher.

Recite rapidly the paradigms already learned.

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. The Demonstrative pronouns (*prōnōmina dēmōnstrātīva*) are so called because they specify the objects to which they refer. They are used either *alone* as substantives or *with nouns* as adjectives. Excepting **ipse**, *self*, they have no vocative forms.

2. **Is**, *he, this, that*, is the weakest of the demonstratives and refers to some object just mentioned or to one to be explained by a relative. The Latin has no personal pronouns of the third person and the forms of **is** are frequently used instead. A. 102, *d*.

Learn thoroughly the forms of **is**, observing when its stem **i** is changed to **e** and when its terminations differ from those of **māgnus**.

Declension of **is** (*he, this, that*), **ea** (*she, this, that*), **id** (*it, this, that*).

	numerus singulāris			numerus plūrālis		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī (iī)**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**ēius**	**ēius**	**ēius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**iīs (eīs)**	**iīs (eīs)**	**iīs (eīs)**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**iīs (eīs)**	**iīs (eīs)**	**iīs (eīs)**

Note the forms of **is** in the preceding lessons.

Inflect the nouns **lingua, animus, lēx, flūmen**, in each case modified by the appropriate form of **is**: thus, **ea lingua, ēius linguae, eī linguae**, etc.

Verte in Anglicum:

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is . . . coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

duodēvīcēsimus,-a,-um eighteenth
apud, *prep. c. acc.* among
longē, *adv.* by far, far
nōbilis, -e noted, well known
fuit was
dīves, dīvitis (sup. **dītissimus**) rich, wealthy
Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis, M. Orgetorix (a chieftain of the Helvetii)
is, ea, id, *dem. pron.* he, she, it; this, that
coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F. swearing together, conspiracy
nōbilitās, -tātis, F. nobility, nobles
fēcit made

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

The Helvetians — among the Helvetians — Orgetorix was wealthiest — Orgetorix was by far the most noted — Orgetorix is rich — the Helvetians are noted — he made — that (one) made a conspiracy — the nobility did not make a conspiracy — the wealthy Orgetorix made a conspiracy — Orgetorix was the most wealthy among the Helvetians — that conspiracy — those conspiracies — of those conspiracies — Aquitania extends from the Garonne to the Pyrenees — Spain looks to the west.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Orgetorix was more noted than the rest of the Helvetians. 2. He is most wealthy, for this reason, because he imports those things into the provinces. 3. He continually made conspiracies with the Aquitani who dwell across these mountains. 4. Orgetorix is the richest of all these. 5. They themselves dwell among the Germans and wage daily battles with them.

NOTES

1. **Longē**, *adverb* from the adjective **longus**. Adverbs from adjectives of the second declension are formed by cutting off the nominative case-ending **-s** of the adjective and changing the stem vowel **o** to **ē**; e. g. **longus**, case-ending **-s**, stem vowel **o** changed to **ē** gives **longē**. Cf. **longissimē**, V, and **minimē**, VI.

2. The superlative degree (**gradus superlātīvus**) is formed by adding **-issimus, -issima, -issimum** to the stem of the positive less the final vowel; e. g. **nōbilis**, stem **nōbili-**, superlative **nōbilissimus**. It is inflected throughout like **māgnus**, X. Observe that **dītissimus** is contracted for **dīvitissimus**. For the formation of the superlatīve, cf. A. 89; G. 86; H. 162; P. 165.

3. In general the student should not employ **is** or **iī** (**eī**) to represent the English *he* and *they* which are regularly expressed in Latin by the terminations of the verb, **-t** (**-tur**), **-nt** (**-ntur**).

PENSUM UNDEVICESIMUM

Verte in Anglicum:

Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit,

VOCABULORUM INDEX

ūndēvīcēsimus, -a, -um nineteenth
Mārcus, -ī, (*abbr.* **M.**) M. Marcus (*a Roman praenōmen*)
Messāla, -ae, M. Messala (*a Roman nōmen*)
Pīsō, Pīsōnis, M. Piso (*a Roman nōmen.*)
cōnsul, cōnsulis, M. consul
rēgnum, -ī, N. sovereignty, kingly *or* royal power
cupiditās, -tātis, F. desire
inductus, -a, -um led on, influenced, induced
cīvitās, -tātis, F. state, citizens (of the state)
persuāsit persuaded
erant were

Dērīvātīva Anglica nōminā.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

A consul — consuls — in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso — royal power — a desire of royal power — influenced by a desire of royal power—influenced by that desire — he was most wealthy — he made a conspiracy of the nobles — he persuaded — Orgetorix persuaded the citizens — Messala and Piso are consuls — they have (*habent*) a desire of sovereignty.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Orgetorix, the most noted (man) among the Helvetians, persuaded the nobles. 2. Messala and Piso were consuls when (*ubi*) Orgetorix made the conspiracy. 3. The desire for royal power tends to great wars. 4. The state was very wealthy in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso. 5. That conspiracy of the nobility made them most noted. 6. Orgetorix persuaded a part of the nobility.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quis (*who*) fuit apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus? Nōnne Orgetorīx fuit dīves? (Ita, dītissimus fuit.) Quis fēcit coniūrātiōnem? Cūr fēcit coniūrātiōnem? Quī (*who*) erant cōnsulēs? Fuitne Orgetorīx Helvētius (*a Helvetian*)? Erantne M. Messāla et M. Pīsō Helvētiī? (Minime vērō [*no indeed,*] erant Rōmānī.) Fuitne Orgetorīx nōbilis? Ita (*yes*), vērō, nōbilissimus. Quō in cāsū est *rēgnī? cupiditāte? cīvitātī?* Quā in cōnstrūctiōne (*in what construction*) est nōmen *coniūrātiōnem?* (Accūsātīvō, obiectum verbī *fēcit.*) Quā in cōnstrūctiōne est *M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus?* (Ablātīvō absolūtō)

NOTES

1. Many verbs which in English govern the direct object, in Latin govern the Dative of the indirect object: thus, **cīvitātī persuāsit,** *he persuaded (used persuasive arguments to) the citizens.* This is true in general of verbs which indirectly affect their object either for good or ill. App.

61; A. 227; G. 346; H. 385, I, II; P. 375, 376.

2. **M. Messālā**, etc. *a.* As the consuls, the two executive officers of the Roman republic, were elected annually, their names were often used to designate the year of their administration. *b.* In translating an abbreviation (as **M.**) always give the full form which the abbreviation designates.

3. Observe that the phrase **M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus** is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, i. e. it is an absolute construction. This construction is called the *Ablative Absolute* (**ablātīvus absolūtus**). A participle (or group of participles) is most frequently used with a noun (or group of nouns) in this construction, but when the place of the participle is filled by a noun (or adjective) the participial idea of *being* is implied: thus, *Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso 'being' consuls.* The best English style, however, avoids the participial construction. The phrase may be rendered, *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.* App. 98; A. 255 and *a;* G. 409, 410; H. 431, 4; P. 422.

4. Nouns ending in **-tās**, genitive **-tātis**, (e. g. **cupiditās, nōbilitās, cīvitās**) are of the feminine gender. For formation of the nominative from the stem, see XII, Intr. N. 2.

PENSUM VICESIMUM

Introductory Notes:

1. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in **-īus** (in **alter** usually **-ius**) and the dative singular in **-ī** in all genders. These are **alius, sōlus, ūllus, ūnus, tōtus, nūllus, alter, uter, neuter.**

2. Learn the declension of **ūnus**, *one*, **alius**, *another*, **tōtus**, *the whole*, **alter**, *the other*, comparing the genitive and dative forms with those of **is** and other forms with those of **māgnus.**

	singulāris			singulāris		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**	**tōtus**	**tōta**	**tōtum**
G.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**tōtīus**	**tōtīus**	**tōtīus**
D.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**tōtī**	**tōtī**	**tōtī**
Ac.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**tōtum**	**tōtam**	**tōtum**
Ab.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**tōtō**	**tōtā**	**tōtō**

	singulāris			singulāris		
N.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G.	alīus	alīus	alīus	alterius	alterius	alterius
D.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

In the plural the case endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in **māgnus**. Note the ending **-ud** in the neuter of **alius**.

Verte in Anglicum:

Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

vīcēsimus, -a, -um twentieth
ut or **utī**, *conj. c. subj.* that, so that
cōpia, -ae, F. abundance, supply, *in plural*, forces, troops
exīrent (**ut . . . exīrent** *to go forth*) go forth, leave
esse to be; *with words of saying*, is *or* was (are *or* were)
perfacilis, -e very easy
virtūs, virtūtis, F. manliness, valor, bravery
praestārent stood before, excelled, surpassed
tōtus, -a, -um (*gen.* **tōtīus**) whole the whole of, entire
imperium, -ī, N. supreme power, government
potīrī to get control of, to get possession of

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

He persuaded — he persuaded the citizens (state) — he persuaded the citizens to go forth — to go forth from their boundaries — he said (*dīxit*) — he said it was very easy — since — since they surpassed — in valor — since they surpassed all in valor — of entire Gaul — to get possession of — to get posses-

sion of the government — to get possession of the government of entire Gaul — he said it was very easy to get possession of the government of entire Gaul.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso, he persuaded the citizens to go forth from their boundaries. 2. He said (*dīxit*) it was very easy to get possession of Gaul and the river Rhone. 3. The merchants often visit them. 4. Since they surpassed all in valor. 5. It is very easy to get possession. 6. One part, which it has been said the Gauls possess, is bounded by the Rhone and slopes toward the north.

Inflect together **Mārcus Pīsō, fīnis suus, omnis cōpia, tōta Gallia.**

NOTES

1. **Esse,** literally *to be* is in the infinitive mode, because it follows a verb of saying suggested by *persuāsit* in the preceding sentence. When an infinitive follows a verb of mental action, i. e. of *declaring* or *thinking* (expressed or understood), it should be translated into English by the indicative mode. Thus, **perfacile esse,** (*saying*) *that it is very easy.* This is called the infinitive in indirect discourse (*ōrātiō oblīqua*). The direct discourse (*ōrātiō rēcta*) i. e. the exact words of Orgetorix, would read **perfacile est,** *it is very easy.* Cf. *Gallōs obtinēre dictum est,* XII. App. A. 336, I. 2; G. 648-663; H. 522, 523, I.; P. 514 ff.

2. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case. In rendering into English, translate by the nominative.

3. **potīrī,** *to get control of,* has its object, **imperiō,** in the ablative. App. 91; A. 249; G. 407; H. 421, I.; P. 419. What is the regular case of the direct object?

PENSUM VICESIMUM PRIMUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. The demonstrative **hīc,** *this,* is used of what is *near* in time, thought, or position.

2. Learn the declension of **hīc**, comparing its forms with those of **is** and **māgnus**.

Hīc, *this*

	singulāris			plūrālis		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

Note the forms of **hīc** employed in the text of the preceding lessons. Inflect together **hīc animus, haec lingua, hōc bellum.**

3. Most nouns of the second declension whose stem ends in **ro-** do not add **s** to form the nominative (cf. VIII, Intr. note) but in the formation of this case the stem vowel is dropped and **e** (if not already present) is inserted before the **r** as in the paradigm of **ager** given below. The vocative is the same as the nominative. In other respects the terminations are as in **animus**.

ager, M. *field*

Stem **agro-**

	singulāris	plūrālis
Nom.	ager	agrī
Gen.	agrī	agrōrum
Dat.	agrō	agrīs
Acc.	agrum	agrōs
Voc.	ager	agrī
Abl.	agrō	agrīs

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit;

VOCABULORUM INDEX

vīcēsimus (vīcēns-), -a, -um prīmus, -a, -um twenty-first

hīc, haec, hōc, *dem. pron.* this

facile, *adv.* (*comp.* **facilius**) easily

undique, *adv.* on all sides
locus, -ī, M. place, position
nātūra, -ae, F. nature, character
ē (*before consonants*), **ex** (*before vowels and consonants*), *prep. c. abl.* from, out of, on
ūnā ex parte on one side
lātus, -a, -um broad, wide
altus, -a, -um high, deep
ager, agrī, M. field, country, territory
Helvētius (Helvēticus), -a, -um Helvetian, of the Helvetians

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Easily — more easily — he persuaded them the more easily — he persuaded them this the more easily — nature — by the nature — by the nature of the place — is bounded — are bounded—the Helvetians are bounded by the nature of the place — on one side — by the river Rhine — the river is very wide — by the very deep river — the Rhine, which separates — which separates the Helvetian territory — to get control of the government — since they surpassed all in valor — he persuaded the Helvetians to go forth with all their troops.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. This (*hōc*) the more easily he persuaded the nobles. 2. Gaul is bounded on all sides by the nature of the place. 3. It is bounded on one side by the river Rhine, which is very wide and deep. 4. Orgetorix persuaded the nobles of the Helvetians to go forth from the Helvetian country. 5. Very wide rivers separate (*dīvidunt*) these fields from the other places.

NOTES

1. **Id**, *this* (*to this course*), is the direct object of **persuāsit**. What is the construction of **eīs**? XIX, 1.

2. The comparative degree of adverbs formed from adjectives is the neuter of the adjective in the comparative degree. Thus **facilius**, the comparative of **facile**, is the neuter singular comparative of the adjective

facilis, from which the adverb **facile** is derived. A. 92; G. 93, 4; H. 306; P. 175.

3. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-er** (as **ager**) or **-ir** (as **vir**, *man*) are of the masculine gender. Of what gender are those ending in **-us**? VII, 1. Those ending in **-um**?

PENSUM VICESIMUM SECUNDUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. Learn the inflection of the relative pronoun **quī** comparing its forms with those of **māgnus**, **alius**, and **is**.

Declension of **quī**, *who, which, what*

	Singulāris			Plūrālis		
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

Determine the forms of **quī** in the text of the preceding lessons.

2. The interrogative pronoun, when used as an adjective, has exactly the same forms as the relative. When used substantively it varies from the relative only in the forms **quis** and **quid** in the nominative singular masculine and neuter, and in the form **quid** for the singular neuter accusative.

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte mōnte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

alter, altera, alterum (for inflection see XX, Intr. note 2), other (of two), second

Jūra, -ae, M. Jura, *the mountain range extending from the Rhine to the Rhone*

lacū (by the) lake

(lacus) Lemannus, -ī, M. (lake) Leman *or* Geneva

noster, nostra, nostrum, *genitive* **nostrī,** etc. (note 2), our, ours

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

He persuaded them — easily — the more easily — the Helvetians are bounded by nature itself (*ipsā*) — on one side — on a second side — on a third side — high, deep — a very high mountain — very high mountains — a deep river — by the very broad and deep river — the Rhine is broad and deep — the Rhine which separates — the Helvetian territory — between — the river is between the Sequani and Helvetians — who — of whom — to whom — the mountain which is high — the rivers which are deep — Orgetorix, who is wealthy.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. He easily persuaded them this. 2. It is bounded on the second side by Mount Jura, which slopes toward the north. 3. The river Rhone separates our province from the Helvetians. 4. Orgetorix persuaded these who surpass all in valor. 5. In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso he made a conspiracy of the nobility. 6. For this reason they wage war with the Germans. 7. Led on by a desire of supreme power, they contend in almost daily battles. 8. The high mountains, which are near Spain, are called the Pyrenees.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quis persuāsit eīs ut dē fīnibus suīs exīrent? Quod flū-

men est ūnā ex parte? Quod flūmen dīvidit agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs? Quī mōns (*what mountain*) est alterā ex parte? Quī lacus est tertiā ex parte? Quī mōns est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs? Estne mōns Iūra altus? (Est altissimus.) Quod flūmen prōvinciam Rōmānam ab Helvētiīs dīvidit? In quō cāsū est *id? eīs? parte? agrum? prōvinciam?*

NOTES

1. The relative regularly agrees with its antecedent in gender and number but its case depends upon the construction of the clause to which it belongs: thus **quī** is masculine singular in agreement with its antecedent **Rhēnō** (**Rhodanō**) but is in the nominative case, the subject of **dīvidit**.

2. Adjectives of the first and second declensions (like **noster**) whose stem ends in **ro-** form the nominative and vocative masculine like noun stems in **ro-**, XIX, Intr. note 3. The other terminations are as in **māgnus**. App. 7; A. 82; G. 31, 73; H. 149; P. 143.

PENSUM VICESIMUM TERTIUM

FIFTH DECLENSION

The stem ends in **ē**, nominative in **s**. The **e** is short in the accusative singular of all nouns and in the genitive and dative singular of **fidēs**, **spēs** and **rēs**.

	rēs, F., *thing, affair*		**diēs**, M., *day*	
	singulāris	**plūrālis**	**singulāris**	**plūrālis**
NOM.	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
GEN.	reī	rērum	diēī(diē)	diērum
DAT.	reī	rēbus	diēī(diē)	diēbus
ACC.	rem	rēs	diem	diēs
VOC.	rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
ABL.	rē	rēbus	diē	diēbus

App. 6; A. 72; G. 63; H. 120; P. 132.

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent;

VOCABULORUM INDEX

rēs, reī, F. thing, affair, matter
fīēbat it happened, it came to pass
et . . . et both . . . and
minus, *comp. adv.* (cf. **minimē,** *least*) less
lātē, *adv.* [**lātus,** *wide*] widely, extensively
vagārentur (they) roamed, wandered
fīnitimī, -ōrum (*cf.* **fīnēs**) M. neighbors
īnferre to bear into, to bring *or* wage upon
possent could, were able

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Things — those things — from those things — it happened — it happened that they wandered — that they wandered widely — less widely — it happened that they could bring war upon — to bring war upon their neighbors — the neighbors inhabit Gaul — one part of the neighbors — both the neighbors and the merchants — the merchants who import — on a second side — the Jura — the wide lake.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. It happened that the Helvetians wandered less widely. 2. It happened that they could less easily bring war upon the Germans. 3. Both the Helvetians and the Belgae wage war with the Germans. 4. This wide river separates their country from our province. 5. Because of these things he persuaded them to go forth from their fields.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quid fīēbat hīs rēbus? Quī vagābantur (*wandered*) minus lātē? Poterantne (*could*) Helvētiī fīnitimīs bellum fa-

cile īnferre? In quō cāsū est *rēbus? fīnitimīs? bellum?* Quae ōrātiōnis pars est *hīs?* (prōnōmen dēmōnstrātīvum). *fiēbat?* (*fiēbat* verbum est). *minus?* (adverbium) *facile?* Quā in cōnstrūctiōne est *rēbus?* (Ablātīvō causae, *note 2*).

NOTES

1. Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except **diēs**, which is usually masculine. The only nouns fully declined are **diēs** and **rēs**.

2. **hīs rēbus**, *because of* (*from* or *in consequence of* or *on account of*) *these things.* The ablative (commonly without a preposition) is used to express *cause.* cf. **hōc**, *on this account;* **quā dē causā**, *for this reason.* App. 85; A. 245; G. 408; H. 416; P. 404.

3. **fīnitimīs bellum īnferre**, *to bring war upon their neighbors.* Most verbs compounded with the prepositions **in, prae,** etc., govern the dative of the indirect object. Thus **fīnitimīs** is in the dative, the indirect object of the compound **īnferre** (**in**, *into, upon* + **ferre**, *to bring*). Thus also **omnibus praestārent** (XX), *they surpassed* (*stood before*) *all*, where **omnibus** is in the dative, the indirect object of the compound verb **praestārent** (**prae**, *before* + **stārent**, *stood*). App. 62; A. 226; G. 347; H. 386; P. 377.

PENSUM VICESIMUM QUARTUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished by the final vowel of the present stem, as follows:

First conjugation,		**ā**
Second	"	**ē**
Third	"	**e**
Fourth	"	**ī**

2. Certain parts of the regular verb from their importance are called principal parts (*partēs prīmāriae*) and are always given in vocabularies and lexicons. They are the Present Indicative, the Present Infinitive, the Perfect Indicative, and the Supine or Perfect Participle. The latter will be given in this book. The Present Infinitive ends in **-re**, and always contains the stem vowel before that syllable. This form is therefore of

great importance, as it shows to which conjugation the verb belongs; e. g., amāre, monēre, tegere, audīre.

3. The personal endings for the Indicative and Subjunctive modes, excepting the Perfect Indicative, are as follows:

Singulāris		Plūrālis	
-ō or -m	(I)	-mus	(we)
-s	(thou, you)	-tis	(you)
-t	(he, she, it)	-nt	(they)

4. The Present Indicative is formed by adding the personal endings -m (-ō,)*-s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt to the present stem. Thus from **bellāre**, *to make war*, by cutting off -re, the ending of the present infinitive active, we have the present stem **bellā-**: add these personal endings and we have the Present Indicative complete.

Tempus praesēns

Singulāris		Plūrālis	
1. bell(a)-ō	I war	1. bellā-mus	we war
2. bellā-s	thou warrest (you war)	2. bellā-tis	you war
3. bella-t	he (she) wars	3. bella-nt	they war

5. The Imperfect Indicative is formed from the present stem, with a tense sign -ba- and the personal endings.

Tempus imperfectum

bellā-ba-m I was warring	bellā-bā-mus we were warring
bellā-bā-s thou wast (you were) warring	bellā-bā-tis you were warring
bellā-ba-t he (she) was warring	bellā-ba-nt they were warring

6. The Future Tense is formed from the present stem with the tense sign -bi-, and the personal endings. In the third plural the vowel i of the tense sign -bi- is weakened to u: thus

Tempus futūrum

bellā-b(i)-ō I shall war	bellā-bi-mus we shall war
bellā-bi-s thou wilt (you will) war	bellā-bi-tis you will war
bellā-bi-t he (she) will war	bellā-bu-nt they will war

Inflect according to the above forms the verbs, **effēminō**, **importō**, **spectō**, **praestō**, **amō** (I love).

Give the meaning of the following verb forms and name the conjugation of each verb according to the principles stated in notes 1 and 2:

dīvidō, dīvidere; incolō, incolere; appellō, appellāre; commeō,

*The Present and Future Indicative have lost the **m** and end in the modified stem vowel **ō**.

commeāre; effēminō, effēmināre; importō, importāre; gerō, gerere.

Below are given the paradigms of the remaining three conjugations in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, of the Indicative mode, Active voice.

II **monēre,** *to advise* III **tegere,** *to cover* IV **audīre,** *to hear*

Tempus praesēns

Sing.	**mone-ō**	**teg(e)-ō**	**audi-ō**
	-ē-s	**-i-s**	**-ī-s**
	-e-t	**-i-t**	**-i-t**
Plūr.	**-ē-mus**	**-i-mus**	**-ī-mus**
	-ē-tis	**-i-tis**	**-ī-tis**
	-e-nt	**-u-nt**	**-i-u-nt**

Tempus imperfectum

Sing.	I	**amā-**	**-ba-m**
	II	**monē-**	**-bā-s**
	III	**tegē-**	**-ba-t**
Plūr.	IV	**audiē-**	**-bā-mus**
			-bā-tis
			-ba-nt

Tempus futūrum

Sing.	I	**amā-**	**-bō**	III **teg-**	**-a-m**
	II	**monē-**	**-bi-s**	IV **audi-**	**-ē-s**
			-bi-t		**-e-t**
Plūr.			**-bi-mus**		**-ē-mus**
			-bi-tis		**-ē-tis**
			-bu-nt		**-e-nt**

PENSUM VICESIMUM QUINTUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

quā ex parte from which (this) consideration
homō, -inis, M. man
bellō, -āre make *or* wage war, war
cupidus, -a, -um desirous, eager, fond
dolor, dolōris, M. pain, grief, vexation
afficiō, -ere do to, affect, afflict, fill with

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

From this consideration — men — men fond of warring — a man fond of war — great vexation — they were filled with great vexation — I affect — to affect — to affect with grief — it happened that these men wandered — I will make war with these men — we shall easily make war — I often resort to these men — the neighbors were making war — he persuaded this man — you import — you were importing — he is desirous of that part — it is very easy to get possession of the government.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. From this consideration, the men were filled with great vexation. 2. The Gauls, who are fond of making war, were affected with the desire for royal power. 3. Those who make war, often contend with great valor. 4. The man who made this conspiracy was influenced (*inductus est*) by the laws of the state. 5. Their boundaries extend to the other river. 6. The Belgae faced (were facing) towards the lower parts of the Rhine. 7. The Belgae, who are bravest of all the Gauls, often contend in battle with their neighbors.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quae verba Latīna sīgnificant (*what Latin words mean*) *from this consideration?* Quod verbum sīgnificat *a man? men?* Quae ōrātiōnis pars est *parte? ex? quā?* In quō cāsū est *parte? hominēs?* Quā in vōce (*in what voice*) est *afficiēbantur?* (In vōce passīvā est). In quō tempore (*in*

what tense) est *afficiēbantur?* (In tempore imperfectō). Quid dēclārat (*what shows*) tempus imperfectum? (Temporis sīgnum [*the tense sign*] *-ba-*).

NOTES

1. **bellandī**, *of making war* (*of warring*) is the genitive of the gerund of the verb **bellō**. The gerund is formed by adding to the present stem **-nd-** with the endings of the oblique cases (gen. dat. acc. abl.) of a neuter noun in the second declension, singular number. It is therefore a verbal noun governing the same cases as its verb and is itself governed as a noun. It closely corresponds in meaning to the English noun ending in **-ing**. App. 125; A. 114, 295; G. 425 ff.; H. 200, II; P. 548 (1).

2. **bellandī cupidī**, *fond of warring.* The quality denoted by **cupidī** is directed toward **bellandī** as its object; **bellandī** is therefore an objective genitive (*genitīvus obiectīvus*) governed by the adjective *cupidī*. Other adjectives which require an object of reference are those denoting *knowledge, power, skill, etc.* App. 55; A. 218 and *a*; G. 374; H. 399; P. 359, 360.

PENSUM VICESIMUM SEXTUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. In the passive voice the tenses formed from the present stem (XXIV, intr. note 4) in the Indicative and Subjunctive modes have the following personal endings:

Singulāris		Plūrālis	
-or, -r	(I)	**-mur**	(we)
-ris, -re	(thou, you)	**-minī**	(you)
-tur	(he, she, it)	**-ntur**	(they)

2. By employing these terminations instead of the active forms (XXIV, intr. note 3) the present, imperfect, and future tenses in the passive are formed exactly as the corresponding tenses in the active (XXIV, intr. notes, 4, 5, 6), thus from **amāre**, *to love*, we have:

Tempus praesēns

Singulāris	Plūrālis
am(a)-or, I am loved	**amā-mur**, we are loved
amā-ris, (-re), you are loved	**amā-minī**, you are loved
amā-tur, he (she, it) is loved	**ama-ntur**, they are loved

Tempus imperfectum

amā-ba-r, I was loved
amā-bā-ris,(-re), you were loved
amā-bā-tur, he (she, it) was loved
amā-bā-mur, we were loved
amā-bā-minī, you were loved
amā-ba-ntur, they were loved

Tempus futūrum

amā-b(i)-or, I shall be loved
amā-be-ris,(-re), thou wilt (you will) be loved
amā-bi-tur, he (she, it) will be loved
amā-bi-mur, we shall be loved
amā-bi-minī, you will be loved
amā-bu-ntur, they will be loved

Inflect in the passive according to the above, the verbs, **appellō, importō, spectō, arbitror** (*I think*), **vagor** (*I wander*).

Below are given the paradigms of the remaining three conjugations in the Present, Imperfect, and Future, of the Indicative mode, Passive Voice.

Tempus praesēns

Sing.	mone-o-r	tego-r	audi-o-r
	-ē-ris	-e-ris	-ī-ris
	-ē-tur	-i-tur	-ī-tur
Plūr.	-ē-mur	-i-mur	-ī-mur
	-ē-minī	-i-minī	-ī-minī
	-e-ntur	-u-ntur	-i-u-ntur

Tempus imperfectum

Sing.	I	amā-	-ba-r
	II	monē-	-bā-ris(re)
	III	tegē-	-bā-tur
Plūr.	IV	audiē-	-bā-mur
			-bā-minī
			-ba-ntur

Tempus futūrum

Sing.	I	amā-	-b-o-r	III	teg-	a-r
	II	monē-	-be-ris(re)	IV	audi-	-ē-ris(re)
			-bi-tur			-ē-tur
Plūr.			-bi-mur			-ē-mur
			-bi-minī			-ē-minī
			-bu-ntur			-e-ntur

PENSUM VICESIMUM SEPTIMUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. Masculine and feminine nouns of the fourth declension form the nominative by adding **s** to the stem vowel **u**. The genitive singular ending is **-ūs**.

2. The stem vowel (characteristic) **u** appears in all the cases, except that it is generally weakened to **i** in the dative and ablative plural.

Numerus singulāris

	passus, M. stem **passu-**	**lacus**, M. **lacu-**	**cornū**, N. **cornu-**
NOM.	**passus**	**lacus**	**cornū**
GEN.	**passūs**	**lacūs**	**cornūs (-ū)**
DAT.	**passuī**	**lacuī**	**cornū**
ACC.	**passum**	**lacum**	**cornū**
VOC.	**passus**	**lacus**	**cornū**
ABL.	**passū**	**lacū**	**cornū**

Numerus plūrālis

NOM.	**passūs**	**lacūs**	**cornua**
GEN.	**passuum**	**lacuum**	**cornuum**
DAT.	**passibus**	**lacubus**	**cornibus**
ACC.	**passūs**	**lacūs**	**cornua**
VOC.	**passūs**	**lacūs**	**cornua**
ABL.	**passibus**	**lacubus**	**cornibus**

Like **passus** inflect **cultus, occāsus**. Inflect together **omnis passus, māgnus cultus, īnferior lacus.**

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

prō, *prep. c. abl.* before, for, in proportion to, considering
multitūdō, multitūdinis, F. great number, multitude
autem, *conj.* moreover, but, yet
glōria, -ae, F. glory
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, F. (*cf.* **fortissimī**) courage, bravery
angustus, -a, -um limited, narrow
habeō, -ēre have, hold, possess
arbitror (note, 1) 1. think, judge, decide
vagor (note 2) 1. roam, wander
longitūdō, -inis F. [**longus**, long] length
mīlia, -ium *adj.* thousands
passus, -ūs, M. (note 5) pace
mīlia passuum miles
CC (**ducentī, -ae, -a,**) (note 3) two hundred
XL (**quadrāgintā**), *indecl. num.* forty
lātitūdō, -inis, F. [**lātus**] width, breadth
C (**centum**), *indecl. num.* (note 6) a hundred
LXXX (**octōgintā**), *indecl. num.* eighty
pateō, -ēre open, spread out, extend
lacus, -ūs, M. lake
cultus, -ūs, M. cultivation, civilization
textus, -ūs, M. text

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

In proportion to, considering — considering the great number of men — considering (their) glory in (of) war and (their) courage — they thought they had — the boundaries extended in length — they extended in width — they extended two hundred miles — forty miles — eighty miles — one hundred miles — three paces — a hundred paces — two hundred paces — of lake Geneva — civilization in proportion to the laws — the customs of civilization.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Helvetians, who had (*habēbant*) a large number of men, thought they had narrow limits. 2. These boundaries extended many (*multa*) miles in length and breadth. 3.

Orgetorix persuaded them to go forth from these boundaries. 4. They were greatly troubled because their limits were narrow.

Latinē hīs respondētō:

Quī arbitrābantur angustōs fīnīs sē habēre? Quam longē (*how far*) patēbant fīnēs Helvētiōrum? Quot mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēbant fīnēs Helvētiōrum? Quis Helvētiīs persuāsit? Nōnne Helvētiōrum fīnēs angustī erant? Fuitne multitūdō Helvētiōrum māgnā? Habēbantne hī glōriam bellī. Habēs (*have you*) māgnam fortitūdinem?

NOTES

1. **habēre**, *to have*, with the verb of thinking, **arbitrābantur**, is rendered by the indicative *had*. **angustōs....arbitrābantur**: *they thought they had narrow boundaries*. Cf. XX., 1, 2.

2. Verbs like **arbitror, vagor, potior, orior**, with the signification of the active voice and forms of the passive, are called *deponent* (*verba dēpōnentia*).

3. **multitūdō**, is formed of the adjective **multus**, *much, many*, and the ending **-tūdō**. Nouns with this ending are of the feminine gender. By using this ending, form nouns from **sōlus**, *alone*; **grātus**, *pleasing, grateful*; **fortis**, *brave*.

4. Nouns of the fourth declension whose nominative ends in **-us** are, with few exceptions, of the masculine gender. Those ending in **-ū** are neuter.

5. The Roman foot (**pēs**) was 11¾ inches in length. The *passus* consisted of five *pedēs* and was therefore four feet and ten inches in length. The *passus* was the measure of the stride made from the place where the foot is lifted to the point where it is again put down. As no English measure represents its length, the Roman term may be used in translating. The Roman mile (**mīlle passuum**) consisted of one thousand *passus*.

6. The cardinal numerals from **quattuor** (*four*) to **centum** are indeclinable. The cardinals for hundreds (e. g. **ducentī**) are declined like the plural of *māgnus*.

PENSUM VICESIMUM OCTAVUM

Priōrum pēnsōrum textum ac dēclīnātiōnēs repetitō.

Latīnum hōcce legitō (*read*) atque in Anglicum convertitō:

Helvētiī, quī ad lacum Lemannum habitant (*dwell*), fortissimī sunt. Apud eōs Orgetorīx nōbilissimus et dītissimus fuit. Is, ubi (*when*) M. Messāla et M. Pīsō cōnsulēs erant, coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. Eīs persuāsit ut dē suīs fīnibus exīrent. Id facile fēcit eō quod Helvētiī undique locī nātūrā continentur. Flūmen Rhēnus est ex ūnā parte. Hōc flūmen lātissimum est et Helvētiōs ā Germānīs dīvidit. Alterā ex parte est mōns Iūra. Mōns hīc altissimus inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs est. Lacus Lemannus et flūmen Rhodanus in occāsum sōlis spectant. Quā dē causā nōn lātē vagābantur et nōn facile bella gerēbant. Fīnīs suōs angustōs esse arbitrābantur. Hī fīnēs in longitūdinem mīlia passuum ducenta et quadrāgintā, ā flūmine Rhēnō ad mōntem Iūram, patēbant.

As far as time will permit question on the text of chapter II, given below.

Quō in cāsū est nōmen *Helvētiōs?* Quō in gradū comparātiōnis est *nōbilissimus?* Quae particula sermōnis (*what part of speech*) est verbum *facile?* (Note that *verbum* means both *verb* and *word*). Quid regit verbum *persuāsit* (What case does *persuāsit* govern)? Quid sīgnificat *quā ex parte* Anglicē? Quō in numerō est verbum *persuāsit?* Quod regit verbum *potīrī?* Cūius cōnstructiōnis est *M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus*? (Est ablātīvus absolūtus). Quāle verbum (*what kind of verb*) est *potīrī?* (*Potīrī* dēpōnēns verbum est). Quae particula sermōnis est *dē?* (*Dē* praepositiō est). *et? lātō? māgnō?*

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cu-

piditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte mōnte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis, angustōs sē fīnīs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

PENSUM VICESIMUM NONUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāre,

VOCABULORUM INDEX

ad-dūcō, -ere [dūcō, *lead*] lead to *or* on, lead, influence

hīs rēbus adductī influenced by these things

auctōritās, -tātis, F. authority, advice

per-moveō, -ēre [moveō, *move*] thoroughly move, rouse, influence

cōn-stituō, -ere [cum + statuō, *set*] set together, arrange, determine, decide

proficīscor -ī depart, set out, *or* start

ad, *prep. c. acc.* to, toward, against, near, for

ad proficīscendum (note 1) to (for) starting, for the departure
comparō, -āre prepare, get ready
genus, generis, N. race, class, kind; gender

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latinē:

These things — by these things — influenced by these things — aroused — aroused by the authority — they determined — they determined to prepare those things — those things which — which were necessary for (*pertained to*) the departure — influenced — influenced by Orgetorix — they determined to wage war — they determined to excel all — I decide — I determine to procure those things which pertain to the royal power — I procure — we procure — they were preparing — we shall prepare — he will prepare — he prepares to influence these.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Helvetians, influenced by these things, determined to go forth (*exīre*) from their boundaries. 2. Orgetorix easily influenced (*addūxit*) them because they thought their limits were (*esse*, XX, 1) narrow. 3. Almost all determined to go forth and wage war with their neighbors on (*in*) the west. 4. By the advice of Orgetorix they were preparing those things which pertained to the departure. 5. They will not procure those things which tend to weaken the courage. 6. These Helvetians, whom (*quibus*) Orgetorix persuaded, dwell near mount Jura in the Helvetian country. 7. He thought it was (XX, 1) very easy because they were the bravest of all. 8. They themselves surpass the Belgae, who face toward the North. 9. Aroused by a desire of royal power they determined to procure a multitude of men.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Cūius auctōritāte (*by whose advice*) permovēbantur Helvētiī? Quid cōnstituērunt facere (*to do*)? Quis fuit Orgeto-

rix? Nōnne Orgetorix nōbilis Helvētius fuit? Cūius generis (*of what gender*) est nōmen *rēbus?* (Nōmen *rēbus* generis fēminīnī est.) *auctōritāte? multitūdine?* Cūius generis est nōmen *Orgetorigis?* (Generis masculīnī.) *Helvētiī? cōnsul?* Cūius generis est prōnōmen *ea?* (Generis neutrī.) *rēgnum? flūmen? bellum? lingua? lēx? mōns? Rhēnus?*

Decline together **haec rēs, māgna auctōritās, ea lingua, quīs homō**

NOTES

1. Deponent verbs, which have only the passive forms in the finite (indic., subj., imper.) modes, have certain active forms in the adjective and noun forms of the verb. Thus **proficīscendum** is the gerund of the deponent verb *proficīscor*. Explain the use and the formation of the gerund: XXV, 1. Explain the term deponent: XXV, 2.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre :

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret,

VOCABULORUM INDEX

trīcēsimus, -a, -um thirtieth
iūmentum, -ī, N. yoke *or* pack animal, beast of burden
carrus, -ī, M. cart
quam, *adv.* [cf. **quam,** *conj.* and the fem. sing. acc. of the relative] as how (*often with superlative, with or without some form of possum,*) possible, as possible
māgnus, -a, -um, *comp.* **māior;** *superl.* **māximus** great, large
numerus, -ī, M. number
coëmō, -ere buy up, purchase
sēmentis, -is, F. sowing, planting
faciō, facere [cf. **fēcit**] make, do

iter, itineris, N. way, road, journey, march
frūmentum, -ī, N. grain
suppetō, -ere be supplied, ready, *or* on hand

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

They determined to prepare — they determined to purchase — to purchase a number of carts — to purchase a number of pack animals — to purchase the greatest possible number of carts and beasts of burden — they determined to make — to plant (*sēmentēs facere*) — to plant as much as possible — — that a supply might be on hand — that a supply of grain might be at hand — they determined to make plantings in order that supplies might be on hand — way — of the way — on the way — I make a journey — influenced by the authority of Orgetorix.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. There were (*erant*) many in the conspiracy which Orgetorix made. 2. The troops of the Helvetians were surpassing all in valor. 3. The fields of these are bounded on one side by this river. 4. It happened that they wandered widely and went forth from their country. 5. They think they have (XXVI, 1; XX, 1, 2) many men and great glory. 6. Their fields extended many miles in length. 7. There are many beasts of burden in the country of the Helvetii.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quī cōnstituērunt sēmentēs facere? Cūr sēmentēs fēcērunt? Habēbantne Helvētiī multōs carrōs? Quae fōrma (*what form*) est *coëmere?* (Infīnītīvus praesēns.) *facere? comparāre?* Cūius coniugātiōnis est *facere?* (tertiae). *coëmere? comparārе?* Quid sīgnificat *quam* cum gradū superlātīvō? (*Quam* cum gradū superlātīvō sīgnificat *as . . . as possible*).

NOTES

1. **comparāre, coëmere, facere:** the infinitive is used with many verbs (as **cōnstituērunt**, *they determined*, also verbs denoting *ability, intention, endeavor, daring* etc.) which require another action of the same subject to complete their meaning. This is called the complementary infinitive (*infinītīvus complēmentārius*). Thus in the text above **facere** (also **comparāre, coëmere**) is the complement of the verb **cōnstituērunt** (*complēmentum verbī* **cōnstituērunt**).

App. 122; A. 271; G. 423; H. 533; P. 532.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM PRIMUM.

Review the introductory notes in *pēnsum* XXIV.

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. The Perfect stem of verbs of the first (ā) conjugation (and also of the fourth and often of the second) is regularly formed by adding **v** to the present stem. Thus from **amāre**, present stem **amā-** we have the perfect stem **amāv-**; from **comparā-re**, the perfect stem **comparāv-**.

2. The perfect stem of most verbs of the third conjugation whose stem vowel is long either by nature or position is found by adding **s** to the present stem, minus the stem vowel: from **dūcere**, present stem **dūce-** we have the perfect stem **dūx-**: from **dīcere**, *to say*, present stem **dīce-** we have the perfect stem **dīx-**.

3. The perfect stem is generally the same as the present stem (minus the stem vowel) in third conjugation verbs whose present stem has **u-** (or **nd-**) before the stem vowel: thus from **cōnstituere**, present stem **cōnstitue-**, we have the perfect stem **cōnstitu-**.

4. The personal endings of the perfect indicative are

-ī	(I)	**-imus**	(we)
-istī	(thou, you)	**-istis**	(you)
-it	(he, she, it)	**-ērunt -ēre**	(they)

The perfect tense is formed by adding these endings to the perfect stem, e. g.

amāre, *to love* Present stem **amā-** Perfect stem **amāv-**

Tempus perfectum

Singulāris	**Plūrālis**
amāv-ī, I have loved	**amāv-imus**, we have loved
amāv-istī, thou hast loved	**amāv-istis**, you have loved
amāv-it, he has loved	**amāv-ērunt(-ēre)**, they have loved

5. The pluperfect tense is formed by adding the tense sign **-era** (*had*) to the perfect stem with the personal endings, **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.**

Tempus plūsquam perfectum

Singulāris	Plūrālis
amāv-era-m, I had loved	**amāv-erā-mus,** we had loved
amāv-erā-s, thou hadst loved	**amāv-erā-tis,** you had loved
amāv-era-t, he had loved	**amāv-era-nt,** they had loved

6. The future perfect tense is formed by adding the tense sign **-eri-** to the perfect stem, with the personal endings **-ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.** The vowel **i** of the tense sign unites with the ending **-ō.**

Tempus futūrum exāctum.

Singulāris	Plūrālis
amāv-er(i)-ō, I shall have loved	**amāv-eri-mus,** we shall have loved
amāv-eri-s, thou shalt have loved	**amāv-eri-tis,** you shall have loved
amāv-eri-t, he shall have loved	**amāv-eri-nt,** they shall have loved

Below are given the paradigms of the remaining three conjugations in the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses.

Tempus perfectum

Sing.	I	**amāv-**	**-ī**
	II	**monu-**	**-istī**
	III	**tēx-**	**-it**
Plūr.	IV	**audīv-**	**-imus**
			-istis
			-ērunt (**-ēre**)

Tempus plūsquam exāctum

Sing.	I	**amāv-**	**-era-m**
	II	**monu-**	**-erā-s**
	III	**tēx-**	**-era-t**
Plūr.	IV	**audīv-**	**-erā-mus**
			-erā-tis
			-era-nt

Tempus futūrum exāctum

Sing.	I	**amāv-**	**-er-ō**
	II	**monu-**	**-eri-s**
	III	**tēx-**	**-eri-t**
Plūr.	IV	**audīv-**	**-eri-mus**
			-eri-tis
			-eri-nt

Verte in Anglicum:

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt, ea quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

pāx, pācis, F. peace
amīcitia, -ae, F. friendship
cōnfīrmō, -āre, -āvī make firm, establish, assure, promise
comparō, -āre, -āvī prepare, procure
bellō -āre, -āvī make war, war
appellō, -āre, -āvī call by name, call
dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī divide, separate
incolō, -ere, incoluī dwell, inhabit
gerō, -ere, gessī do, carry on, wage
faciō, facere, fēcī make, do
pertineō, -ēre, pertinuī hold through, reach, extend; pertain
persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī persuade
coëmō, -ere, coëmī buy up, purchase

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

I determined — I determined to establish peace — to establish friendship — a state — states — with a state — with states — with the nearest states — they had established peace — they will have established — I led — I loved — I had led — they had loved — they were procuring — they have procured — I persuaded them — they persuaded him — to purchase as great a number as possible — draught animals — carts — plantings — that supplies might be at hand.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM SECUNDUM

Introductory Notes:

1. The reflexive pronoun (*prōnōmen reflexīvum*) has the same forms in both numbers and in all genders, as follows:

Gen. suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Dat. sibi, to *or* for himself, etc.
Acc. sē (sēsē), himself, etc.
Abl. sē (sēsē), from, with, by himself, etc.

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī [cum + faciō] do thoroughly, complete, accomplish
ad eās rēs cōnficiendās for accomplishing these things
biennium, -ī, [bis, *twice* **+ annus,** *year***],** N. two years, period of two years
suī of himself, herself, etc. (*intr. note*)
satis, *adv. et adj.* enough, sufficiently, sufficient
dūcō, -ere, dūxī lead, guide, consider
in, *prep. c. abl. et acc.* in, on; into, to, against, for
annus, -ī, M. year
profectiō, -ōnis, F. starting, setting out, departure
dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī choose, select, appoint

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

For accomplishing these things — a year — two years — I consider — they considered — they considered that two years were sufficient — were sufficient for themselves — of themselves — of himself — the third year — for the third year — I establish — they establish peace and friendship — they will determine a departure — a law — laws — by law — in laws —

I choose — Orgetorix chooses — Orgetorix is chosen — he loves himself — they love themselves — they will love themselves — he persuaded himself — they will have persuaded themselves.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Led on by these things they determined to establish peace and friendship with the state. 2. They determined to purchase carts and to make plantings in order that (*ut*) a supply of grain might be at hand on the journey. 3. They considered that three parts were sufficient for them. 4. A departure was established by their laws. 5. They selected Orgetorix for accomplishing those things.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quot annōs dūxērunt sibi satis esse? Quem in annum cōnfīrmant profectiōnem? Quōmodo cōnfīrmant profectiōnem? Quis dēligitur? Cūr Orgetorīx dēligitur? Orgetorīxne ad eās rēs cōnficiendās dēligitur?

NOTES

1. The reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the sentence or clause. Its number, therefore, can be determined by reference to this subject. The possessive adjective **suus, -a, -um** formed from the same root takes its gender, number and case from the object possessed.

2. **esse** why infinitive? XX, 1.

3. Nouns like **profectiō,** ending in **-iō,** genitive **-iōnis,** denote action, and are of the feminine gender. They are formed from the perfect participle stem; e. g., **proficīscor,** *I depart,* perf. part. **profectus,** whence **profect-iō,** *departure.* Cf. **vocātiō,** from **vocō, ōrātiō,** from **ōrō.** The declension stem of these nouns appears in English without change; e. g., *vocation, oration.*

4. Gerund and Gerundive: cf. XXV, 2.

a. The gerund is the verbal noun; as a noun it is governed by another word, as a verb it governs other words. In the expression **spatium tēla coniciendī, coniciendī** is the verbal noun in the genitive case with **spatium.** In turn **coniciendī** governs **tēla** as the literal translation shows.

b. The gerundive, however, is the future passive participle, and, like

all participles, it has the syntax of an adjective, agreeing with (not governing) another word. In the expression **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās, cōnficiendās** is the gerundive in the accusative case, agreeing with **rēs, rēs** is governed by **ad,** and the expression means, literally, *for these things to be accomplished.* The two constructions are used to express the same notion; but while the former (gerund) seems more like the English idiom the Latin usually prefers the latter (gerundive).

PENSUM TRICESIMUM TERTIUM.

Verte in Anglicum:

Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

lēgātiō, -ōnis, F. embassy

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī [**sub,** *under* + **capiō,** *take*] undertake, take up *or* upon one's self

Casticus, -ī, M. *a Sequanian chief* Casticus

Catamantaloedēs, -is, M. *a chieftain of the Sequani,* Catamantaloedes

fīlius, -ī, M. son

Sēquanus, -ī, M. a Sequanian, one of the Sequani

pater, patris, M. father

multus, -a, -um, much, many

obtineō -ēre, obtinuī obtain, possess, hold

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

An embassy — of an embassy — Orgetorix undertook an embassy — he took on himself an embassy to the states — journey — on the journey — on that journey — he persuades Casticus — he persuades the son of Catamantaloedes — he persuades Casticus the Sequanian — father — whose father — of whose father — whose father had held — had held the royal power — the royal power among the Sequanians — had pos-

sessed for many years — I obtain — to possess — Orgetorix is chosen for accomplishing these things — they thought three years were sufficient — they establish their departure — his father was a Sequanian.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnis mandātō:

1. The father of Casticus had possessed the royal power many years. 2. The Helvetians, aroused by Orgetorix, determined to purchase many carts and to plant as much as possible. 3. On that journey Orgetorix undertook to persuade the son of Catamantaloedes. 4. Casticus the Sequanian, whose father was holding the royal power, undertook an embassy to Gaul. 5. In the year of this embassy Orgetorix led the nobility to undertake the conspiracy. 6. The Helvetians did not take those things upon themselves. 7. They had undertaken war in the consulship of Messala and Piso. 8. Casticus thinks that this is (XX, 1) very easy.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quis dēligitur ad eās rēs cōnficiendās? Quid suscēpit Orgetorīx? Nōnne lēgātiōnem suscēpit? Cūr sibi lēgātiōnem suscēpit? Cuī persuāsit Orgetorīx? Cūius fīlius erat Casticus? Quot annōs obtinuit pater ēius rēgnum? (Nēsciō.) Obtinuitne rēgnum multōs annōs? Cūius generis est *lēgātiōnem? cīvitātēs? itinere? fīliō?* Quō in cāsū est *itinere? pater? Sēquanō?*

NOTES

1. **sibi**: Determine from the verb whether it means (upon) *himself* or *themselves*. XXXII, 1.

2. **Casticō**: Construction? XIX, 1.

3. **fīliō, Sēquanō**: These nouns refer to *Casticō*, *i. e.*, they are in apposition with *Casticō*. The appositive agrees with its subject in case. These nouns are therefore in the dative in apposition with *Casticō*, the indirect object of the verb *persuāsit*.

4. **fīlius**, *son*, the possessive **meus** and proper nouns in **-ius** (as **Cassius**) have the vocative in **-ī**, (for **-ie**): e, g., **mī fīlī**, *my son*!

5. **multōs annōs**, *for many years*: The Accusative is employed to denote duration of time (*accūsātīvus temporālis*).

PENSUM TRICESIMUM QUARTUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1 The irregular verb **sum** (*I am*) is employed frequently in its present tenses as an auxiliary verb.

2. Paradigm of **sum**, *I am.* (**esse** *to be*).

MODUS INDICATIVUS

Tempus praesēns

Singulāris	Plūrālis
s-u-m, I am.	**s-u-mus**, we are.
es-, thou art (you are).	**es-tis**, you are.
es-t, he (she, it) is.	**s-u-nt**, they are.

Tempus imperfectum

er-a-m, I was	**er-ā-mus**, we were.
er-ā-s, you were	**er-ā-tis**, you were.
er-a-t, he (she it) was	**er-a-nt**, they were.

Tempus futūrum

er-ō, I shall be.	**er-i-mus**, we shall be.
er-i-s, you will be.	**er-i-tis**, you will be.
er-i-t, he will be.	**er-u-nt**, they will be.

3. The perfect tense in the passive voice is formed of the perfect passive participle and the present tense of the verb **sum**, thus,

Tempus perfectum

Singulāris	Plūrālis
amāt-us sum I have been loved, was loved.	**amāt-ī sumus**
amāt-us es	**amāt-ī estis**
amāt-us est	**amāt-ī sunt**

4. The masculine endings **-us** (singular) and **-ī** (plural) only are here presented but the student must understand that the participle, as an adjective, agrees with the subject of the verb in gender, number, and case. Thus if the subject is of the feminine gender, we have *amāta* (or plural *amātae*): if neuter, the singular *amātum* or plural *amāta.*

5. The **pluperfect** tense in the passive voice is formed of the perfect passive participle and the imperfect tense of the verb **sum**: thus,

amāt-us eram I had been loved.		**amāt-ī erāmus**	
amāt-us erās		**amāt-ī erātis**	
amāt-us erat		**amāt-ī erant**	

6. The future perfect tense in the passive voice is formed of the perfect passive participle and the future tense of *the verb* **sum**: thus,

amāt-us erō I shall have been loved		**amāt-ī erimus**	
amāt-us eris		**amāt-ī eritis**	
amāt-us erit		**amāt-ī erunt**	

Tempus perfectum

II	monitus -a -um	sum	monitī -ae -a	sumus
III	rēctus -a -um	es	rēctī -ae -a	estis
IV	audītus -a -um	est	audītī -ae -a	sunt

Tempus plūsquam perfectum

II	monitus -a -um	eram	monitī -ae -a	erāmus
III	rēctus -a -um	erās	rēctī -ae -a	erātis
IV	audītus -a -um	erat	audītī -ae -a	erant

Tempus futurum exāctum

II	monitus -a -um	erō	monitī -ae -a	erimus
III	rēctus -a -um	eris	rēctī -ae -a	eritis
IV	audītus -a -um	erit	audītī -ae -a	erunt

Verte in Anglicum:

Amātur — amābāmur — amābuntur — amātus es — amātī erant — amātus erit — Rhēnus est flūmen — Sēquana et Mātrona flūmina erant — fortissimī sunt Belgae — longissimē absunt — ea importābantur, quae animōs effēminābant — ūna pars Gallia appellāta est — Gallī appellātī sunt — Celtae ipsōrum linguā appellātī erant — Helvētiī undique contentī erant — ubi es? — ubi sumus? — ubi pēnsum est? — ubi eris? — hīc (*here*) sum — arbitrābātur — fīnēs patēbantur — hī adductī sunt — ipsī permōtī erant — carrī comparātī sunt — iūmenta comparāta erant — cōpiae comparātae erunt.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

I am here — you are in the town — they are in the battle — the men were many — this will be a great war — the bound-

aries were narrow — the forces are great — (there) will be many beasts of burden — I am called — we were called — you will be called — he has been called — she had been called — they will have been called — they establish peace — peace is established — peace had been established — a supply was prepared — supplies were prepared — laws had been established — laws will have been established.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM QUINTUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī, Aeduō, frātrī Diviciacī (persuādet),

VOCABULARUM INDEX

ā, ab *prep. c. abl.* from, by
senātus, -ūs, M. senate (*especially the administrative council of Rome*)
populus, -ī, M. people
Rōmānus, -a, -um, of Rome, Roman
amīcus, -ī, M. friend
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus seize upon; hold, possess
ante, *adv. and prep. c. acc.* before
habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus have, hold
item, *adv.* also, in like manner
Dumnorīx, -īgis, M. Dumnorix (*a chief of the Aeduī, brother of Diviciacus*)
Diviciacus, -ī, M. Diviciacus (*a chief of the Aeduī, brother of Dumnorix, friendly to the Romans*)

Dīcitō haec Lātīnē:

Senate — by the senate — the friend of the Roman people

— a friend — he had been called friend — I call a friend — they had called a friend — he persuades — he persuades Casticus — I seize — to seize the royal power — he persuades Casticus to seize the royal power — the royal power in his state — which — which he had had — which his father had had — his father had had formerly — also — he also persuades — he also persuades Dumnorix — he persuades Dumnorix the Aeduan — he persuades the brother — brother — brothers — the brother of Diviciacus — he persuades the brother of Diviciacus — Dumnorix and Diviciacus were brothers — he undertook an embassy.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. He persuaded Casticus the Sequanian, whose brother was a friend to the Helvetians. 2. Casticus will seize the royal power in his own state. 3. He persuades Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, who was a friend of the Roman people. 4. On these journeys they were establishing peace with many peoples. 5. Peace has been established by the Germans and the Roman people. 6. The father of Casticus had held the royal power among the Sequani for many years.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quis persuāsit Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret? Quis erat Casticus? Quis erat ēius (*his*) pāter? Quis erat amīcus appellātus? A quō erat amīcus appellātus? Senātusne Diviciacum amīcum appellābat? Quī sunt amīcī tuī (*your*)? Quō in cāsū est *Casticō? cūius? pater? senātū? populī?* Quō in tempore et quō in modō est verbum (*the verb*) *persuādet? obtinuerat? occupāret?* (in tempore imperfectō; in modō subjunctīvō).

NOTES

1. **ā senātū,** *by the senate.* The Ablative with the preposition **ā** (**ab**) is used with *persons* (or personified objects) to denote the AGENT or DOER. This construction is called the Ablative of Agent (*Ablātīvus Agentis*).

App. 86 G. 401; H. 415, 2; P. 406. Contrast the use of **ā** in Less. IV, XVI, XXI. When is **ab** employed rather than **ā**? IV, 1.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM SEXTUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. In the Subjunctive mode the personal endings are the same as in the Indicative, the first person singular always ending in **-m**, (pass. **-r**).

2. The present subjunctive is formed upon the present stem, a mode vowel **-ā-**, and the personal endings being added. But (*a*) in the first conjugation the stem vowel **-ā** is modified to **ē** and the mode vowel disappears and (*b*) in the third conjugation the stem vowel **-e** disappears before the mode vowel.

3. Paradigm of the subjunctive active of **amō**, (I love), **moneō**, (I advise), **tegō**, (I cover), **audiō**, (I hear).

Tempus praesēns

Sing.	**ame-m**	II	**mone-**	**-a-m**
	-ē-s	III	**teg-**	**-ā-s**
	-e-t	IV	**audi-**	**-a-t**
Plūr.	**-ē-mus**			**-ā-mus**
	-ē-tis			**-ā-tis**
	-e-nt			**-a-nt**

*No translation is given for the subjunctive in the paradigms because the auxiliaries employed (if any) depend entirely upon the connection in which the subjunctive appears. Translations for the various uses of the subjunctive are given as these forms appear in the successive lessons and all its uses are explained and illustrated in the appendix.

4. The imperfect subjunctive is formed upon the present stem, a tense sign **-rē-** and the personal endings being added.

Tempus imperfectum

Sing.	I	**amā-**	**-re-m**
	II	**mone-**	**-rē-s**
	III	**tege-**	**-re-t**
Plūr.	IV	**audī-**	**-rē-mus**
			-rē-tis
			-re-nt

5. The perfect subjunctive is formed of the perfect stem, a tense sign **-eri-** and the personal endings.

Tempus perfectum

Sing.	I	amāv-	-eri-m
	II	monu-	-eri-s
	III	tēx-	-eri-t
Plūr.	IV	audīv-	-eri-mus
			-eri-tis
			-eri-nt

6. The pluperfect subjunctive is formed upon the perfect stem, a tense sign **-isse-** and the personal endings being added.

Tempus plūsquam perfectum

Sing.	I	amāv-	-isse-m
	II	monu-	-issē-s
	III	tēx-	-isse-t
Plūr.	IV	audīv-	-issē-mus
			-issē-tis
			-isse-nt

Inflect in the same way the subjunctive of verbs given in the vocabularies of preceding lessons, determining the conjugation as explained in XXIV, Intr. n. 1, 2. Examine the verbs in the text of the preceding lessons and state where found.

In the following exercise the auxiliaries *may* and *let* are used in the translation of the present subjunctive, *might* for the imperfect subjunctive, *may have* for the perfect, and *might have* for the *pluperfect.* The student must, however, remember the statement in 3* above.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

May I love — we may love — they might lead — who may have loved — these might have led — you may war — to go forth (that they might go forth) — so that they wander — I might lead — I would have led these — he might have held the royal power — you may have had — that they might have peace — let us have peace.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Let us persuade the father of Casticus to seize the kingdom. 2. Since you surpassed all in valor you might have wandered less widely. 3. It happened that supplies of grain were at hand. 4. They made plantings as extensive as possible in order that they might leave home. 5. They think they have great glory in war. 6. A departure was established by these for the third year. 7. They have many carts and draft animals on their journey. 8. He might be called friend by the senate.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM SEPTIMUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. Review XVIII. Intr. notes 1, 2.

2. The intensive pronoun **īdem** is formed of the demonstrative **is** and the suffix **-dem**.

Paradigm of **īdem**, *the same*

		Singulāris	
Nom.	**ī-dem**	**ea-dem**	**i-dem**
Gen.	**ēius-dem**	**ēius-dem**	**ēius-dem**
Dat.	**eī-dem**	**eī-dem**	**eī-dem**
Acc.	**eun-dem**	**ean-dem**	**i-dem**
Abl.	**eō-dem**	**eā-dem**	**eō-dem**
		Plūrālis	
Nom.	**eī (iī) -dem**	**eae-dem**	**ea-dem**
Gen.	**eōrun-dem**	**eārun-dem**	**eōrun-dem**
Dat.	**eīs (iīs) -dem**	**eīs (iīs) -dem**	**eīs (iīs) -dem**
Acc.	**eōs-dem**	**eās-dem**	**ea-dem**
Abl.	**eīs (iīs) -dem**	**eīs (iīs) -dem**	**eīs (iīs) -dem**

In Anglicum vertitō:

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīlio, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātuserat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciacī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

tempus, temporis, N. time (*in grammatical relations* tense)
prīncipātus, -ūs, M. chief place *or* authority, leadership
māximē, *superl. adv.* [*cf.* **māgnus,**] very greatly, most, especially
plēbs, plēbis (ēs, ēī), F. populace, common people
acceptus, -a, -um acceptable, beloved, popular
idem, eadem, idem (Intr. note) same, the same
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus attempt, try, **ut cōnārētur** to attempt
persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsī, persuāsus persuade
fīlia, -ae, F. daughter
mātrimōnium, -ī, N. marriage
dō, dare, dedī, datus give

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Lātīnē:

Time — the same time — of the same time — at the same time — that time — at that time — he persuades Dumnorix — the leadership — was holding — was holding the leadership — beloved — beloved by the common people — especially beloved by the common people — Dumnorix was especially beloved by the common people — that he attempt the same — he persuades Dumnorix to attempt the same — I give — you give — she gives — he gives to him — he gives to him his daughter — he gives his own daughter — we give — the friends gave — his father may give — let us give — the leadership was given.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. At that time he persuaded Casticus to seize the royal power among the Sequanians. 2. Dumnorix determined to do the same thing. 3. He gave his daughter in marriage to Dumnorix, who had held the leadership in the state. 4. I will give (my) father, brother, son, and daughter to him. 5. The common people were especially beloved by Dumnorix. 6. I will try to give the royal power to Diviciacus.

Inflect the verb dō in the forms included in Lessons XXIV, XXVI, XXXI, XXXIV, XXXVI, noting the tenses formed from the perfect and perfect participle stems.

NOTES

1. **eō tempore,** *at that time.* Time *at* or *within which* is expressed by the Ablative, generally without a preposition. This construction is called the Ablative of Time (*ablātīvus temporālis*)

App. 97; A. 256; H. 429; G. 393; P. 424.

2. **plēbī acceptus,** *acceptable to* (*beloved by* or *popular with*) *the common people.* The Dative is used with many adjectives to denote *the object to which the quality is directed.* Thus the quality of acceptability (or popularity) is directed towards *plēbī* as its object. Cf. *proximī Germānīs* (Less. VII), This construction is called the Dative with Adjectives (*Datīvus cum adiectīvīs*).

App. ; A. 234; G. 359; H. 391; P. 388–389.

PENSUM TRICESIMUM OCTAVUM

Introductory Notes:

1. Review X Intr. n.; XIV Intr. n. 1, 2; XVIII Intr. n. 1, 2; XX Intr. n. 1, 2; XXI Intr. n. 1, 2; XXII Intr. n. 1.

2. Learn the paradigm of the demonstrative pronoun **ille,** *that,* and of the intensive pronoun **ipse,** *self,* comparing their endings with those of the adjectives and pronouns referred to in Intr. n. 1.

Singulāris

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**
Gen.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**
Dat	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**

Plūrālis

Nom.	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
Gen.	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Acc.	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
Abl.	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

Observe that the plurals are exactly as in **māgnus.** State in what particulars the singular differs from that of **is** or **alius.**

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātīs imperium obtentūrus esset;

VOCABULORUM INDEX

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus make, do, accomplish

ille, illa, illud (note 2) that; *as subst.*, he, she, it, that

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, prove, show

cōnātum,-ī, N. attempt, undertaking

per-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus do thoroughly, accomplish, complete

ipse, ipsa, ipsum self; himself, herself, itself; *pl.* themselves

ob-tineō, -ēre, tinuī, tentus hold, possess; gain, obtain

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

To do — very easy to do — he shows — he shows them — he shows them that it is — he shows that it is very easy — very easy to accomplish — to accomplish the attempts — he himself — he himself intended to get possession — the supreme

power — the supreme power of his own state — he held the leadership.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. He showed them it was very easy to accomplish attempts. 2. He showed that he himself intended to gain the supreme power in the state. 3. Orgetorix did not gain the supreme power of the state. 4. Orgetorix himself will give the same to the friends of the common people. 5. The friends of these were especially beloved by all. 6. I will show him that these undertakings are very great.

Lātīnē hīs respondētō:

Nōnne probāt illīs id factū perfacile esse? Estne cōnāta perficere perfacile? Quis probābat id perfacile esse? Quibus probābat id perfacile esse? Quis erat suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus? Habēsne (*have you*) imperium? Perficiēsne (*will you accomplish*) haec cōnāta? Quae fōrma est *factū?* Estne *factū* supīnum? Quō in cāsū est *factū? illīs? cōnāta? ipse? cīvitātis?*

NOTES

1. The future active participle combined with some form of the verb **sum** denotes intended or future action. Thus the future active participle **obtentūrus** combined with **esset** (the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**) may be translated *would get control of* or *intended to get control of.* In the same way we may translate **amātūrus sum,** *I intend to (am about to) love;* **probātūrī sumus,** *we intend to prove;* **datūrus erat,** *he would give;* etc. This construction is called the *first* or *active* periphrastic conjugation.

App. 37; A. 129; G. 248–9; H. 233; P. 229.

2. **factū;** The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension used only in the accusative (termination **-um**) and ablative (termination **-ū**). The ablative of the supine is employed with a few adjectives and nouns to show *in respect to what* the statement is made. Thus, **perfacile factū,** *very easy to do* or *in doing.*

App. 129; A. 303; G. 436; H. 547; P. 555.

3. **esse,** *that it is.* For the infin. and the trans. see XX, 1

PENSUM TRICESIMUM NONUM

The SUBJUNCTIVE Present and Imperfect passive are formed on the same stems as the Subjunctive active with the personal endings of the passive voice.

Tempus Praesēns

Sing.	**ame-r**	II	**mone-**	**-a-r**
	-ē-ris(re)	III	**teg-**	**-ā-ris(re)**
	-ē-tur	IV	**audi-**	**-ā-tur**
Plūr.	**-ē-mur**			**-ā-mur**
	-ē-minī			**-ā-minī**
	-e-ntur			**-a-ntur**

Tempus imperfectum

Sing.	I	**amā-**	**-re-r**
	II	**monē-**	**-rē-ris(re)**
	III	**tege-**	**-rē-tur**
Plūr.	IV	**audī-**	**-rē-mur**
			-rē-minī
			-re-ntur

Verte in Anglicum :

Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

dubius, -a, -um doubtful

quīn, *conj.* that not, but that (*after negative words of doubt and hindrance*), that

plūrimum, (*pos.* **multum**; *comp.* **plūs**). *superl. adv.* most, especially

plūrimum possent were the most powerful

exercitus, -ūs, M. army

conciliō -āre, -āvī, -ātus win over, gain

Dīcitō haec Lātīnē:

He shows — that it is very easy — very easy to accomplish

their undertakings — because — because he intended to gain the supreme power — that it was doubtful — not doubtful that — that the Helvetians were the most powerful — he promises that he will win — by his own resources and army — the armies of Gaul.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. They proved to all their friends that it was very easy to do. 2. These attempts were made in many states. 3. The supreme power was held by the Roman consul. 4. A great number of men were intending to gain the royal power. 5. Orgetorix showed the Helvetians that it was not doubtful that they were the most powerful of all.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Tōtīus Galliae quī poterant plūrimum (*were the most powerful*)? Quid cōnfīrmābat Orgetorīx? (Orgetorīx sē illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmābat.) Quōmodo, erat rēgna conciliātūrus (*how was he going to win etc.*)? Nōnne rēgna illīs conciliāvit? (Rēgna illīs nōn conciliāvit.) Quō in cāsū est *Galliae?* (*Galliae* est in cāsū Genetīvō) Quō in cāsū est *cōpiīs? rēgna?* Cūius generis est *exercitū? rēgna?* (*rēgna* generis neutrī est.)

NOTES

1. **sē illīs rēgna conciliātūrum (esse)**, *that he will win the royal power for them.*

2. Observe that in the translation of indirect discourse (XX, 1) the English idiom requires the introduction of the conjunction *that* but the Latin employs no introductory word.

3. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. Thus **sē** is acc., subject of the infinitive **conciliātūrum (esse)**. Cf. *Gallōs* **obtinēre** (Less. XII); *sē habēre,* (Less. XXVI) *biennium esse* (XXXII).

App. 120; A. 336, 2; G. 527; H. 536; P. 401.

4. **conciliātūrum:** supply **esse** which is frequently omitted in the future infinitive. For the infin. see XX, 1.

5. For the number of **sē** see XXXII. 1. Observe that the ending **-um** *conciliātūrum* agrees with this subject.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM

Verte in Anglicum:

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs populōs, tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um fortieth
ōrātiō, -ōnis F. speech, language, address
fidēs, -eī, F. faith, assurance, pledge
iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī oath
per *prep c. acc.* through, by means of
potēns, -entis powerful
fīrmus, -a, -um strong, vigorous
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus hope

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Speech — this speech — of this speech — influenced by this speech — they give — they give to each other — they gave an oath and a pledge — they will give a pledge — having seized the royal power — they hope — they hope to be able — they hope to be able to get possession — to get possession of entire Gaul — people — peoples — through three very strong peoples — three very strong men — Orgetorix was very strong — doubtful — it is not doubtful that they are very powerful — he promises that he will win the kingdom — army — by his army.

Sequentia litteris Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Influenced by these speeches they gave a pledge and oaths to each other. 2. They hoped that, when they had seized the royal power, they could (*posse*) get possession of the government of all Gaul. 3. Aroused by this speech, they determined to get possession of as great a number of carts as possible. 4. They hoped to be able to establish peace and

friendship with the nearest state. 5. He hopes he can (*posse*) persuade Casticus to give (*ut . . . det*) to him his daughter in marriage.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quid dant inter sē? Nōnne fidem et iūsiūrandum dant? Quī dant inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum? In quā cōnstrūctiōne est *rēgnō occupātō?* (Est ablātīvus absolūtus.) Quae particula sermōnis est *per?* (*Per* est praepositiō.) Quid regit? Quō in gradū comparātiōnis est *potentissimōs*, — positīvō, comparātīvō, an (*or*) superlātīvō? Quō ex capite (*chapter*) est pēnsum hodiē (*to-day*)? Estne pēnsum longum, an breve? Nōnne pēnsum breve est? Potēsne (*are you able*) Latīnē loquī (*to speak*)? (Paulum[*a little*].) Cūius generis (*of what gender*) est nōmen *ōrātiō*,masculīnī, an fēminīnī? Cūius generis est *fidēs? iūsiūrandum? rēgnō? populōs? Galliae?*

Inflect the verb **spērō**, according to the models given in XXIV, XXVI, XXXI, XXXIV, XXXVI.

NOTES

1. **hāc ōrātiōne,** *by* (means of) *this argument.* The *means* or *instrument* of an action is expressed by the ablative, without a preposition. This construction is called the Ablative of Means *or* Instrument (*ablātīvus instrūmentī*). Cf. *cōpiīs, exercitū,* XXXIX; *lēge,* XXXII; *auctōritāte,* XXIX; *lacū, flūmine,* XXII; etc. App. 90; A. 248 c; G. 401; H. 420; P. 407.

2. **iūsiūrandum,** *oath,* is a compound noun, composed of **iūs,** a neuter noun of the third decl. and **iūrandum,** a neuter noun of the second declension. Both parts are inflected. The only plural forms are the nom. and accusative.

3. **rēgnō occupātō,** *after they have seized the royal power* (in their own tribes). Observe that the ablative absolute is here (as frequently) best rendered by a temporal clause. See on **M. Messālā,** etc. XIX, 3.

4. **potīrī,** *to get the control of,* contrary to its ordinary use, here takes its object, **Galliae,** in the genitive. What case does *potior* regularly govern? XX, 3.

5. **sēsē posse spērant,** *they hope they can.* **sēsē:** for the number see XXXII, 1; for the case see XX, 2. **posse:** for the infin. and the trans. see XX, 1.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM PRIMUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. Review the declensions and the verb forms thus far presented especially in XXXIV, XXXVI.

2. Conjugation of **sum**, *I am* (**esse**, *to be*) in the subjunctive mode.

Tempus praesēns

Singulāris		Plūrālis
si-m	I may be (let me be) etc.	**sī-mus**
sī-s	but see XXXVI, 3*.	**sī-tis**
si-t		**si-nt**

Tempus imperfectum

3. The student will observe that the **r** of the tense sign of the imperfect subjunctive (XXXVI, Intr. n. 4) is assimilated to the preceding **s** of the stem and hence we have **-sē** for **-rē**.

Singulāris		Plūrālis
es-se-m	I might be, etc. but	**es-sē-mus**
es-sē-s	see XXXVI, 3*.	**es-sē-tis**
es-se-t		**es-se-nt**

4. The PERFECT subjunctive in the passive voice is formed of the perfect passive participle and the present subjunctive of the verb **sum**, thus:

Singulāris			Plūrālis	
amāt-us	**sim**	I may have been etc.	**amāt-ī**	**sīmus**
amāt-us	**sīs**	but see XXXVI, 3*	**amāt-ī**	**sītis**
amāt-us	**sit**		**amāt-ī**	**sint**

5. The PLUPERFECT subjunctive is formed of the perfect passive participle and the imperfect subjunctive of the verb **sum**, thus:

Singulāris		Plūrālis	
amāt-us	**essem**	**amāt-ī**	**essēmus**
amāt-us	**essēs**	**amāt-ī**	**essētis**
amāt-us	**esset**	**amāt-ī**	**essent**

Below are given the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passi remaining three conjugations.

Tempus perfectum

Singulāris		Plūrālis	
II monitus -a -um	sim	monitī -ae -a	sīmus
III tēctus -a -um	sīs	tēctī -ae -a	sītis
IV audītus -a -um	sit	audītī -ae -a	sint

Tempus plūsquam perfectum

Singulāris		Plūrālis	
II monitus -a -um	essem	monitī -ae -a	essēmus
III tēctus -a -um	essēs	tēctī -ae -a	essētis
IV audītus -a -um	esset	audītī -ae -a	essent

Verte in Anglicum:

Omnia, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāta sunt. Carrōrum, quam māximus numerus coēmptus est. Māgnae sēmentēs factae sunt. Pāx et amīcitia cōnfīrmātae sunt. Biennium sibi satis esse dictum est. Profectiō cōnfīrmātur. Lēgātiōnēs susceptae essent. Casticī pater Sēquanus erat. Rēgnum nostrae cīvitātis occupēmus. Sit frāter eius plēbī acceptus. Ut idem cōnārētur, persuādēbātur. Imperium obtentūrus sum. Rēgna illīs conciliāta erant. Iīs iūraiūranda dabantur. Gallia est tōta dīvīsa in partēs trēs.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. We may be in that kingdom at another time. 2. It is not doubtful that they will attempt the same. 3. They might have been loved by all. 4. You might have seized the royal power through these strong peoples. 5. The troops were influenced by his speech.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM SECUNDUM.

IMPERATIVE, PARTICIPLES, INFINITIVE, GERUND

The Latin imperative is found in the Present tense second person, and in the Future tense second and third persons. In each conjugation the present singular active is the same as the stem.

Vōx Āctīva

		Tempus praesēns			
Sing.	2.	amā	monē	tege	audī
Plūr.	2.	-ā-te	-ē-te	-i-te	-ī-te
		Tempus futūrum			
Sing.	2.	amā-tō	monē-tō	tegi-tō	audī-tō
	3.	-ā-tō	-ē-tō	-i-tō	-ī-tō
Plūr.	2.	-ā-tō-te	-ē-tō-te	-i-tō-te	-ī-tō-te
	3.	-a-ntō	-e-ntō	-u-ntō	-iu-ntō

The Present Singular of the imperative in the passive voice is the same as the Present infinitive of the active voice; and the Future forms are derived from the corresponding active forms by adding **-r.**

Vōx Passīva

		Tempus praesēns			
Sing.	2.	am-ā-re	mon-ē-re	teg-e-re	aud-ī-re
Praes.	2.	-ā-min-ī	-ē-minī	-i-minī	-ī-minī
		Tempus futūrum			
Sing.	2.	amā-tor	monē-tor	tegi-tor	audī-tor
	3.	-ā-tor	-ē-tor	-i-tor	-ī-tor
Plūr.	2.	———	———	———	———
	3.	ama-ntor	mone-ntor	tegu-ntor	audi-untor

The Present and Future Participles are active; the Perfect Participle and the Gerundive are passive. All these forms are declined like adjectives.

	Praesēns	Futūrum	Perfectum	Gerundīvum
I	amāns	amātūrus	amātus	amandus
II	monēns	monitūrus	monitus	monendus
III	tegēns	tēctūrus	tēctus	tegendus
IV	audiēns	audītūrus	audītus	audiendus

The Latin INFINITIVE is found in the Present, Perfect, and Future, active and passive.

Vōx Āctīva

Praes.	**amā-re**	**monē-re**	**tege-re**	**audī-re**
Perf.	**-āv-isse**	**-u-isse**	**tēx-isse**	**-īv-isse**
Fut.	**-ātūrum esse**	**-itūrum esse**	**tēctūrum esse**	**-ītūrum esse**

Vōx Passīva

The Present passive infinitives are formed by substituting ī for the final e of the Present active, except in the third conjugation where ī takes the place of -ere.

Praes.	**amā-rī**	**monē-rī**	**teg-ī**	**audī-rī**
Perf.	**-ātum esse**	**-i-tum esse**	**tēctum esse**	**-tūm esse**
Fut.	**-ā-tum īrī**	**-i-tum īrī**	**tēctum īrī**	**-tum īrī**

For an explanation of the uses of the Gerundium (Gerund) see XXXII, 4, a.

I	amand-	-ī	**Gen.**
II	monend-	-ō	**Dat.**
III	tegend-	-um	**Acc.**
IV	audiend-	-ō	**Abl.**

The supines have the forms of the accusative and ablative singular of the fourth declension. For their use see XXXVIII 3.

I	amāt-		
II	monit-	-um	**Acc.**
III	tēct-	-ū	**Abl.**
IV	audīt-		

1. Of the tenses which are given above and in XXXIV, 3-6 we have the following forms from the supīne stem as exhibited in the perfect participle above.

a. The perfect passive infinitive by adding **esse,** to the perfect participle: thus, **amātus esse,** *to have been loved.*

b. The future active participle by adding **-ūrus, -ūra, -ūrum,** to the stem: thus, **amāt-ūrum,** *about* (*purposing*) *to love.*

c. By adding **esse** *to the above* (*b*) we have the future active infinitive: thus, **amātūrum esse,** *to be about* (or *purposing*) *to love.*

d. The future passive infinitive by adding **īrī** to the accusative of the supine: thus, **amātum īrī,** *to be about* (*going*) *to be loved.*

2. The student must remember that the participle has all the endings of the adjectives and these endings must conform to the number, gender, and case of the subject: thus, **hominēs adductī sunt,** *the men were influenced;* but **mulierēs** (*the women*) **adductae sunt; sē parātōs esse dixērunt,** *they said they were prepared.*

REVIEW VOCABULARY

duodēvīcēsimus, -a, -um
apud
longē
nōbilis, -e
fuit
dīves, dīvitis
is
coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F.
nōbilitās, -tātis, F.
fēcit

ūndēvīcēsimus, -a, -um
cōnsul, -ulis, M.
rēgnum, -ī, N.
cupiditās, -tātis, F.
persuāsit
sum

vīcēsimus, -a, -um
ut, utī
cōpia, -ae, F.
exīrent
esse
perfacilis, -e
virtūs, -tūtis, F.
praestō, -āre
tōtus, -a, -um
imperium, -ī, N.
potīrī

undique
locus, -ī, M.
nātūra, -ae, F.

alter, -a, -um
noster, -tra, -trum

rēs, reī, F.
fīēbat
et, . . et
minus
lātē
vagōr, -ārī
fīnitimī, -ōrum, M.
īnferre
possent

homō, -inis, M.
bellō, -āre
cupidus, -a, -um
dolor, -ōris, M
afficiō, -ere

prō
multitūdō, -inis, F.
autem
glōria, -ae, F.
fortitūdō, -inis, F.
angustus, -a, -um
habeō, -ēre
arbitror, -ārī
longitūdō, -inis, F.
mīlia, -ium
passus, -ūs, M.
ducentī, -ae, -a
quadrāgintā
lātitūdō, -inis, F.
centum
octōgintā

ē, ex
hīc
facile
lātus, -a, -um
altus, -a, -um
ager, -grī, M.
Helvētius, -a, -um
pateō, -ēre
lacus, -ūs, M.
cultus, -ūs, M.
texṭus, -ūs, M.

addūcō, -ere
auctōritās, -tātis, F.
permoveō, -ēre
cōnstituō, -ere
proficīscor, -ī
comparō, -āre
genus, generis, N.

iter, itineris, N.
frūmentum, -ī, N.
suppetō, -ere
multus, -a, -um

pāx, pācis, F.
amīcitia, -ae, F.
cōnfīrmō, -āre
comparō, -āre
appellō, -āre
dīvidō, -ere
incolō, -ere
gerō, -ere
faciō, facere
pertineō, -ēre

persuādeō, -ēre
coëmō, -ere
cōnficiō, -ere
biennium, -ī, N.
suī
satis
dūcō, -ere
annus, -ī, M.
profectiō, -ōnis, F.
dēligō, -ere
lēgātiō, -ōnis, F.
suscipiō, -ere
fīlius, -ī, M.
pater, patris, M.
obtineō, -ēre
senātus, -ūs, M.
populus, -ī, M.
amīcus, -ī, M.
occupō, -āre
ante
item
tempus, temporis, N.
prīncipātus, -ūs, M.
māximē
plēbs, plēbis, F.
acceptus, -a, -um
īdem,
cōnor, -ārī
fīlia, -ae,
mātrimōnium, -ī, N.
dō, dare
faciō, facere
ille
probō, -āre
cōnātum, -ī
perficiō, -ere
ipse
obtineō, -ēre
dubius
quīn
plūrimum
exercitus, -ūs
conciliō, -āre
quadrāgēsimus
ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
fidēs, -eī, F.
iūsiūrandum, -ī, N.
per
potēns
fīrmus
spērō, -āre

REVIEW TOPICS

Give the declension of **is, sōlus, hīc, rēs, quī,** and the comparison of **nōbilis** and **dīves.** Recite the first person singular and plural of all tenses of **vagor, dividō, habeō, dūcō.** Explain Ablative Absolute, Direct Object, Indirect Object, Subject of the Infinitive, agreement of pronouns, Ablative of Cause. Give the characteristic vowels by which the conjugations are distinguished, and the ending of the present active infinitive of each. Recite the personal endings of the verb in the active voice. Tell how the Imperfect and Future Tenses are formed. Explain the formation and use of the Gerund. Recite the personal endings of the verb in the passive voice. Give the third person singular in all tenses in the passive voice of **incolō, persuādeō** and **appellō.** Give the ending of the Genitive singular of the fourth declension. Decline **passus** and **lacus.** Explain how deponent verbs differ from other verbs. State which cardinal numerals are not declined and how the hundreds are declined. Recite the personal endings of the Perfect Indicative. Give tense signs for Pluperfect and Future Perfect. Decline the Reflexive Pronoun, and explain its use. Distinguish between the Gerund and the Gerundive. State how duration of time is expressed. Give the first person singular and plural of **sum** in the present, imperfect, and future. Tell how the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect tenses are formed in the passive voice. Explain use of the Ablative of Agent. State how time *at* or *within which* is expressed. Explain the use of the Dative with adjectives, Future Participle, Ablative of the Supine. Tell how *means* is expressed.

IV. THE ELEMENTS OF THE VERB.

The Verb is made up of the stem, signs of mode and tense, and the personal endings. The last include the signs of voice, person and number.[1]

Stem. The Present Stem is made up of the root and an added vowel, usually called the characteristic. Thus: am-ā-, mon-ē-, teg-e-, and aud-ī-.

Tense Signs.
- In the Pres. Ind. and the Imperative the personal endings are added to the stem.
- In the Imp. Ind. the syllable -bā- is inserted between the stem and personal endings.
- In the Fut. Ind. the syllable -bi[2]- is inserted between the stem and personal endings.
- In the Imp. Subj. the syllable -re- is inserted between the stem and personal endings.

Mode Sign. In the Pres. Subj. the stem vowel becomes a mode sign: I.[3] ĕ, II. (e)ā, III. ā, IV. (i)ā.

I.

Personal Endings.

		INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.			IMPERATIVE.			
		ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
Num.	*Per.*	*For all Tenses except Perf. Ind.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Pres. Tenses.*	*Pres.*	*Fut.*	*Pres.*	*Fut.*
Sing.	1	-m, -ō[5]	-ī	-r[6]				
	2	-s	-istī	-ris (re)	*stem*	-tō	-re	-tor
	3	-t	-it	-tur		-tō		-tor
Plu.	1	-mus	-imus	-mur				
	2	-tis	-istis	-mĭnī	-te	-tōte	-minī	
	3	-nt	-ĕrunt (ēre)	-ntur		-ntō		-ntor

II.[4]

VOWEL CHANGES.			
Conj.	*Pr. Ind.*	*Fu. Ind.*	*Pr. Sub.*
I.[3]	ā	ā (bō)	ē
II.	ē	ē (bō)	(e)ā
III.	ĭ	ē	ā
IV.	ī	(i)ē	(i)ā

PERF. TENSES, ACT. VOICE.

Perfect Stem.	INDICATIVE. *Perfect.*	INDICATIVE. *Pluperfect.*	INDICATIVE. *Future Perfect.*	SUBJUNCTIVE. *Perfect.*	SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pluperfect.*
amāv- monu- tēx- audīv-	-ī -istī -it -imus -istis -ērunt (ēre)	-era- + Add the Personal Endings.	-eri- + Add the Personal Endings.	-eri- + Add the Personal Endings.	-isse- + Add the Personal Endings.

PERF. TENSES, PASS. VOICE.

Supine Stem.		INDICATIVE. *Perfect.*	INDICATIVE. *Pluperfect.*	INDICATIVE. *Future Perfect.*	SUBJUNCTIVE. *Perfect.*	SUBJUNCTIVE. *Pluperfect.*
amāt-	-us, -a, -um	sum	eram	erō	sim	essem
monit-		es	erās	eris	sīs	essēs
tēct-		est	erat	erit	sit	esset
audīt-	-ī, -ae, -a	sumus	erāmus	erimus	sīmus	essēmus
		estis	erātis	eritis	sītis	essētis
		sunt	erant	erunt	sint	essent

[1] **Thus:**

1. Stem { a. Root. b. Stem Vowel.
2. Tense Signs.
3. Mode Vowel.
4. Personal Endings { a. Signs of Voice. b. " " Person. c. " " Number.

[2] For the signs of the Future of the third and fourth Conjugations, see Table II. above.

[3] These numerals refer to the four conjugations.

[4] The first column shows the stem vowel; the second, the modified tense sign of the Fut. Ind.; and the third, the mode sign.

[5] This ending is used only in the Present, Future and Future Perfect Indicative.

[6] If -ō is used in the active, it is retained before -r in the passive.

V. CONJUGATIONS: *Indicative Mode.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Stem.	amā-	monē-	tege-	audī-
	I.	II.	III.	IV.
	Present Tense.			
am I-	-ō	-eō	-ō	-iō
	-ās	-ēs	-is	-īs
	-at	-et	-it	-it
	-āmus	-ēmus	-imus	-īmus
	-ātis	-ētis	-itis	-ītis
	-ant	-ent	-unt	-iunt
	Imperfect.			
	-ābam	-ēbam	-ēbam	-iēbam
	-ābās	-ēbās	-ēbās	-iēbās
	-ābat	-ēbat	-ēbat	-iēbat
	-ābāmus	-ēbāmus	-ēbāmus	-iēbāmus
	-ābātis	-ēbātis	-ēbātis	-iēbātis
	-ābant	-ēbant	-ēbant	-iēbant
	Future.			
	-ābō	-ēbō	-am	-iam
	-ābis	-ēbis	-ēs	-iēs
	-ābit	-ēbit	-et	-iet
	-ābimus	-ēbimus	-ēmus	-iēmus
	-ābitis	-ēbitis	-ētis	-iētis
	-ābunt	-ēbunt	-ent	-ient

Perfect Tenses.

	Perfect.	*Pluperfect.*	*Future Perfect.*
amāv-	-ī	-eram	-erō
monu-	-istī	-erās	-eris
tēx-	-it	-erat	-erit
audīv-	-imus	-erāmus	-erimus
	-istis	-erātis	-eritis
	-ērunt (ēre)	-erant	-erint

PASSIVE VOICE.

	amā-	monē-	tege-	audī-
	I.	II.	III.	IV.
	Present Tense.			
am-	-or	-eor	-or	-ior
mon-	-āris (āre)	-ēris (ēre)	-eris (ere)	-īris (īre)
teg-	-ātur	-ētur	-itur	-ītur
aud-	-āmur	-ēmur	-imur	-īmur
	-āminī	-ēminī	-iminī	-īminī
	-antur	-entur	-untur	-iuntur
	Imperfect.			
	-ābar	-ēbar	-ēbar	-iēbar
	-ābāris (āre)	-ēbāris (āre)	-ēbāris (āre)	-iēbāris (āre)
	-ābātur	-ēbātur	-ēbātur	-iēbātur
	-ābāmur	-ēbāmur	-ēbāmur	-iēbāmur
	-ābāminī	-ēbāminī	-ēbāminī	-iēbāminī
	-ābantur	-ēbantur	-ēbantur	-iēbantur
	Future.			
	-ābor	-ēbor	-ar	-iar
	-āberis (ere)	-ēberis (ere)	-ēris (ēre)	-iēris (ēre)
	-ābitur	-ēbitur	-ētur	-iētur
	-ābimur	-ēbimur	-ēmur	-iēmur
	-ābiminī	-ēbiminī	-ēminī	-iēminī
	-ābuntur	-ēbuntur	-entur	-ientur

Perfect Tenses.

		Perf.	*Pluperfect.*	*Future Perfect.*
amāt-	-us, -a, -um[2]	sum	eram	erō
monit-		es	erās	eris
tēct-		est	erat	erit
audīt-	-ī, -ae, -a	sumus	erāmus	erimus
		estis	erātis	eritis
		sunt	erant	erunt

[1] This may be termed the base and is found by dropping the stem vowel. The above endings are joined directly to the base.

[2] This participle is always in the same gender and number as the subject of the verb.

VI. CONJUGATIONS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Subjunctive. — *Present.*

I.	II.	III.	IV.
am-	mon-	teg-	aud-
-em	-eam	-am	-iam
-ēs	-eās	-ās	-iās
-et	-eat	-at	-iat
-ēmus	-eāmus	-āmus	-iāmus
-ētis	-eātis	-ātis	-iātis
-ent	-eant	-ant	-iant

Imperfect.

-ārem	-ērem	-erem	-īrem
-ārēs	-ērēs	-erēs	-īrēs
-āret	-ēret	-eret	-īret
-ārēmus	-ērēmus	-erēmus	-īrēmus
-ārētis	-ērētis	-erētis	-īrētis
-ārent	-ērent	-erent	-īrent

	Perfect.	*Pluperfect.*
amāv-	-erim	-issem
monu-	-eris	-issēs
tēx-	-erit	-isset
audīv-	-erimus	-issēmus
	-eritis	-issētis
	-erint	-issent

Imperat. *Pr.*	am-	mon-	teg-	aud-
	-ā	-ē	-e	-ī
	-āte	-ēte	-ite	-īte
Fut.	-ātō	-ētō	-itō	-ītō
	-ātō	-ētō	-itō	-ītō
	-ātōte	-ētōte	-itōte	-ītōte
	-antō	-entō	-untō	-iuntō
Inf.	amāre	monēre	tegere	audīre
	amāvisse	monuisse	tēxisse	audīvisse
	amātūrus[1] esse	monitūrus esse	tēctūrus esse	auditūrus esse
Part.	amāns	monēns	tegēns	audiēns
	amātūrus	monitūrus	tēctūrus	auditūrus
Ger.	amandī	monendī	tegendī	audiendī

PASSIVE VOICE.

Subjunctive. — *Present.*

I.	II.	III.	IV.
am-	mon-	teg-	aud-
-er	-ear	-ar	-iar
-ēris (ēre)	-eāris (āre)	-āris (āre)	-iāris (āre)
-ētur	-eātur	-ātur	-iātur
-ēmur	-eāmur	-āmur	-iāmur
-ēminī	-eāminī	-āminī	-iāminī
-entur	-eantur	-antur	-iantur

Imperfect.

-ārer	-ērer	-erer	-īrer
-ārēris (ēre)	-ērēris (ēre)	-erēris (ēre)	-īrēris (ēre)
-ārētur	-ērētur	-erētur	-īrētur
-ārēmur	-ērēmur	-erēmur	-īrēmur
-ārēminī	-ērēminī	-erēminī	-īrēminī
-ārentur	-ērentur	-erentur	-īrentur

		Perfect.	*Pluperfect.*
amāt-	-us,[1] -a, -um	sim	essem
monit-		sīs	essēs
tēct-		sit	esset
audīt-	-ī,[1] -ae, -a	sīmus	essēmus
		sītis	essētis
		sint	essent

Imperat. *Pr.*	am-	mon-	teg-	aud-
	-āre	-ēre	-ere	-īre
	-āminī	-ēminī	-iminī	-īminī
Fut.	-ātor	-ētor	-itor	-ītor
	-ātor	-ētor	-itor	-ītor
	———	———	———	———
	-antor	-entor	-untor	-iuntor
Inf.	amārī	monērī	tegī	audīrī
	amātus[1] esse	monitus esse	tēctus esse	auditus esse
	amātum īrī	monitum īrī	tēctum īrī	auditum īrī
Part.	amātus	monitus	tēctus	auditus
	amandus	monendus	tegendus	audiendus
Sup.	amātum	monitum	tēctum	auditum
	amātū	monitū	tēctū	auditū

[1] This Participle is always in the same gender and number as the subject of the verb.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM QUARTUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinclīs causam dīcere coēgērunt: damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut īgnī cremārētur.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

indicium, -ī (per indicium = per indicēs, *through informers*) N. report, information
ēnūntiō, 1. to report, announce
mōs, mōris, M. (*in plu.* **mōrēs,** *morals, customs*) character, custom
vinclum, -ī, N. chain, bond
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus say, tell, speak
causam dīcere to plead a case
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus bring together; compel
damnō, 1. condemn
poena, -ae, F. punishment, penalty
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow
oportēbat it was proper *or* necessary, it behooved
īgnis, -is, M. fire
cremō, 1. burn to ashes, burn

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

This thing — this thing was reported — was reported to the Helvetians — was reported through (*per*) informers — the Helvetians reported — customs — in accordance with their customs — they compelled — they compelled Orgetorix — they compelled Orgetorix to plead his case — to plead his case from chains — I condemn — to condemn — I have condemned — condemned — it behooved — it behooved that the punishment follow the condemned (man) — that — that he be burned to ashes — that he be burned to ashes by fire — they condemned — they condemned Orgetorix — the oath and pledge — through this powerful people — his speech.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. These things were reported to the Helvetians through informers. 2. In accordance with their custom they compelled him to plead his case from chains. 3. (If) condemned it was necessary that the punishment follow. 4. They determined to burn Orgetorix to ashes. 5. They gave a pledge to each other so that he would be burned to ashes. 6. They hoped to be able by their own troops and their own army. 7. He persuaded Casticus to burn (that he should burn) the cart to ashes with fire.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quōmodo es rēs ea ēnūntiāta? Quibus est rēs ea ēnūntiāta? Quōmodo coēgērunt Orgetorīgem causam dīcere? Quam poenam (*what penalty*) oportēbat sequī? In quō cāsū est *mōribus? vinculīs? causam? īgnī? rēs?*

NOTES

1. **mōribus suīs**, *in accordance with their customs.* The phrase *in accordance with* is expressed in Latin by simply putting the noun in the ablative case. This construction is called the Ablative of Manner (App. 88; G. 399; P. 410 (2) *or* the Abl. of Specification (A. 253, N.) *or* the Abl. of Cause (H. 416).

2. **damnātum . . . cremārētur**, *if condemned it was necessary that the punishment follow (him) of being burned by fire.*

3. The perf. part. **damnātum** is here equivalent to a conditional clause, **sī damnātus esset.**

4. **oportēbat**, is an impersonal verb, *i. e.* without a personal subject. Here the subject is **poenam sequī.** App. 120; A. 145; G. 208; R. 2; P. 318 (4) *r.*

5. The clause **ut īgnī cremārētur** is a substantive clause of result in apposition with **poenam.**

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM QUINTUM

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

diēs, -ēī, M. and F. day
dictiō, -ōnis [dīcō, *speak*], F. speaking, pleading
iūdicium, -ī, N. judgment, decision, court, trial
familia, -ae, F. retinue, family servants
decem, *indecl. num.* ten
cliēns, clientis, M. and F. follower, retainer
obaerātus, -ī, M. dependent, debtor
habeō, -ēre, habuī, habitus have, hold
eōdem, *adv.* in the same place, to the same place
nē, *conj. c. subj.* lest, that not
ēripiō, -ere, -uī, ēreptus [ē + rapiō, *seize*] tear away, break away
con-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [cum + dūcō, *lead*] lead together, bring together, hire

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmptā:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Day — on the day — on the day appointed — cause (*or* case) — of the case — of the pleading of the case — trial — to the trial — brought together to the trial — he brought together all his retinue — he brought together about ten thousands of men — Orgetorix brought — he led together — he led together all his retainers — all his retainers and debtors — who — of whom — he had — he had a number — he had a great number — I have a great number — he led together to the same place — through — through them — lest (*that not*)

— that he might not plead — that he might not plead his case — Orgetorix broke away — he hopes to break away — I announce the information — the penalty of chains — to consume with fire — they follow these customs.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. On the day appointed for the pleading (lit. of the pleading) of the case he brought to the same place all his retinue and two thousands of his debtors. 2. They determined to lead together from all sides about ten thousand debtors. 3. They had a great number of retainers. 4. Through them they broke away that they might not plead their case. 5. In accordance with their customs, they led together a great number of men. 6. He showed them that it was very easy to bring together a number of dependents.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quō diē coēgit Orgetorīx familiam suam ad iūdicium? Quī erant ad iūdicium praeter eōs? Quot hominēs erant in familiā Orgetorīgis? Cūr eōs condūxit? Nōnne Orgetorīx sē eripuit? Cūius generis est nōmen *dictiō* (XXXII, 3.)? *iūdicium? familiam? obaerātōs?* In quō numerō est *hominum? eōs? sē*? Quae sunt partēs prīmāriae (*what are the principal parts*) verbī *ēripuit?*

NOTES

1. **diē cōnstitūtā**, *on the day appointed.* **diēs**, in the singular, is often feminine when referring to a fixed time (or to an indefinite period). cf. XXIII, 1. Constr.? XXXVII, 1.

2. **ad mīlia decem**, *to the number of ten thousand.* **ad**, with numerals is rendered *about* or *to the number of.*

3. **sē**: for the number see XXXII, 1.

4. **nē causam dīceret**, *to avoid pleading his case* (that he might not plead his case). **nē** is the negative *final* conjunction and the subjunctive used thus, is called the Subjunctive of Purpose (*subiūnctīvus fīnis*) *or* the Subjunctive in a final clause (*subiūnctīvus in incīsiōne prōpositā.*) App. 107; A. 317, 1; G. 545, 3; H. 497, II; P. 482, (1).

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM SEXTUM

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

ob, *prep. c. acc.* on account of, for
incitō, 1. urge on, incite
arma, -ōrum, N. pl. arms
iūs, iūris, N. right, justice, law
exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum follow out, assert, execute
magistrātus, -ūs, M. magistracy, magistrate
morior, morī, mortuus sum die
neque, *conj.* and not, nor
neque . . . neque neither . . . nor
suspīciō, -ōnis, F. mistrust, suspicion
neque abest suspīciō nor is the suspicion wanting
ut, *adv.* as, see n. 3
mors, mortis, F. death
cōnscīscō, -ere, cōnscīvī, cōnscītus decree, appoint
sibi mortem cōnscīscere to appoint death to one's self, to commit suicide

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

When the state — when the state was attempting — was attempting to assert — to assert its rights — to assert its rights by arms — the magistrates were collecting — were collecting a multitude of men — were collecting from the country — I die — to die — he died — she died — they died — Orgetorix died — is from (is wanting) — nor is the suspicion wanting — as they think — as the Helvetians think — he himself — death — to appoint death — to appoint death to one's self (to commit suicide) — Orgetorix committed suicide — to the same place — speaking.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. When the states were attempting to assert their rights by arms, Orgetorix died. 2. The states were incited on account of this thing, and attempted to assert their rights. 3. Suspicions were not wanting that they committed suicide. 4. The magistrates, who possessed the chief power in the state, were hoping to be able to assert their rights. 5. You can (*potestis*) persuade the Helvetians to assert the right of the state.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Cūr cōnābātur cīvitās iūs suum armīs exsequī? Quī cōgēbant ex agrīs hominum multitūdinem? Quis est mortuus? Quae erat suspīciō? Quid arbitrābantur Helvētiī? Quis sibi mortem cōnscīvit? In quō tempore est *cōnātur? mortuus est? abest?* Nōnne *cōnor* est verbum dēpōnēns? (Ita, *cōnor* verbum dēpōnēns est.) Cūius generis est *cīvitās* (XIX. 4)? *armīs? iūs? multitūdinem* (XXVI, 3)? *agrīs? magistrātūs* (XXVII, 4)? *suspīciō* (XXXII, 3)? *Helvētiī?*

NOTES.

1. **cum . . . cōnārētur,** *when the state (citizens) attempted.* The temporal conj. **cum** is generally employed with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in a clause expressing the situation in which the main act or event (here *Orgetorīx mortuus est*) takes place. This construction is called the Temporal Subjunctive (*subiūnctīvus temporālis*) *or* the Subjunctive in a temporal clause. App. 111; A. 325, *a*; G. 585; H. 521. **cōgerent** is connected with **cōnārētur** by the correlative conjunction **-que** and is therefore in the same construction.

In translating the temporal subjunctive the English indicative is employed, and not the auxiliaries of the English potential. See XXXVI, Intr. n. 3.

2. Distinguish **cum,** the preposition, from **cum,** the conjunction.

3. **ut** is followed by the indicative (*arbitrābantur*) and is therefore the adverb *as.* What part of speech is it when followed by the subjunctive? How translated? See XX, *vocabulary.*

4. **quīn,** meaning after expressions of doubt? XXXIX, Vocabulary.

5. Name the deponent verbs in this lesson. What is a deponent verb? XXVI, 2.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

post, *prep. c. acc.* after
nihilō, *adv.* none, by no means
minus, *adv.* (*pos.* **parum,** *sup.* **minimē**) less
ubi, *adv.* where, when
iam, *adv.* already, now
parātus, -a, -um, (*p. p. of* **parō**) prepared, ready
oppidum, -ī, N. a fortified town, stronghold
duodecim, *indecl. num.* twelve
vīcus, -ī, M. village, settlement
quadringentī, -ae, -a four hundred
prīvātus, -a, -um private
aedificium, -ī, N. building
incendō, -ere, incendī, incēnsus set fire to, burn, rouse

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

After his death — none the less — that which — that which they had determined — they attempt to do — they attempt to do that which they had determined (upon) — they attempt to go forth — to go forth from their boundaries — when they thought — they thought they were prepared — for this thing — for these things — they set fire to — they set fire to their towns — all their towns — twelve in number — about twelve in number — villages — they set fire to the villages — about four hundred villages — buildings — all the private buildings — they set fire to the remaining private buildings.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Helvetians will attempt that which they have determined. 2. They were attempting to go forth from their boundaries. 3. When they think they are prepared for these things they burn to ashes all their private buildings. 4. The towns were about twelve in number, and the villages about two hundred and forty.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quid sunt cōnātī Helvētiī facere? Quandō (*when*) incendunt sua oppida? Quot oppida habēbant Helvētiī? Quot vīcōs habēbant? Ubi habitant (*live*) Helvētiī? Nōnne Helvētiī incōlēbant Galliam? In quō cāsū est *ēius? mortem? fīnibus? rem? oppida? numerō? vīcōs?* Quae pars ōrātiōnis est *ēius? nihilō? quod? sua?* In quō modō est *cōnantur? parātōs? esse?* Cūr est *parātōs esse* in modō īnfīnitīvō? (Ōrātiō oblīqua, XX, 1).

Inflect the pronouns in this lesson.

NOTES

1. **ut . . . exeant,** *to leave their country.* A substantive clause of purpose in apposition with *id.* Contrast this with the *ut* clause in XLIV, 5.

2. **numerō,** *in number.* The Ablative of Specification (*Ablātīvus Respectūs*) is used to show *in what respect* the statement is true. cf. **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus** *inter sē differunt,* III; **virtūte** *omnibus praestārent,* XX; App. 95; A. 253; H. 424.

3. **sē esse,** *that they were:* for the case of **sē** see XX, 2; for the number, XXXII, 1; for the infin. **esse,** and its trans., XX, 1. cf. XXVII, 1.

4. **ad:** for the translation with numerals see XLV, 2.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM OCTAVUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs,

reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent;

VOCABULORUM INDEX

frūmentum, -ī, N. grain
praeterquam, *adv.* except, beyond, besides
sēcum (**sē**+**cum**), (*cf.* **quibuscum**) with them
portō, 1 (*cf.* **important**) carry, bring
portātūrī erant they intended to carry
com-būrō, -ere, būssī, būstus, (*cf.* **cremō, incendō**) burn up, consume
domus, -ūs, F. (*abl.* **domō**) house, home
reditiō, -ōnis, F. [**re**+**eō,** *go*] a return, a going back
spēs, speī, F. hope
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus lift up, carry away
perīculum, -ī, N. trial, danger
sub-eō, īre, īvī, (iī), itus [**sub,** *under* +**eō**] undergo, endure
ad ... subeunda (*note* 5) for enduring
ut ... essent so that ... they would be

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Grain — all the grain — they burn up the grain — except that which — except that which they intended to carry with them — the hope taken away — the hope of a return taken away — the hope of a returning — of returning home — so that, that — so that they would be — so that they would be better prepared — better prepared for enduring — for enduring all dangers — they were better prepared — the Helvetians were prepared — I am prepared — not prepared — always (*semper*) prepared — when they thought they were prepared.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. They will carry all the grain with them. 2. He intended to carry all the grain with him. 3. They carried with them

the grain so that they would be better prepared. 4. The Helvetians thought they were prepared for enduring all dangers. 5. They burn up the towns, villages, and private buildings, and inhabit another part of Gaul.

Latinē hīs respondētō:

Quantum frūmentī (*how much grain*) combūrunt? Cūr combūrunt omne frūmentum? Quī erant parātiōrēs? Nōnne spēs sublāta est? Quōrum (*whose*) spēs est sublāta? Nōnne Orgetorīx ante haec (*before these things*) mortuus est? (Certē, Orgetorīx ante haec mortuus est.) Cūius generīs est *domus? spēs? reditiō?*

Inflect in full the verb **portō**.

Inflect the comparative of **parātus**. XV, Intr. n. 2.

NOTES

1. **portātūrī erant,** *they intended to carry.* Explain the formation and use of the active periphrastic conjugation. XXXVIII, 1.

2. **domus** has its Abl. sing., and sometimes its Dat. sing., in the second declension, and has a locative form, **domī,** *at home.* A. 70, *f*; A. 70, *f*; H. 119, 1; P.

3. **spē sublātā,** *when the hope was taken away.* For the constr. and trans. see XL, 3.

4. **parātiōrēs,** *more prepared* or *better prepared.* How is the comparative formed?

5. **ad perīcula subeunda**: *for undergoing dangers;* more literally, *for dangers to be undergone* or *endured.* How is the gerundive formed and inflected? XXXII, 4, *b*.

6. **ut . . . essent,** *that they might be.* The subjunctive is here employed with **ut** to express *purpose.* cf. **ut exīrent,** *to go forth* (XX); **ut occupāret,** *to seize* (XXXV); **nē dīceret** (XLV); **ut exeant** (XLVII). What are such clauses called? What is the subjunctive called? What is the negative particle in *purpose* (*final*) clauses? XLV, 4.

PENSUM QUADRAGESIMUM NONUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. The cardinal numbers from **quattuor** to **centum** are indeclinable. The inflection of **ūnus** is given in XX, Intr. n. 2: **trēs** is declined like the plural of adjectives of the third declension, as follows:

	M. and F.	N.
NOM.	trēs	tria
GEN.	trium	trium
DAT.	tribus	tribus
ACC.	trēs	tria
VOC.	trēs	tria
ABL.	tribus	tribus

2. The Interrogative (or Indefinite) pronoun **quis** (**quī**), *who? which?* (indefinite *anyone, anything*) is inflected in the singular as follows:

Nom.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius
Dat.	cui	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
Abl.	quō	quā	quō

The forms **quis, quae, quid,** are usually substantive. **Quī** and **quod** are usually adjective forms. The plural is the same as that of the relative. XXII, Intr. n. 1. Like **quis** inflect the universal pronoun, **quisque,** *everyone, each*, observing that the forms are the same with the addition of the enclitic **-que.**

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, rēliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda

essent; trium mēnsūm molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

trēs, tria, *card, num.* three
mēnsis, -is, M. month
molō, -ere, moluī, molitus grind
cibāria, -ōrum, N. provisions, rations
molita cibāria ground grain, flour
quisque, quaeque, quidque (*gen.* **cūiusque**) every one, each one, each
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus[**ex**+**ferō**] bring out, carry away
iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus order, command

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Three — of three months — provisions for three months — they order each one — they order each one to bring from home — to bring for himself — to bring from home flour for three months — they order each one to burn his house — they intend to carry flour with them — the hope of returning home — let us take away all hope.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. They will carry with them flour for one month. 2. Each one is ordered to burn the buildings. 3. I bring from home all the grain. 4. Suspicions are not wanting that they attempted to do the same thing.

NOTES

1. **trium mēnsūm,** *for three months.* The Genitive of Quality (*Genetīvus Quālitātis*) when used to indicate the *length, depth, extent,* etc., is sometimes called the *Genitive of Measure.* A. 215, *b*; G. 365; H. 396, V.

III. DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Personal.		Reflex.	Demonstrative.								
ego	tū[1]		hīc	haec	hōc	is	ea	id	ille	illa	illud
meī	tuī	suī	hūius	hūius	hūius	ēius	ēius	ēius	illīus	illīus	illīu-
mihi	tibi	sibi	huic	huic	huic	eī	eī	eī	illī	illī	illī
mē	tē	sē	hunc	hanc	hōc	eum	eam	id	illum	illam	illud
mē	tē	sē	hōc	hāc	hōc	eō	eā	eā	illō	illā	illō
nōs	vōs [1]		hī	hae	haec	eī (iī)	eae	ea	illī	illae	illa
nostrūm (ī)	vestrūm [2] (ī)	suī	hōrum	hārum	hōram	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi	hīs	hīs	hīs	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	illīs	illīs	illīs
nōs	vōs	sē	hōs	hās	haec	eōs	eās	ea	illōs	illās	illa
nōbīs	vōbīs	sē	hīs	hīs	hīs	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	illīs	illīs	illīs

Intensive.						Relative.			Interrog. and Indef.		
ipse [1]	ipsa	ipsum	īdem	eadem	idem	quī	quae	quod	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)
ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	cūius	cūius	cūius	cūius	cūius	cūius
ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	cui	cui	cui	cui	cui	cui
ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	eundem	eandem	idem	quem	quam	quod	quem	quam	quid (quod)
ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	quō	quā	quō	quō	quā	quō
ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	eīdem (iī)	eaedem	eadem	quī	quae	quae	quī	quae	quae
ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem (iī)	eīsdem (iī)	eīsdem (iī)	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibus
ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem	quōs	quās	quae	quōs	quās	quae
ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem (iī)	eīsdem (iī)	eīsdem (iī)	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibus	quibus

Correlatives.					Irregular Comparison.					
Demon.	*Rel.*	*Interrog.*	*Indef. Rel.*	*Indef.*	*Pos.*	*Comp.*	*Superl.*	*Pos.*	*Comp.*	*Superl.*
is	quī	quis	quisquis	aliquis	bonus	melior	optimus	(*cis, citrā*)	citerior	citimus
tālis	quālis	quālis	quāliscumque		malus	pēior	pessimus	(*in, intrā*)	interior	intimus
tantus	quantus	quantus	quantuscumque	aliquantus	māgnus	māior	māximus	(*prope*)	propior	proximus
tot	quot	quot	quotquot	aliquot	parvus	minor	minimus	(*prō, prae*)	prior	prīmus
ibi	ubi	ubi	ubiubi	alicubi	multus	plūs	plūrimus	*ūltrā*	ūlterior	ultimus
eō	quō	quō	quōquō	aliquō	nēquam	nēquior	nēquissimus	(*dē*)	dēterior	dēterrimus
eā	quā	quā	quāquā	aliquā						
inde	unde	unde	(undecumque)	alicunde	frūgī	frūgālior	frūgālissimus	exterus	exterior	extrēmus, extimus
tum	quum (cum)	quandō	quandōcumque	aliquandō						
totiēs	quotiēs	quotiēs	quotiēscumque	aliquotiēs	dexter	dexterior	dextimus	inferus	inferior	infimus, īmus
uterque	uter	uter	utercumque							
tam	quam	quam	quamvīs		juvenis	jūnior	minimus nātū	posterus	posterior	postrēmus, postumus
ita (sīc)	ut	ut	utcumque		senex	senior	māximus nātū	superus	superior	suprēmus, summus

[1] Vocative like Nominative. In all other pronouns the Vocative is wanting.

[2] Sometimes vostrūm, -trī.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM

Verte in Anglicum:

Persuādent Rauricīs et Tulingīs et Latovīcīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um fiftieth

Rauricī, -ōrum, M. the Raurici, *a tribe on the upper Rhine*

Tulingī, -ōrum, M. the Tulingi, *a German tribe on the Rhine, east of the Raurici*

Latovīcī, -ōrum, M. the Latovici, *a German tribe, north of the Tulingi*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum use, employ, adopt; enjoy

cōnsilium, -ī, N. counsel, measure, plan

ex-ūrō, -ere, ūssī, ūstus burn up, consume

ūnā, *adv.* [**ūnus,** *one*] *one with*, in company, together

proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum set out, depart

Bōiī, -ōrum, M. the Boii, *a powerful tribe in central Gaul*

in-colō, -ere, coluī live, dwell, inhabit

Nōricus, -a, -um of the Norici, Norican

trāns-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus [**eō,** *go*] go across *or* over, cross

Nōrēia, -ae, F. Noreia, *a town of Noricum now*, Neumarkt

op-pūgnō, 1. [**ob**+**pūgnō,** *fight*] fight against, assault, storm

re-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [**capiō,** *take*] take back, receive

socius, -ī, M. associate, ally

ad-scīscō, -ere, scīvī, scītus approve, admit, receive, adopt

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

They persuade their neighbors — the Raurici and Latovici

adopted the same plan — to set out from their towns — the Boii dwelt across the Rhine — we had crossed into the Norican territory — let us storm Noreia — they receive the Boii as allies.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. They ordered all to bring from home ground grain for a month. 2. He persuades the Raurici, the Tulingi, the Latovici and the rest of the neighbors to set out together with him. 3. The Raurici used the same plan. 4. When they had burned up their own towns, they were better prepared for undergoing danger. 5. They receive to themselves as allies the Boii, who had dwelt across the river. 6. They persuade the Boii, who have crossed into the territory of the Raurici. 7. The Helvetians intended to storm (XXXVIII, 1) Noreia. 8. The Helvetians think that the Boii stormed Noreia. 9. When the Helvetians were attempting to storm the town they ordered the men to go forth.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quibus populīs persuādent Helvētiī? Quī erant Rauricī et Tulingī et Latovīcī? Nōnne erant fīnitimī Helvētiīs? Quō cōnsiliō (*what plan*) ūsī sunt? Qūorum exussērunt oppida? Ubi habitāverant Bōiī? In quem agrum trānsierant? Quod oppidum oppūgnāverant Bōiī? Quī Bōiōs sociōs adscīscunt sibi? In quō tempore est *incoluerant?* (Plūsquamperfectō.) In quō tempore est *trānsierant?* *oppugnārant?* Quid est temporis sīgnum (*the tense sign*)?

Inflect rapidly the verb **oppūgnō**, or the simple form **pūgnō**.
Review rapidly the other grammatical forms.

NOTES

1. **Rauricīs**, etc.: for the case see on XIX, 1.

2. **fīnitimīs**: relation to the preceding nouns? XXXIII, 3.

3. **utī** is another form for **ut**. It can be distinguished from **ūtī**, to use, by the quantity of the first vowel, and by the connection.

4. **utī . . . proficīscantur**, *to set out, to depart*, a substantive clause of

purpose, the direct object of **persuādent**. For a like use of purpose (*final*) clauses see **ut exīrent** (XX); **ut occupāret** (XXXV); **ut cōnārētur** (XXXVII). Contrast this with the purpose clause in XLVIII, 1.

5. **eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō**, *adopting* (or *having used*) *the same plan:* **ūtor** has its object (here *cōnsiliō*) in the ablative. Name another verb governing the ablative. XX, 3.

6. **oppidīs . . . exūstīs**, *having burned* or *when they had burned, etc.* For this use of the Abl. Abs. cf. XL, 3.

7. **oppūgnārant** is contracted from **oppūgnāverant**. In the tenses formed from the perfect stem the **v** is sometimes dropped, and the vowel following it then unites with the preceding vowel.

8. **Bōiōsque, receptōs**, etc. The perf. participle, *receptōs*, may be here translated as a coordinate clause: *they admitted among their people* (**ad sē**) *and associated with themselves as allies, the Boii.* A. 292 Rem.; G. 664 Rem. 1; H. 549, 5; P. 547 *b*.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM PRIMUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. The verb **possum**, (*I am able* or *have power, I can*)is formed of the stem **pot-** (of the adj. **potis**, *powerful*) and the verb **sum**. Before **s** the consonant **t**, of the stem **pot-**, is assimilated. For the inflection of the present tenses of **sum** see XXXIV and XLI, Intr. notes. See App. 41.

Tempus Praesēns

INDIC.	SUBJ.
pos-sum	**pos-sim**

Tempus Imperfectum

pot-eram	**pos-sem** (for **pot-essem**)

Tempus Futūrum

poterō

2. The cardinal numeral **duo** is thus declined:

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**
GEN.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**
DAT.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**
ACC.	**duōs** (**duo**)	**duās**	**duo**
ABL.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**

What other cardinals are inflected? How declined? XLIX, Intr. n.

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs angustum et difficile, inter mōntem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent;

VOCABULORUM INDEX

omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis**] altogether, in all

duo, -ae, -o (*gen.* **duūm**, *or* **duōrum**) two

angustus, -a, -um [**angō**, *squeeze*] narrow, straightened

difficilis, -e [**dis-** + **facilis**, *easy*] hard, difficult

vix, *adv.* hardly, scarcely, with difficulty

quā, *adv.* where

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* one by one, one at a time

impendeō, -ēre (*other parts wanting*) impend, overhang

perpaucī, -ae, -a very few

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:—

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

There were two roads — were in all two roads — by which they could go forth — one road — a narrow and difficult road — between the mountain and the river — with difficulty — where carts one by one — where carts could be drawn — mount Jura was overhanging — the mountains are very high — so that a very few could check — so that they could easily check the Helvetians.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. There was one road by which he could go from home. 2. The road was narrow and difficult between the mountain and the river. 3. High mountains were overhanging the river. 4. The Raurici, who adopted the same plans, set out with the Tulingi. 5. The Boii, who dwell across the river, will storm Noreia. 6. Their neighbors crossed into the fields of the allies.

NOTES

1. **quibus itineribus,** *by which.* Caesar sometimes repeats the antecedent in the relative clause where English usage requires its omission.

2. Numeral adjectives like **singulī,** denoting *how many apiece,* or, *how many each,* are called *distributives.* They are inflected like the plural of **māgnus.** A. 95 *a*; G. 295; H. 172, 3; P. 157 (3).

3. **ut . . . possent,** *so that a very few could,* etc. Pure clauses of Result (Consecutive clauses) express the *result* of the main verb (here *impendēbat*). This Subjunctive is called the Subjunctive of Result (*subiūnctīvus cōnsecūtiōnis*) or the Subjunctive in a Consecutive clause (*in incisiōne cōnsecutīvā*). A. 319, 1; G. 551 ff.; H. 500, 1, 2; P. 483. Contrast this Pure clause of Result with the result clause in XLIV, 5.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM SECUNDUM

Verte in Anglicum:

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs angustum et difficile, inter mōntem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram multō facilius atque expedītius propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsitur.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

multō, *adv.* (*cf.* **multus**) much, by far

expedītus, -a, -um unimpeded, quick

nūper, *adv.* newly, recently

pācō, 1 [**pāx,** *peace*] pacify, subdue

fluō, fluere, flūxī, fluxus flow

nōnnūllus, -a, -um [**nōn**+**nūllus**] some, several, *in pl. as subst.,* some, several

vadum, -ī, N. a shallow place, ford

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

There was only one road — this was narrow and difficult — I draw (lead) the cart with difficulty — a mountain overhangs the road — so that I can not prohibit them — the other road is short and easy — the river flows between their boundaries — the Allobroges had been subdued.

Sequentiā litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. These two ways, by which you can depart, are very narrow. 2. There is a difficult journey between the high mountain and the deep river. 3. Very few of the Celts were able to draw the carts. 4. The other road was easy and unimpeded. 5. The Allobroges were recently subdued. 6. The river is crossed in one place by a ford.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quot itinera erant? Ubi ūnum iter erat? Ubi alterum iter erat? Quī populī erant nūper pācātī? Qūomodo Rhodanus trānsitur? In quā coniugātiōne est *pācō?* (Prīmā.) *impendeō?* (Secundā.) *fluō?* (Tertiā.) Quae ōrātiōnis pars est *omnīnō? omnis? difficilis? difficultās? pācō? pāx? vadum?*

Inflect together **mōns altissimus, prōvinciam nostram, quibus itineribus,** and **nōnnūllīs locīs,** beginning with the nominative forms.

NOTES

1. **nōnnūllīs locīs,** *in several places.* The Ablative of Place (*ablātīvus locātīvus*) regularly omits the preposition **in** with words denoting position. A. 258, *f.* 1; H. 425, II 2; P. 426 (2) *c.*

2. **facilius, expedītius:** for formation and inflection see XV, Intr. n. 1, 2. How here distinguished from the comparative of the adverb?

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM TERTIUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTE:

The noun **vīs**, *force, violence*, presents some peculiarities of inflection:

	Sing.	Plūr.
NOM.	vīs	vīrēs
GEN.	vīs (rare)	vīrium
DAT.	vī (rare)	vīribus
ACC.	vim	vīrēs
VOC.	vīs	vīrēs
ABL.	vī	vīribus

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur.

VOCABULORUM INDEX

extrēmus, -a, -um (*pos.* **exterus**, *comp.* **exterior**) last, extreme, farthest
Genāva, -ae, F. Geneva
pōns, pōntis, M. bridge
ē, ex, *prep. c. abl.* from, out of
nōn-dum, *adv.* not yet
bonus, -a, -um, *comp.* **melior,** *sup.* **optimus** good, beneficial, kind
bonō animō of a friendly spirit, kindly disposed
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see; *in passive*, seem, appear
ex-īstimō, 1 [**aestimō**, *compute*] estimate, think, consider
vel, *conj.* or, even
vel . . . vel (*cf.* **aut . . . aut**) either . . . or
vīs, vīs, F. force, violence; *in pl.*, strength
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus go, proceed, pass, march
patior, patī, passus sum endure, suffer, permit, allow

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

The last town — the next town — to the Helvetians' boundaries — from these towns — he persuades — he persuaded —

they would persuade — they thought they would persuade — would persuade the Allobroges — they thought they would compel — would compel by force — either would persuade or compel by force — so that they would permit — would permit them to go — to go through the country of the Allobroges — to go by a far easier way — the recently subdued Allobroges — the river which flows — several places.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō::

1. The towns were nearest the boundaries of the Allobroges. 2. Bridges were extended from these towns across the river. 3. The Helvetians thought they would persuade the Allobroges. 4. They thought they would compel them by force. 5. They thought they would compel them to permit (*ut . . . paterentur*) them to go. 6. They thought so (*ita*) because they seemed kindly disposed to them. 7. The narrow road between the mountains does not permit these to pass.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quod oppidum proximum est Helvētiōrum fīnibus? Quem ad populum pertinet pōns? Quibus exīstimabant sēsē persuāsūrōs? Quid (*what*) exīstimābant vī sēsē coāctūrōs? Erantne (*were they*) bonō animō in populum Rōmānum?

NOTES

1. **fīnibus:** constr. XXXVII, 2; **Allobrogibus** XIX, 1; **sēsē** XXXIX, 3, **vī** XL, 1.

2. **vel,** *or* (**volō,** *I wish*), is used where choice between two alternatives is a matter of indifference; **aut,** *or*, is used where one alternative excludes the other.

3. **persuāsūrōs, coāctūrōs:** supply **esse.** Cf. XXXIX, 4. For the form see XXXVIII, 1; for the infin. see XX, 1.

4. **bonō animō:** the abl. is used with an adj. (or a genitive) to describe or characterize a person or thing. This is called the Ablative of Quality or Characteristic (*ablātīvus qualitātis*). A. 251; G. 400; H. 419; II.; P. 411.

5. **quod . . . vidērentur: quod,** *because*, takes the subjunctive whenever it denotes a reason given doubtfully or on another's authority.

Otherwise it takes the indicative. A. 321; G. 539 ff.; H. 516, I, II.; P. 519.

6. **ut . . . paterentur,** *so that they would permit.* What subj.? LII, 3

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM QUARTUM

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant: is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabiniō cōnsulibus.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus say, tell, speak; appoint

rīpa, -ae, F. bank (of a stream)

con-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō,** *come*] come together, assemble

Kalendae, -ārum, F. the Calends, the first day of the month

Aprīlis, -e (*abbrev.* **Apr.**) April, of April

a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (**ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlēs**) the fifth day before the Calends of April

Aulus, -ī, M. (*abbrev.* **A.**) Aulus, *a Roman praenomen*

Gabinius, -ī, M. Gabinius, *a Roman family name*

Lūcius, -ī, M. Lucius, *a Roman praenomen*

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

A departure — for departure — after everything was prepared for departure — they appoint a day — on the fifth day — on which day (when) — when all should assemble — the banks — should assemble at the banks — the Calends of April — in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius —

Piso and Gabinius were consuls — there were two consuls at that time — the bridge extends to this bank.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. When everything was prepared, they appointed a day. 2. These days were before the first of April. 3. These days were in the consulship of Marcus Piso and Aulus Gabinius. 4. The Allobroges were kindly disposed toward their neighbors. 5. I saw the bridge, which extended to the farthest banks. 6. They think they will persuade all the Celts.

Write in full the conjugation of the verb dīcō.

NOTES

1. **omnibus rēbus comparātīs; L. Pīsōne . . . cōnsulibus:** for the abl. and its trans. see on XIX, 3 and XL, 3.

2. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.:** from the Calends, time was reckoned backwards, and both extremes included. Thus, the fifth day before the Calends of April includes both the first of April and the twenty-eighth of March. A. 876; G.Appen.;H. 642; 660 (4). Here the logical construction would read "**erat diēs quīntus ante Kalendās Aprīlēs**," where **ante** is a prep. governing **Kalendās** in the acc., and **Aprīlēs** is an adj. agreeing with **Kalendās** (*the fifth day before the April Calends*); but **ante diem quīntum**, etc., grew to be a fixed form of expression which must be treated as an indeclinable noun, before which **in** or **ex** may stand; e. g. **in a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**, where all that follows **in** is to be taken as an indeclinable noun governed by **in**, whereas the logical expression would be **in diē quīntō ante**, etc.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM QUINTUM

Vertē in Anglicum:

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit et

ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ūlteriōre legiō ūna) pōntem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

Caesar, Caesaris, M. Caesar (see p. 14.)
nūntiō, 1. report, announce
mātūrō, 1. hasten
urbs, urbis, F. city
con-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [**tendō,** *stretch*] strive, contend; hasten, push forward
per-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō,** *come*] come through, arrive
mīles, mīlitis, M. soldier
imperō, 1. command, demand from, levy upon
ūlterior, -ius, *comp. adj., no positive form* farther, more remote
legiō, -ōnis, F. [**legō,** *choose*] a chosen number, legion
re-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus [**scindō,** *cleave*] cut or break down, destroy

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

This thing — when this had been reported — to attempt to march — to march through our province — he hastens to depart — to depart from the city — a journey (a march) — by marches — by as great marches as possible — into farther Gaul — he pushes on into farther Gaul — he levies upon the whole province — as great a number as possible — as great a number of soldiers as possible — there was one legion — there were two legions — he orders — he orders that the bridge be broken down — the bridge was at Geneva.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. When these things had been reported to Caesar, he hastened to depart from the town. 2. They will attempt to march through the Roman province. 3. They were hastening into Gaul by forced marches (*quam māximīs itineribus*).

4. The legions, which he levied upon the province, arrived at Geneva. 5. They ordered that the bridges in farther Gaul be broken down. 6. There were in all three legions, which assembled on the farther bank.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Cuī est id nūntiātum? Nōnne Caesarī est id nūntiātum? Quid est Caesarī nūntiātum? Quid fēcit Caesar? Quā ab urbe mātūrat Caesar proficīscī? (Caesar ab urbe Rōmā mātūrat proficīscī.) Quō (*whither*) contendit Caesar? Quot mīlitēs imperāvit Caesar? Quot legiōnēs erant in Galliā ūlteriōre? Quī vidēbantur in populum Rōmānum nōndum bonō animō? Cūius generis est *legiō? numerum? mīles?* Cūr, est *cōnārī* in modō īnfīnitīvō? (XIX, 1.) Quot hominēs erant in legiōne? (n. 3.)

Recite in full the conjugation of the verb **contendō**.

Explain the mode of **nūntiātum esset** (XLIV, 1); **proficīscī, rescindī** (XXX, 1); **cōnārī** (XX, 1); the case of **eōs** (XX, 2), **itineribus** (XL, 1) **prōvinciae** (XIX, 1).

NOTES

1. **ab urbe proficīscī,** *to start away from the city.* The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used with verbs denoting separation or privation. This is called the Ablative of Separation (*ablātīvus separātiōnis*). App. 83; A. 243; G. 390; P. 413. cf. **ā Belgīs,** IV; **fīnibus,** XI; **ā Germānīs, ab Helvētiīs,** XXII.

2. **quam . . . itineribus,** *by forced marches*; **quam . . . numerum,** *the greatest possible number of soldiers.* For the force of **quam** with the superlative see XXX, vocab.

3. A full legion consisted of 6,000 men. The legion was subdivided into ten *cohortes*, each cohort into three *manipuli*, each maniple into two *centuriae*. The legion was not always full, however, and perhaps averaged about 3,600 men.

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM SEXTUM

Verte in Anglicum:

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

adventus, -ūs, M. coming, arrival
certus, -a, -um certain, sure
certiōrem facere to inform
certiōrēs factī sunt they were informed
lēgātus, -ī, M. [lēgō, *choose, delegate*] legate, ambassador, lieutenant
mittō, mittere, mīsī, mīssus send
Nammēius, -ī, M. Nammeius, *a noble Helvetian*
Verucloetius, -ī, M. Verucloetius, *a chief of the Helvetii*
prīnceps, prīncipis [prīmus+capiō] chief, principal; *as subst.* chief, leader
sine, *prep. c. abl.* without
ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* **ūllīus,** *dat.* **ūllī** any; *as subst.* anyone
maleficium, -ī [male+faciō], N. doing evil, mischief, outrage
nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.* **nūllīus,** *dat.* **nūllī** no one, none
rogō, 1. ask, request
voluntās, -tātis [volō, *wish*], F. willingness, will, consent
licet, licēre, licuit (*impers.*) it is allowed, it is permitted
rogāre ut liceat to ask permission

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

When the Helvetians were informed — when I was informed — concerning his arrival — concerning their arrival —

they send ambassadors — they sent an ambassador — the most noted of the state — of which embassy (and of this embassy) — the chief place — they were holding the chief place — who should say (to say) — it was their intention — without mischief — to make a journey — to march through the province — to ask permission — to ask his consent.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. When Caesar was informed concerning their arrival, he sent an ambassador. 2. They sent ambassadors to say (*quī dīcerent*) it was their intention to march through Gaul. 3. In this embassy, Nammeius and Verucloetius held the chief place. 4. They sent them to ask permission to go through the province 5. They inform Caesar that they intend to march through the province. 6. These report to the soldiers that the legion has arrived at Geneva. 7. He is attempting to destroy the city on the farther bank. 8. The legions were levied by the ambassador.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Cūius dē adventū sunt Helvētiī certiōrēs factī? Quōs mittunt ad eum? Quī obtinēbant locum prīncipem? Cūr volēbant per prōvinciam iter facere? Quō in cāsū est verbum *ēius? adventū? lēgātōs? lēgātiōnis? locum? sibi? animō? iter? voluntāte?* Quō in gradū comparātiōnis (*degree of comparison*) est adiectīvum *certiōrēs?* (Comparātīvō.) *nōbilissimōs?*

Inflect the verb **mittō**, observing the stems and tense signs. Inflect together **cūius lēgātiōnis, prīncipem locum, aliud iter,** and **ēius voluntātis,** beginning with the nom. forms.

Inflect **certus** in the comp. degree. XV, Intr. n. 1, 2.

NOTES

1. Observe in the idiomatic phrase **certiōrem facere,** *to inform* (**certiōrēs factī sunt,** *they were informed*), that **certior** (**certiōrēs**) is the com-

parative of the adjective **certus**, and like any adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

2. **quī dīcerent**=**ut eī dīcerent**, *who should say, that they should say, to say.* Whenever a relative introducing a clause is equivalent, as here, to **ut** with a demonstrative denoting purpose, the subjunctive is used just as if **ut** stood at the beginning of the clause and the clause is a Relative clause of Purpose. App. 107, *b*; A. 317, 2; G. 545, 1; H. 497, I.; P. 482 (2).

3. **sibi esse in animō**, *that it was their intention* (lit. *it was to them in mind*). For the infin. **esse** see on XX, 1. The subject of **esse** is the phrase **sine . . . facere.**

4. **aliud**: for inflection see XX, 1.

5. **rogāre** (sc. the subject **sē**), *they asked.* The infin. as in **esse** above.

6. **ut . . . liceat**: for the construction of this clause see on LI, 4. What are verbs like **liceat** called? XLIV, 4. The subject here is the phrase **ēius . . . facere**, *they asked that* TO DO THIS WITH HIS APPROVAL *be granted them.*

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum mīssum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

memoria, -ae, F. memory, recollection

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus retain, hold

Cassius, -ī, M. **Cassius,** *a Roman family name*

oc-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus [**caedō,** *cut*] kill, slay

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus drive, rout, beat
sub, *prep. c. acc. and abl.* under
iugum, -ī, [**iungō,** *join*] N. yoke
concēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cum** + **cēdō**] concede, yield, grant, allow
putō, 1. (*cf.* **exīstimō**) think, decide
inimīcus, -a, -um [**in** *neg.* + **amīcus**] unfriendly, hostile
facultās, -tātis, F. ability, means, opportunity
temperō, 1. refrain, forbear
iniūria, -ae [**in** *neg.* + **iūs,** *right*] F. injustice, wrong, violence

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Caesar remembered (was holding in memory)—he remembered Lucius Cassius the consul—he remembered that the consul had been slain—he remembered that the army had been sent under the yoke—he thought—he did not think it ought to be granted—a man—men of hostile spirit—opportunity—given the opportunity (of marching)—when an opportunity was given—of marching through the province—he considered—nor did he consider that they would refrain from wrong—from mischief—he thought that the men would refrain.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Caesar remembered that the consuls were slain and their armies beaten. 2. Their armies were sent under the yoke by the Helvetians. 3. The men thought it ought not to be granted. 4. They did not think that the men would refrain from mischief. 5. When an opportunity was given (*datā facultāte*) of making a journey, they sent ambassadors. 6. I think that the boys (*puerōs*) will refrain from mischief. 7. Nammeius, who held the leading place, was informed by Verucloetius.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quid tenēbat Caesar memoriā? Quī cōnsul est occīsus? Cūius exercitus est sub iugum mīssus? Quid putābat Cae-

sar? Quid exīstimābat Caesar? Quae fōrma est *occīsum? mīssum? concēdendum? faciundī? temperātūrōs?*

NOTES

1. After **occīsum, pulsum** and **mīssum** supply **esse,** thus forming the perfect pass. infin. Why infin., and by what English mode translated? XX, 1.

2. **L. Cassium:** Lucius Cassius Longinus, consul in 107 B. C., and slain in battle by the Tigurini.

3. Construction of L. Cassium, XX, 2; **cōnsulem,** XXXIII, 3; **Helvētiīs,** XXXV, 1; **animō,** LIV, 4; **facultāte,** XL, 3; **iniūriā,** LVI, 1. Form of **temperātūrōs (esse),** XXXVIII, 1.

4. **pulsum:** a few Latin verbs, following the analogy of the Greek, form the perfect active by repeating the first consonant, followed by a vowel. This is called *reduplication*; e. g. **pellō, pe-pulī; dō, de-dī; poscō, po-poscī.**

5. **concēdendum:** supply **esse.** The gerundive with some form of the verb **sum,** expressed or understood, is used in Latin to express necessity or obligation. This is generally rendered by the use of the auxiliaries *must* or *ought.* Thus **concēdendum nōn putābat,** *he did not think it was to be,* or *ought to be, granted.* This forms what is called the second, or passive, periphrastic conjugation. App. 38; A. 113, *d,* N., 129; G. 143; H. 234; P. 229 (2).

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM OCTAVUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. Aprīl. reverterentur.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

sexāgēsimus, -a, -um sixtieth
tamen, *adv.* yet, nevertheless
spatium, -ī, N. space, period of time
inter-cēdō, cēdēre, cessī, cessus [**cēdō,** *go*] go between, intervene
dum, *conj.* while, until
re-spondeō, -ēre, spondī, spōnsus answer, reply
dē-līberō, 1. [**lībra,** *balance*] weigh well, consider, deliberate
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [**sub** + **emō,** *take*] take, employ
sī, *conj.* if
quis, quae, quid, *indef. pron.* any one, anything
volō, velle, voluī wish
Idūs, Iduum, F. *pl.* (n. 7) the Ides
re-vertor, vertī, versus sum [**vertō,** *turn*] turn back, return

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

That a period of time might intervene — to reply — he replied to the ambassadors — he replied that he would take a day — a day for deliberating — while (until) they should assemble — until the soldiers should assemble — the soldiers whom he had levied — if they wished anything — I return — he should return — they should return — about the thirteenth of April (*ad Idūs Aprīlēs*).

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. I think that a great period of time can (*posse*) intervene. 2. The soldiers whom he had levied assembled. 3. They were replying that they would take three days for deliberating. 4. If he wished anything, he would have returned. 5. He came about the thirteenth of April. 6. I remember (hold in memory) that they have not refrained from injustice.

NOTES

1. **posset:** for the subjunctive see on XLVIII, 6: for the inflection of **possum** see LII, Intr. n.

2. **dum mīlitēs convenīrent,** *until the soldiers should muster.* **Dum**

(also **dōnec** and **quoad** take the Subjunctive if the action is viewed as *desired, proposed,* or *conceived.* Otherwise the indicative is used. App. 111, *d*; A. 328; G. 572; H. 519, II; P. 503.

3. **dēlīberandum:** for the form see on XXV.

4. **sē sūmptūrum (esse),** *that he would take:* determine the number and gender of **sē.** XXXII, 1.

5. **vellent** is Subjunctive because a subordinate verb in indirect discourse; **reverterentur,** because representing an imperative in direct discourse. Caesar's original words were, probably, "**Sī quid** *vultis,* **ad Idūs Aprīlēs** *revertimini.*"

6. **sī quid:** *if anything.* **Quis,** interrogative, and **quis,** indefinite, have exactly the same forms. When indefinite, the form of **quis** is generally preceded by **sī, nisi, num,** or **nē.** For inflection, see XLIX, intr. n. 2.

7. **Idūs:** the Ides, the time of full moon, were the 13th of each month, excepting March, May, July and October, when they were on the 15th. When were the Calends? LV, vocab. and n. 2.

ROMAN CALENDAR

Our Date	March, May, July, October (31 days)	January, August, December (31 days)	April, June, September, November (30 days)	February (28 days)
1.	*Kalendis* (Martiis)	*Kalendis* Ianuariis	*Kalendis* Aprilibus	*Kalendis* Februariis
2.	a. d. VI.	a. d. IV.	a. d. IV.	
3.	a. d. V.	a. d. III.	a. d. III.	
4.	a. d. IV. Nonas	pridie	Nonas (Ianuarias etc.)	
5.	a. d. III. (Martias)	*Nonis*	*Nonis*	*Nonis* Februariis
6.	pridie	a. d. VIII.	a. d. VIII.	
7.	*Nonis* (Martiis)	a. d. VII.	a. d. VII.	
8.	a. d. VIII.	a. d. VI.	a. d. VI.	
9.	a. d. VII.	a. d. V.	a. d. V.	
10.	a. d. VI.	a. d. IV.	Idus (Ianuarias etc.)	
11.	a. d. V.	a. d. III.	a. d. III.	
12.	a. d. IV.	pridie	pridie	
13.	a. d. III. Idus (Martias)	*Idibus*	*Idibus*	*Idibus* Februariis
14.	pridie	a. d. XIX. Kal.	a. d. XVIII.	a. d. XVI.
15.	*Idibus* (Martiis)	a. d. XVIII. Febr.	a. d. XVII.	a. d. XV.
16.	a. d. XVII.	a. d. XVII.	a. d. XVI.	a. d. XIV.
17.	a. d. XVI.	a. d. XVI.	a. d. XV.	a. d. XIII.
18.	a. d. XV.	a. d. XV.	a. d. XIV.	a. d. XII.
19.	a. d. XIV.	a. d. XIV.	a. d. XIII.	a. d. XI.
20.	a. d. XIII.	a. d. XIII.	a. d. XII.	a. d. X.
21.	a. d. XII.	a. d. XII.	a. d. XI.	a. d. IX.
22.	a. d. XI.	a. d. XI.	a. d. X.	a. d. VIII.
23.	a. d. X.	a. d. X.	a. d. IX.	a. d. VII.
24.	a. d. IX.	a. d. IX.	a. d. VIII.	a. d. VI.
25.	a. d. VIII.	a. d. VIII.	a. d. VII.	a. d. V.
26.	a. d. VII.	a. d. VII.	a. d. VI.	a. d. IV.
27.	a. d. VI.	a. d. VI.	a. d. V.	a. d. III.
28.	a. d. V.	a. d. V.	a. d. IV.	pridie
29.	a. d. IV.	a. d. IV.	a. d. III.	
30.	a. d. III.	a. d. III.	pridie	
31.	pridie	pridie		

Kalendas (Aprīles, Februarias) — Kalendas (Maias) — Kalendas Martias

PENSUM QUINQUAGESIMUM NONUM

REVIEW VOCABULARY

indicium, -ī, N.
ēnūntiō, -āre
mōs, mōris, M.
vinculum, -ī, N.
dīcō, -ere
cōgō, -ere
damnō, -āre
poena, -ae
sequor, sequī
oportēbat
ignis, -is, M.
cremō, -āre

diēs, -ēī, M., F.
dictiō, -ōnis, F.
iūdicium, -ī, N.
familia, -ae, F.
decem
cliēns, -entis, M., F.
obaerātus, -ī, M.
eōdem
nē
ēripiō, -ere
condūcō, -ere
ob
incitō, -āre
arma, -ōrum, N.
iūs, iūris, N.
exsequor, exsequī
magistrātus, -ūs, M.
morior, morī
neque

suspīciō, -ōnis, F.
ut
mors, mortis, F.
cōnscīscō, -ere

post
nihilō
minus
ubi
parātus, -a, -um
oppidum, -ī, N.
duodecim
vicus, -ī, M.
quadringentī, -ae, -a
privātus, -a, -um
aedificium, -ī, N.
incendō, -ere
frūmentum, -ī, N.
praeterquam
portō, -āre
combūro, -ere
domus, -ūs, F.
reditiō, -ōnis, F.
spēs, speī, F.
tollō, -ere
perīculum, -ī, N.
subeō, -īre

mēnsis, -is, M.
molō, -ere
cibāria, -ōrum, N.
quisque

efferō, efferre
iubeō, -ēre

quīnquāgesimus, -a -um
ūtor, ūtī
cōnsilium, -ī, N.
exūrō, -ere
ūnā
incolō, -ere
trānseō, -īre
oppūgnō, -āre
recipiō, -ere
socius, -ī, M.
adscīscō, -ere

omnīnō
duo
difficilis, -e
vix
quā
singulī, -ae, -a
impendeō, -ēre
perpaucī, -ae, -a

multō
expedītus, -a, -um
nuper
pācō, -āre
fluō, -ere
nōnnūllus, -a, -um
vadum, -ī, N.

pōns, pōntis, M.
ē (ex)
nōndum
bonus, -a, -um
videō, -ere
exīstimō, -āre
vel
vīs, vīs, F.
eō, -īre
patior, patī

rīpa, -ae, F.
conveniō, -īre
Kalendae, -ārum, F.
Aprīlis, -e

nūntiō, -āre
mātūrō, -āre
urbs, urbis, F.
contendō, -ere
perveniō, -īre

mīles, mīlitis, M.
imperō, -āre
ūlterior, -ius
legiō, -ōnis, F.
rescindō, -ere

adventus, -ūs, M.
certus, -a, -um
lēgātus, -ī, M.
mittō, -ere
prīnceps, prīncipis
sine
ūllus, -a, -um
maleficium, -ī, N.
nūllus, -a, -um
rogō, -āre
voluntās, -tātis, F.
licet

memoria, -ae, F.
teneō, -ēre
occīdō, -ere

pellō, -ere
sub
iugum, -ī, N.
concēdō, -ere
putō, -āre,
inimīcus, -a, -um
facultās, -tātis, F.
temperō, -āre
iniūria, -ae, F.
sexāgēsimus, -a, -um
tamen
spatium, -ī, N.
intercēdō, -ere
dum
respondeō, -ēre
dēlīberō, -āre
sūmō, -ere
sī
volō, velle
Idūs, Iduum, F.
revertor, revertī

REVIEW TOPICS

Tell what case is employed to express manner. Explain the use of the Ablative to denote time. Give the meaning of **ad** with numerals. State what mode is used to express purpose. Show the difference between **ut** the conjunction, and **ut** the adverb. Define Ablative of Specification. Explain the formation and use of the active periphrastic conjugation. Explain the formation and inflection of comparatives. Inflect **trēs**, Explain the Genitive of Measure. Mention some verbs which govern the Ablative. Inflect **possum** through the present, imperfect, and future tenses. Decline **duo**. State how result is expressed. Explain what is meant by distributives, and tell how the distributives are inflected. Decline **vīs**. Explain the Ablative of Quality. Explain the Ablative of Separation. State the use of **quam** with superlatives. Tell what construction follows the expression **certiōrem facere**. Explain relative clause of purpose. Explain the formation and use of the passive periphrastic conjugation.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM

Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad mōntem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem, mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

intereā, *adv.* meantime, meanwhile
īn-fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus [**fluō,** *flow*] flow into, empty
novem, *indecl. num.* nine
mūrus, -ī, M. wall
altitūdō, -tūdinis [**altus,** *high*; *deep*] F. height, depth
pēs, pedis, M. foot
sēdecim [**sex**+**decem**] sixteen
fossa, -ae, F. trench, ditch
per-dūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus [**dūcō,** *lead*] lead through, construct
opus, operis, N. work, labor, fortification
perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [**per**+**faciō**] make through, complete, finish
praesidium, -ī, N. guard, garrison; defence
dis-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [**pōnō,** *place*] place apart, dispose, arrange, station

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

A legion — with (by the help of) this legion — the legion which he had — he had with him — with the soldiers — who had assembled — who assembled — he constructs a ditch — he constructs a wall — a wall sixteen feet in height — a wall nineteen miles in length — from the lake — he constructs a wall from the lake to the river — when the work was finished (*eō opere perfectō*) — he stations garrisons — they

station a garrison — the garrison is stationed — many garrisons were stationed.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. With one legion and with many soldiers whom he had with him, he constructed a wall nineteen miles long. 2. They will construct a wall from Mount Jura to Lake Geneva. 3. Lake Geneva flows into the river Rhone. 4. The trench was sixteen feet deep. 5. After finishing these fortifications, a period of time was taken for deliberating. 6. I wish to return to the garrison on the Ides of April.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quot legiōnēs habēbat Caesar sēcum? Quot mīlitēs habēbat sēcum? (Nēsciō). Ad quem mōntem perdūcit mūrum? Mōns Iūra quōrum fīnēs dīvidit? Quō in cāsū est *quam? fīnēs? passuum? pedum? opere? praesidia?* Quae est cōnstrūctiō nōminis *opere?* (Ablātīvus absolūtus.)

Inflect eā, sē, lacū, quī, opere, and the verb **habeō.**

NOTES

1. For the construction of **legiōne** see XL, 1; **lacū, LVI, 1; opere,** XL, 3.

2. **ex prōvinciā,** *from (out of) the province.* The ablative, commonly with a preposition, is used to denote the *source* from which anything is derived or proceeds. This construction is called the Ablative of Source (*ablātīvus originis*). App. 84; A. 244; G. 390; H. 415; P. 405.

3. **(in longitūdinem) mīlia . . . novem; in . . . sēdecim,** *to the length of nineteen miles; to the height of sixteen feet.* For the genitives, **passuum, pedum** see XLIX, 1.

4. **decem novem;** *nineteen:* the more usual form is **ūndēvīgintī.**

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM PRIMUM

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat, sē more et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs,

INDEX VOCABULORUM

castellum, -ī, N. fort, redoubt
com-mūniō, 4. [mūniō, *fortify*] fortify strongly, intrench
invītus, -a, -um unwilling
negō, 1. [nē + aiō, *say*] to say no, deny
exemplum, -ī, N. example
os-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [ob + tendō, *stretch*] show, declare
dē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, *hurl*] throw *or* cast down; disappoint
nāvis, -is, F. ship, vessel, boat
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus join, unite
ratis, -is, F. raft, bark
com-plūrēs, -a (-ia) [plūs, *more*] several, many

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

The fortification was completed — of stationing the garrison — a redoubt — he fortifies redoubts — that he can check them the more easily — if they attempt — against his will — against my will (*mē invītō*) — against the Helvetians' will — against your will (*tē invītō*, or *vōbīs invītīs*) — the day which he had appointed — he had appointed with the ambassadors — the day came — he denies that he can give — in accordance with the custom (*mōre*) — he shows that he will prohibit —

disappointed in this expectation — having joined together boats — by forming many rafts — the rafts and boats.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. When this work was completed they stationed the garrison in the fort. 2. He could check (*prohibēre poterat*) them if they attempted to cross against his will. 3. When those days which he had appointed with the soldiers came, he denied that he could give a way to any. 4. He showed that he would prohibit them if they attempted to use (*facere*) violence. 5. The Helvetians were disappointed in this expectation (*spē*). 6. When they had made several rafts, some of the Helvetians tried to cross the river which empties into the lake.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quod opus est perfectum? Quis commūnit castella? Cūr Caesar disposuit praesidia? Quid negābat Caesar sē facere posse? Quī erant animō dēiectī? Quae rēs iungēbant Helvētiī? Quid faciēbant? Nōnne complūrēs ratēs faciēbant? (Ita est, faciēbant ratēs complūrēs.)

NOTES

1. **quō facilius prohibēre possit,** *the more easily to check them.* **quō** (=**ut eō**) rather than **ut** introduces a *purpose* clause whenever that clause contains a word in the comparative degree or involves a comparison. App. 107, *c.;* A. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2; H. 497, II; P. 482 (3); cf. LVIII, 2.

2. **sē invītō,** *against his will* (*he being unwilling*). In this ablative absolute an adjective (*invītō*) takes the place of the participle (as in *opere perfectō*, above) or the second noun (as in *M. Messālā*, etc., XIX). App. 98; A. 255 *a*; G. 409; H. 431, 4; P. 422 *c.*

3. Explain the infinitives **trānsīre** (XXX, 1); **prohibēre; posse** (XX, 1); **prohibitūrum (esse).** Give the construction of **mōre** (XLIV, 1); **exemplō; ūllī; vim; spē** (LVI, 1); **nāvibus** (XL, 3); **ratibus.**

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM SECUNDUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

minimus, -a, -um, [*superl. of* **parvus,** *small*] least, smallest

nōn-numquam, *adv.* [**numquam,** *never*] sometimes

inter-diū, *adv.* by day

noctū, *adv.* [**nox,** *night*] by night

per-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [**rumpō,** *break*] break through

mūnītiō, -ōnis [**mūniō,** *fortify*], F. fortifying, fortification, defence

concursus, -ūs, M. [**cursus,** *running*] running together, onset

tēlum, -ī, N. weapon; missile, spear, dart (*used for fighting at a distance*)

repellō, -ere, repulī, repulsus [**re-** + **pellō,** *drive, beat*] drive back, repulse

cōnātus, -ūs [**cōnor,** *attempt*] M. attempt, effort

dē-sistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus [**sistō,** *stand*] stand *or* leave off, give up, refrain, desist

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē.

The disappointed Helvetians — by joining boats and making rafts — where the fords were — the least depth of the river — by day and by night — sometimes by night — having attempted to break through — repulsed by the strength of the work — repulsed by the onset of the soldiers — they desisted from this attempt — I will refrain from mischief.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Helvetians, who were disappointed in their expectations, made several rafts and boats. 2. They were not able to break through because of the strength of our fortifications. 3. The onset of the soldiers made the Helvetians refrain from these attempts. 4. In accordance with the example of the Roman people he denied that he could grant a passage (*iter*).

Inflect together **eā spē, nāvibus iūnctīs, ratibus complūribus, minima altitūdō, hōc cōnātū,** beginning with the nominative forms.

Give the principal parts of **dēiectī, iūnctīs, factīs, erat, possent, cōnātī.**

NOTES

1. **sī . . . cōnātī,** *trying to see if they could force their passage:* **sī** is here employed in the sense of *whether* or *to see if* to introduce an indirect question. The indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

2. **repulsī,** *they were driven back and.* For this use of the perfect participle see LI, 8.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM TERTIUM

Review the formation of the verb, XXIV, XXXI, XLII, and chart, page 115.

Below is given the conjugation of **eō,** *to go,* which presents some irregularities. In the tenses which are regular, only the forms of the first person are given.

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Tempus praesēns			
Sing.	**Plūr.**	**Sing.**	**Plūr.**
eō	īmus	eam	eāmus
īs	ītis	eās	eātis
it	eunt	eat	eant
Tempus imperfectum			
ībam	**ībāmus**	**īrem**	**īrēmus**

Tempus futūrum

ībō	**ībimus**

Tempus perfectum

īvī (iī)	**īvimus**	**īverim**	**īverimus**

Tempus plūsquam perfectum

īveram	**īverāmus**	**īvissem**	**īvissēmus**

Tempus futūrum exāctum

īverō	**īverimus**

Participia	**Gerundium**	**Supīnum**
iēns (*gen.* **euntis**)	**eundī**	**itum**
	-ō	**itū**
itūrus	**-um**	
eundum (used only impersonally)	**-ō**	

Infīnitīvus

īre	**īvisse** (**īsse**)	**itūrum esse**

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via quā, Sēquanīs invītīs, propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

re-linquō, -ere, līquī, lictus [**linquō**, *leave*] leave behind, leave; *pass.*, be left, remain

via, -ae, F. way, road, route

propter, *prep*, *c. acc.* on account of

angustiae, -ārum [**angustus,** *narrow*] F., *pl.* narrow straits, narrow pass

sponte, *abl.*; *gen.* **spontis** willingly, of one's own accord

dēprecātor, -ōris, M. intercessor, mediator, advocate

impetrō, 1. obtain (*by request* or *entreaty*), succeed in obtaining

ā (ab) impetrāre gain permission from, persuade

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

One way (road) remained — the way by (*per*) the Sequani — to go — they could not go — on account of the narrow pass — against his will — against the Sequanians' will — since they could not persuade these — willingly (of their own accord) — ambassadors were sent to Dumnorix — they send ambassadors — they send in order to (*ut*) get permission from the Sequani — Dumnorix was the intercessor — he made the attempt by day — let us not go by the narrow pass — we will go to our lesson.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. One way is left where they cannot go against the will of the Sequanians. 2. He cannot (is not able to) persuade them to do it of their own accord. 3. They sent an ambassador to Dumnorix to get permission from the Sequani. 4. With Dumnorix as their advocate they hope to obtain their request. 5. The fortifications were broken through by the onset of the soldiers.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quot viae relinquēbantur per Sēquanōs? Poterantne Sēquanīs hōc persuādēre? (Nēquāquam; id Sēquanīs persuādēre minimē poterant.) Ad quem itaque mīsērunt lēgātōs? Quis erat Dumnorīx? (Dumnorīx prīnceps erat Helvētiōrum plebīque acceptus)? Nōnne Dumnorīx amīcus Helvētiīs erat? (Ita quidem, is Helvētiīs amīcissimus fuerat).

NOTES

1. **relinquēbātur . . . via,** *there remained*, etc. When the subject (here *via*) follows the verb the expletive *there* may be used to introduce the sentence.

2. **Sēquanīs invītīs,** *against the will of the Sequani*, or *if the Sequani should refuse.* For the constr. see on *sē invītō*, LXII, 2.

3. **cum . . . possent,** *since they could not, etc.* **cum causal,** *since, because*, is followed by the subjunctive and the construction is explained as

the subjunctive with **cum** in a *causal* clause (*cum in incīsiōne causālī*). App. 110 *c*; A. 326; G. 586; H. 517; P. 510, 2. With what other constr. is the conj. *cum* employed? XLVI, 1.

4. **eō dēprecātōre,** *by his mediation* or *with him as advocate.* Observe that the pronoun **eō** is here employed instead of a noun as in XIX, 3.

5. **impetrārent:** what Subj.? XLVIII, 6.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM QUARTUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

grātia, -ae, F. favor, esteem, popularity

largītiō, -ōnis, F. giving freely, liberality; bribery

studeō, -ēre, studuī desire, be eager for

novus, -a, -um new

novae rēs a new state of affairs, a revolution

beneficium, -ī [**bene,** *well,* + **faciō**] N. well doing, kindness, benefit

ob-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus [**stringō,** *tie, bind*] bind, hold (*under obligations*)

ita-que, *conj.* and so, therefore, accordingly

obses, obsidis, M., F. hostage; pledge, security

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Dumnorix was very powerful — he was powerful because of his popularity — by bribery — Dumnorix was a friend to the Helvetians — the daughter of Orgetorix — to marry the daughter of Orgetorix — Dumnorix was desiring a revolution — Dumnorix was wishing to have as many states (tribes) as possible — to have held under obligations — bound by benefits — therefore he undertakes the matter (*rem*) — he gets permission from the Sequani — so that they permit — the Sequani permit the Helvetians to go — he causes (*perficit*) them to give (*ut dent*) hostages — not to hinder the Helvetians — to cross without injury.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Helvetians were very powerful, but (*sed*) were not friends to the Romans. 2. Dumnorix married (led in marriage) the daughter of Orgetorix. 3. The people were influenced by a desire of royal power, and were eager for a revolution. 4. The men will desire to have as many states as possible under obligations (*obstrictās*) because of their kindness. 5. They obtained permission (*impetrō*) from the people, so that they permitted them to go through the fields. 6. Dumnorix caused hostages to be given between the Sequanians and the Helvetians. 7. They gained permission from the Sequani on account of their advocate, Dumnorix.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Apud quem populum poterat Dumnorīx plūrimum? Quibus erat ipse amīcus? Cūius fīliam dūxit in mātrimōnium? Quibus rēbus studēbat? Quid volēbat? Quid impetrābat Dumnorīx ā Sēquanīs? Quid ipse perfēcit?

NOTES

1. **grātiā et largītiōne,** *because of his popularity and lavish giving:* **suō beneficiō,** *because of his favors.* The ablative (commonly without a preposition) is used to express cause. This construction is called the

Ablative of Cause (*ablātīvus causae*). App. 85; A. 245; G. 408; H. 416; P. 404. Sometimes a preposition is used as **prō glōriā**, XXVII; **quā dē causā**, XI. sometimes a preposition with the accusative as **propter angustiās**, LXV.

2. **plūrimum poterat**, *was very powerful:* cf. *plūrimum possent* XXXIX.

3. **quam**: for the use with superlatives see XXX, vocab.

4. Explain the case of **Helvētiīs** (XXXVII, 2); **cīvitāte** (LXI, 2); **cupiditāte** (XL, 1); **rēbus** (XIX, 1); **Sēquanīs** (LXI, 2); **itinere** (LVI, 1),

5. Substantive clauses of Result are used as the objects of verbs denoting the *accomplishment of an effort:* thus, **impetrat, ut . . . patiantur**, *he obtains permission, so that they allow*, etc; and **utī . . . dent perficit**, *he causes them to give* (*brings it about so that they give*) etc., where **ut . . . patiantur** and **utī . . . dent** are Substantive clauses of Result, the objects of *impetrat* and *perficit*, respectively. App. 108, *c*; A. 332; G. 553, ff.; H. 501; P. 494. cf. the pure clause of result in LI, 3, and contrast with the object clause in L, 4.

6. **obsidēs**: hostages were persons given as a pledge for the fulfilment of the conditions of a treaty, and were subject to death if the conditions were violated.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM QUINTUM

Pēnsa XXIV et XXXVI **recōgnōsce.**

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. Verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-iō** have the following forms of the fourth conjugation.

a. The third plural of the present indicative, the imperfect and future.

b. The present subjunctive.

d. The third plural of the future imperative.

d, The present participle, gerund and gerundive.

2. All other forms are of the third conjugation.

Inflection of **capiō**, *take.*

Principal Parts: Act. **capiō capere cēpī captus**

Pass. **capior capī captus sum**

Vōx Actīva		Vōx Passīva	
INDIC.	**SUBJ.**	**INDIC.**	**SUBJ.**
	Tempus praesēns		
capiō, I take.	capiam	capior	capiar
capis, you take.	capiās	caperis (re)	capiāris (re)
capit, he takes.	capiat	capitur	capiātur
capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
capitis	capiātis	capiminī	capiāminī
capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
	Tempus imperfectum		
capiēbam	caperem	capiēbar	caperer
	Tempus futūrum		
capiam capiēmus		capiar	capiēmur
capiēs capiētis		capiēris (re)	capiēminī
capiet capient		capiētur	capientur
Perf. cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
Plūsqpf. cēperam	cēpissem	captus eram	captus essem
Fut. Perf. cēperō		captus erō	

IMPERATIVUS

	Tempus praesēns		
2. cape	capite	capere	capiminī
	Tempus futurum		
2. capitō	capitōte	capitor	
2. capitō	capiuntō	capitor	capiuntur

INFINITIVUS

Pres. capere		capī	
Perf. cēpisse		captus esse	
Fut. captūrus esse		captum īrī (captus fore).	

PARTICIPIUM

Pres. capiēns		**Perf.** captus, -a, -um	
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um		**Ger.** capiendus, -a, -um	

GERUNDIUM

Gen. capiendī
Dat. capiendō
Acc. capiendum
Abl. capiendō

SUPINUM

Acc. captum
Abl. captū

3. The verb **faciō**, *make, do,* is inflected in the same way except that **e** is dropped in the present imperative (**fac**, not **face**) and there is a future perfect **faxō** and a perfect subjunctive **faxim** in addition to the regular forms.

4. The passive of **faciō** is the semi-deponent **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** *to be made* or *become; to come to pass* or *happen.* It is inflected as follows:

		INDIC.	SUBJ.
Praes.		**fīō, fīs, fit**	**fīam, fīās, fīat**
		fīmus, fītis, fīunt	**fīāmus, fīātis, fīant**
Imp.		**fīēbam, fīēbās, etc.**	**fierem, fierēs, etc.**
Fut.		**fīam, fīēs, etc.**	
Perf.		**factus sum**	**factus sim**
Plūsqupf.		**factus eram**	**factus essem**
Fut. Perf.		**factus erō**	
IMPERAT.	**Praes.**	**fī, fīte**	
	Fut.	**fītō, fītō, fītōte, fīuntō**	
INFIN.	**Praes.**	**fierī**	
	Perf.	**factum esse**	
	Fut.	**factum īrī**	
PART.	**Perf.**	**factus, -a, -um**	
	Gea.	**faciendus, -a, -um**	

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM SEXTUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat, māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

re-nūntiō, 1. [**nūntius**, *messenger*] to announce back, report

Santonēs, -um (**Santonī, -ōrum**), M. the Santones *or* Santoni, *a Gallic tribe between the Loire and the Garonne*

Tolōsātēs, -ium, M. Tolosates, *a tribe in Gallia Prōvincia*

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus understand, know

intellegēbat . . . futūrum (esse) he knew it would be

fīō, fierī, factus sum to be made *or* done, to happen

bellicōsus, -a, -um [**bellum**] full of war, warlike

patēns, patentis, *pres. part. of* **pateō** open, exposed

frūmentārius, -a, -um [**frūmentum**] pertaining to grain, fruitful

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

It is reported to Caesar — it is reported that the Helvetians intend — to march through the country of the Sequanians — who are not far distant — which tribe (and this tribe) — if this should happen — he knew it would be — with great danger (attended with great danger) — with great danger to the

province — that it should have warlike men — in places — in especially fruitful places — there were many places.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The men reported to Caesar that the people intended (*populō esse in animō*) to march without mischief. 2. If these things should happen, they thought it would be attended with (*cum*) great danger. 3. Warlike men were the enemies of the Roman people and dwelt in fruitful places. 4. Dumnorix, who was very powerful among the common people, wished to bind the Tolosates by his kindness. 5. The liberality and popularity of Dumnorix were known to Caesar. 6. The Santones, who were not far away, desired a revolution. 7. The desire for royal power is (attended) with great danger to all men.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quibus erat in animō (*Who intended*) per agrum Sēquanōrum iter facere? Ubi habitābant Santonēs? Erantne Tolosātēs in prōvinciā Rōmānā? Quid intellegēbant futūrum esse perīculōsum (*dangerous*)?

NOTES

1. **Caesarī:** Dative, indirect object of the verb *renūntiātur*. The Dative of the Indirect object (*obiectum oblīquum*) regularly corresponds to the English Objective with *to* or *for* and indicates that the object is *indirectly affected* by the action. App. 60; A. 224–226; G. 345; H. 384; P. 374. This is the common use of the Dative; cf. *Caesarī*, LVI; *lēgātīs*, LIX.

2. **renūntiātur:** here used impersonally. The subject is the following clause.

3. **Helvētiīs esse in animō:** for trans. and the constr. of **esse** see LVII, 3.

4. **Sēquanōrum:** the possessive genitive limiting *agrum*. The Possessive Genitive (*genetīvus possessiōnis*) expresses the *author* or *owner* and corresponds to the English possessive or the objective with *of*. App. 57; A. 214, *a*; G. 362; H. 396, I; P. 352 (3). This genitive is a subdivision of the Subjective genitive and is the most common of the genitive

constructions. Cf. *ipsōrum*, II; *Belgārum*, XII; *Galliae*, XV, and numerous other examples in the successive lessons.

5. **intellegōbat ... futūrum (esse)**, *he knew it would be (attended) with great danger to the province* (lit. *with the great danger of the province*). For the infin. see on XXI,1. *a.* the subject of **futūrum (esse)** is the clause *ut ... habēret*. *b.* **futūrum** has the neuter singular ending *-um* since clauses (or phrases) used substantively are regarded as of the neuter gender.

6. The adjective ending **-ārius** means *pertaining to, belonging to*, and is represented in English by the termination *-arian* or *-ary;* e. g. **agrarius**, *agrarian;* **auxiliārius**, *auxiliary*.

7. The adjective-ending **-ōsus**, denotes *fulness*, and in many cases is the equivalent of the English adjective-ending *-ose*, or *-ous;* e. g. **belli-c-ōsus**, *full of war, bellicose;* **verb-ōsus**, *full of words, verbose;* **calamit-ōsus**, *calamitous*.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM

Verte in Anglicum :

Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ūlteriōrem Gallíam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

ob, *prep. c. acc.* (in composition, *in the way of, against*) on account of, for

Titus, -ī (abbr. **T.**), M. Titus

Labiēnus, -ī, M. Labienus, *a Roman family name*

prae-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**] make *or* place over *or* before, put in command of

Ītalia, -ae, F. Italy, *sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul*

ibi, *adv.* in that place, there

cōn-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus [**scrībō**, *write*] write together, enroll, enlist

circum, *prep. c. acc.* around, about, near
Aquilēia, -ae, F. Aquileia, *a city of Cisalpine Gaul*
hiemō to winter, to pass the winter
ē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus lead out, lead forth
hībernus, -a, -um winter, pertaining to winter
hīberna, -ōrum (supply *castra*), N. winter quarters, winter camp
Alpēs, -ium, F., *pl.* the Alps
quīnque, *indecl. num.* five

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

For this reason — he placed the lieutenant over the fortification — he was hastening by forced marches — two legions were levied by Caesar — he will lead three legions from winter quarters — the nearest route is over the Alps — legions are levied there — let us hasten to go with these — Caesar had five legions.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Lieutenants were placed over these fortifications. Caesar himself will hasten into farther Gaul. 3. The three legions, which were enlisted, were led forth from winter quarters. 4. They passed the winter about Aquileia in farther Gaul. 5. It is reported that these warlike men are passing the winter in the exposed part of Gaul.

Latīnē hīs respondētō.

Quem praefēcit Caesar eī mūnītiōnī? Quō contendit Caesar? Quōmodo contendit ipse in Ītaliam? Quot legiōnēs ibī cōnscrīpsit? Quot legiōnēs ēdūxit ex hībernīs? Ubi hiemābant legiōnēs illae? Quō contendit Caesar īre deinde (*then*)? Quot cum legiōnibus? Quōs per montēs erat iter proximum?

NOTES

1. **eī mūnītiōnī praefēcit**, *he put in command of that fortification.* The Dative of the Indirect object follows verbs compounded with **ad, an-**

te, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super. Thus **mūnītiōnī** is the Dative with **praefēcit** compound with **prae** (*Dativus cum compositā* **prae.** App. 62; A. 228; G. 347; H. 386; P. 377 (1). *Cf. omnibus praestārent*, XX; *finitimis bellum inferre*, XXIII; *sibi suscēpit*, XXXIII.

2. **māgnīs itineribus,** *by forced marches.* The Ablative, with an adjective in agreement *or* a limiting genitive *or* with the preposition **cum,** is used to describe the *manner* of an action. This ablative answers the question *how* and is called the Ablative of Manner (*ablātīvus modī*). App. 88; A. 248 and Note; G. 401; H. 419, III; P. 410. Cf. *māgnō cum perīculō*, LXVI.

3. **cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus:** accompaniment is regularly denoted by the ablative with **cum.** App. 89; A. 248 *a;* G. 392; H. 419 I; P. 410 (1). This construction is called the Ablative of Accompaniment (*ablātīvus comitātūs*). Cf. *sēcum*, LXI.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM OCTAVUM

Verte in Anglicum:

Ibi Ceutrōnēs et Grāiocelī et Caturigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit: inde in Allobrogum fīnēs ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

septuāgēsimus (-gēnsimus), -a, -um seventieth

Ceutrōnēs (Cen-), -um, M. the Ceutrones *or* Centrones, *a Belgic tribe and* (2) *a tribe in Prōvincia Rōmāna*

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M. the Graioceli, *a Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps*

Caturigēs, -um, M. the Caturiges, *a Gallic tribe in Prōvincia Rōmāna*

superior, -ius [*comp. of* **superus,** *above*] upper, higher, superior; previous, former

Ocelum, -ī, N. Ocelum, *a town of the Graioceli*

citerior, -ius [**cis,** *on this side*] nearer, hither

Vocontiī, -ōrum, M. the Vocontii, *a Gallic tribe between the Isere and Durance*

inde, *adv.* from that place, from there, thence

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M. the Segusiavi, *a tribe east of the Rhone*

extrā, *prep. c. acc.* beyond, without

trāns, *prep. c. acc.* across, beyond, over

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

The higher places were seized — to stop the army from advancing (from its march) — these tribes (*populī*) were beaten — they attempt several battles — Ocelum is the farthest town of the province — of the hither province — he arrives on the seventh day — from thence into the country of the Allobroges — the army is led away from the Allobroges — the Segusiavi are without the province.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The higher places were seized by the Ceutrones, Graioceli, and Caturiges. 2. They did this in order to hinder our army from marching. 3. Caesar defeated them in many battles and marched from Ocelum to the Vocontii. 4. Ocelum is a town of the Graioceli in the hither province. 5. The army was led by Caesar among the Segusiavi who were the first across the river. 6. From thence the Vocontii are many miles distant. 7. Titus Labienus was not in winter quarters around Ocelum. 8. Caesar placed a lieutenant over the army which he levied in hither Gaul.

Give the construction of **locīs,** (XL, 3); **itinere,** (LVII, 1); **hīs,** (XL, 3); **prōvinciae,** (LXVI, 4); **Vocontiōrum**; **diē,** (XXXVII, 1).

NOTES

1. **complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs,** *when these had been beaten in many battles.* Note the *interlocked* order of words.

2. **extrēmum**: sc. **oppidum**.

3. **in fīnēs**, *into the country;* **in Segusiāvōs**, *among the Segusiavi.*

a. The *place* (person or thing) *to which* (the Limit of Motion) is denoted by the Accusative with **in** or **ad**. This construction is called the Terminal Accusative [*accūsatīvus terminālis*).] App. 76; A. 258, 2; G. 337; H. 380; P. 425. cf. **ad eōs**, VI; **ad septentriōnēs**, XIV; **in longitūdinem**, XXVII; **ad iudicium**, XLV; **in agrum**, LI.

PENSUM SEXAGESIMUM NONUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

trāns-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus lead *or* bring across *or* over

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum devastate, lay waste

dē-fendō, -ere, fendī, fēnsus defend, protect

auxilium, -ī, N. aid, help

ita, *adv.* so, thus

mereor, merērī, meritus sum merit, deserve

paene, *adv.* almost

cōnspectus, -ūs [**cōnspiciō**, perceive] sight; presence

vāstō, 1. lay waste, ravage, devastate

līberī, -ōrum, M. children

servitūs, -tūtis [**servus**, a slave] F. slavery, servitude

ab-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus lead away

ex-pūgnō, 1. storm, attack, capture

dēbeo, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus [**dē** + **habeō**] have *or* keep from, owe, ought

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

Through the narrows — the Helvetians had led their troops — they devastate the fields of the Aedui — since the Aedui could not protect themselves — to ask aid — they sent to ask aid — they said (*dīxērunt*) they had so deserved of the Roman people — had so deserved that their fields ought not to be ravaged — had so deserved that their children ought not to be led away — had so deserved that their towns ought not to be stormed.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Helvetians led their troops into the boundaries of the Aeduans and devastated their fields. 2. The Aeduans could not defend themselves and their property (*sua*) from the Helvetians. 3. The Aeduans sent men to him to ask help. 4. The Aeduans had so deserved of the Romans that their fields ought not to be laid waste. 5. The Helvetians attempted to storm the towns of the Aedui and to lead their children into slavery.

NOTES

1. **mittunt rogātum auxilium,** *send to ask aid.* The Accusative of the supine (*rogātum*) is employed with *verbs of motion* (*mittunt*) to denote *purpose.* App. 128, *b;* A. 302; G. 435; H. 546; P. 554 (2).

2. Explain the Subjunctives **possent,** (LXV, 3): **dēbuerint,** (LII, 3)- and the infinitives **meritōs esse,** (XX, 1); **vāstārī,** (XXX, 1); **abdūcī; expūgnārī.**

Indirect Discourse is formally treated in the next lesson. The Indirect Discourse of this lesson should be reviewed after the formal study.

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

1. When the thought of a writer or speaker is reported, not in the words originally used, but with those words altered to suit the construc-

tion of the reporter's sentence, the altered language is called an *indirect quotation*, and the construction is called *Indirect Discourse* (*ōrātiō oblīqua*). The indirect discourse naturally follows verbs and expressions signifying, *to say, tell, inform, think, perceive, understand, know:* i. e. verbs of *saying* or of *mental action.*

2. In Indirect Discourse a *principal* (*declarative*) clause has its subject in the *accusative* and its verb in the *infinitive.* Cf. (*dīcunt*) **sē meritōs esse,** (*they say*) *that they have deserved,* in the last lesson; also, **biennium satis esse dūxērunt,** *they considered that two years were sufficient* (XXXII); **sē parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt,** *they thought they were prepared* (XLVII); **sēsē persuāsūrōs esse exīstimābant** (LV); **negat sē posse** (LXII); etc. See XX, 1, 2. Observe that in the translation of these clauses the English idiom requires the nominative and indicative and usually the introductory conjunction *that,* although the Latin has no introductory word.

3. In Indirect Discourse all *subordinate* or *imperative,* clauses have their verbs in the *subjunctive.* e. g.

a. (*dīcunt*) **sē ita meritōs esse, ut agrī vāstārī nōn dēbuerint,** *they say that they have so deserved that their fields ought not to have been laid waste* (LXIX); **sī vim cōnentur,** (*sē*) **prohibitūrum** (*esse*) **ostendit,** *he declares that he will stop them if they attempt* (*to use*) *force.* Here **ut . . . dēbuerint** and **sī . . . cōnentur** are *subordinate* clauses in Indirect discourse and therefore have the verb in the *subjunctive.* If the subordinate verb was subjunctive in Direct Discourse it remains subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

b. (*Caesar*) **respondit, . . . ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur,** (Caesar) *answered . . . that they should return about the middle of April.* In Direct Discourse (*ōrātiō rēcta*) Caesar, in addressing the legates, naturally used the imperative, **revertiminī,** *return;* but in Indirect Discourse this imperative becomes subjunctive.

c. No examples of interrogative clauses in Indirect Discourse occur in the text of BELLUM HELVETICUM excepting rhetorical questions implying their own answer which have their verb in the infinitive: e. g. **num recentium iniūrārium memoriam dēpōnere posse,** COULD *he forget* (or *put away the recollection of*) *the recent wrongs.* Other interrogative clauses have their verbs in the Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

4. The infinitives of the principal clause represent the time, present, past, or future, as related to the time of the principal verb.

dīcit sē	**audīre** / **audīrī**	*he says that he*	*hears* / *is heard*

dīcit sē	**audīvisse** **audītum esse**	*he says that he*	*heard* or *has heard* *has been heard*
dīcit sē	**audītūrum esse** **audītum īrī** (or **fore ut audiātur**)	*he says that he*	*will hear* *will be heard*
dīxit sē	**audīre** **audīrī**	*he said that he*	*heard* or *has heard* *was heard* or *has been heard*
dīxit sē	**audīvisse** **audītum esse**	*he said that he*	*had heard* *had been heard*
dīxit sē	**audītūrum esse** **audītum īrī** (or **fore** (or **futūrum esse**) **ut audiātur**)	*he said that he*	*would hear* *would be heard*

5. The tense of the verb in the subordinate clause also depends on the verb of saying (or *mental action*) according to the law of the *Sequence of Tenses*.

In this relation, the tenses are divided into primary (or principal) and secondary (historical) as follows:

Primary	present future perfect (definite) future perfect	Secondary	imperfect perfect (historical) pluperfect

The rule for the Sequence of Tenses is:

Primary tenses (in the principal clause) are followed by primary tenses (in the subordinate clause) and secondary tenses by secondary tenses. Thus (text of LVIII) the perfect historical **respondit** is followed by secondary tenses **vellent** and **reverterentur** in the subordinate clauses.

Other illustrations of the Sequence of Tenses will be found in the following lessons.

6. Verte in Anglicum:

1. Legiōnem habeō. 2. Dīcit, "legiōnem habeō." 3. Dīcit sē legiōnem *habēre*. 4. Dīcit sē legiōnem habuisse. 5. Dīcit sē legiōnem habitūrum esse. 6. Dīcet sē legiōnem habēre (*he will say that he has*). 7. Dīcet sē legiōnem habuisse. 8.

Dīcet sē habitūrum esse. 9. Dīxērunt sē īre (*they said that they were going*). 10. Dīxērunt mīlitēs *īvisse*. 11. Dīxērunt hominēs ītūrōs esse. 12 Arbitrātur obsidēs darī. 13. Arbitrātur obsidēs datōs esse. 14. Arbitrātur obsidēs datum īrī (futūrum esse *or* fore ut obsidēs dentur).

Rem. The future passive infinitive is rarely used in Latin and the paraphrase of the future infinitive of **sum** with a result clause (as indicated in the parenthesis) may be used instead.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. He says it is very easy to get control of the government. 2. They said it was very easy to accomplish their attempts. 3. They think they will easily prohibit them. 4. They thought they would easily prohibit them. 5. They said they intended (LVII 3,) to march through their province because they had no other way. 6. We intend (*nōbis est* etc.) to march through the province because we have no other way. 7. If you wish (*sī vultis*) anything you can (*potestis*) easily return. 8. He says that if you wish anything you can easily return. 9. He said that if they wished anything they could easily return. 10. It happened that they roamed widely. 11. He said it happened that they roamed widely. 12. He thought he would take a day for deliberating. 13. He thinks a day will be taken (6, rem.) for deliberating. 14. He thought a day would be taken for deliberating.

Rem. If "he" or "they" in Ind. Disc. means the same person as the subject of the verb of saying (*or mental action*) the reflexive **sē** must be employed (XXXII, 1); if "he" or "they" in Ind. Disc. refers to a different person from the subject, the demonstrative **eum** (**eōs**) must be used.

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM PRIMUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs,

nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuīt, dum, omnibus fōrtūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

Ambarrī, -ōrum, M. the Ambarri, *dependents of the Aedui, between the Saone and Rhone*

necessārius, -a, -um necessary, needful: *as subst.*, friend, relative

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [sanguis, *blood*] of the same blood: *as subst.*, kinsman, relative

dē-populor, 1. lay waste, plunder

hostis, -is, M., F. (*public*) enemy, foe; *pl.* the enemy

fuga, -ae, F. flight

sē recipiunt they betake themselves, retreat, go

dē-mōnstrō, 1. [**mōnstrō,** show] show, point out

praeter, *prep. c. acc.* besides, except

solum, -ī, N. bottom, ground, soil

reliquus, -a, -um remaining, the rest; *neut. sing. as subst.*, remainder

ex-spectō, 1. look out for, wait, expect

statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtus set up; determine, decide

nōn exspectandum sibi statuit he decided he ought not to wait

fōrtūna, -ae, F. fortune; *pl.*, goods, property

cōn-sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [**sūmō,** take] consume, destroy

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Dīcitō haec Latīnē:

The relatives of the Aeduans — the Ambarri inform Caesar — Caesar was informed by the Ambarri — that they check the violence of the enemy — the Allobroges had property across the Rhine — they retreat — they show that there is nothing left — the fields — the soil of the field (the bare ground) — by (because of) these circumstances — I deter-

mine — Caesar determined that he ought not to wait — to destroy — after destroying the property — the property of his allies — until the Helvetians arrived — of the Santoni.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Caesar was informed by the Aedui that they could not restrain (*prohibēre*) the violence of the men. 2. When these things had been pointed out (*abl. abs.*) Caesar determined that he ought not to wait. 3. The Allobroges went to Caesar and informed him that nothing was left. 4. Since the fields were devastated and the goods of their allies destroyed, they determined to wait until their near friends (*necessārīī*) arrived. 5. At the same time the Aedui said their children ought not to be led away into slavery. 6. Thus the town was stormed almost in sight of the Romans. 7. He knew that the enemy would ravage and devastate their fields.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quī faciunt Caesarem certiōrem? Cūr nōn poterant vim hostium ab oppidīs prohibēre? Fugā ad Caesarem quī sē recēpērunt? Quid dēmōnstrant Allobrogēs Caesarī? Expectāvitne Caesar? Quid Caesar statuit? Quae est cōnstrūctiō *tempore? agrīs? oppidīs? fugā? rēbus? fōrtūnīs?* Quō in tempore est *faciunt? habēbant? recipiunt? statuit? pervenīrent?* Quae particula sermōnis est *sēsē? agrīs? facile? trāns? reliquī? solum? adductus?*

Inflect the nouns **tempore**; **vim** (LV, Intr. n.); **hostium**; **vīcōs**; **fugā**. Give the construction of **tempore**; **Aeduōrum**; **Caesarem**; **sēsē**; **agrīs**; **oppidīs**; **hostium**; **possessiōnēs**; **solum**; **Santonōs**,(LXX, 3). Explain the mode of **prohibēre**, (LXXII, 2); **esse**; **exspectandum (esse)**; **pervenīrent** (LX, 2).

NOTES

1. **sibi ... esse,** *that they have nothing* (lit., *that there is to them nothing*). The dative (here **sibi**) is employed with some form of **esse** to denote *possession*. This construction is called the Dative of Possession

(*datīvus possessiōnis*). App. 66; A. 231; H. 387. Cf. **sibi esse in animō**, *that it was their intention* or *they had the intention* (LVI); **Helvētiīs esse in animō**, *that the Helvetians had the intention* (LXVI).

2. **nihil esse reliquī**, *that nothing is left* (lit., *that there is nothing* or *no part of a remainder*). This construction, where the genitive denotes the whole, of which a part is taken, is called the Partitive Genitive (*genetīvus partītīvus*). App. 56; A. 216; G. 369; H. 397. Cf. **quārum ūnam** (II); **hōrum fortissimī** (V); **nōbilissimōs cīvitātis** (LVIII).

3. **nōn exspectandum (esse) sibi**, *that he must not wait* (lit., *that it must not be awaited by himself*). The dative (here **sibi**) is employed with the Gerundive to denote *the person on whom* the necessity rests. This construction is called the Dative of Agent (*datīvus agentis*). App. 65; A. 232; G. 355; H. 388.

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM SECUNDUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

Arar, Araris (*acc.* -im), M. the Arar, *a river of Belgic Gaul, now* the Saone

incrēdibilis, -e extraordinary, incredible

lēnitās, -tātis, F. gentleness, smoothness

oculus, -ī, M. eye

uter, utra, utrum (*gen.* **-īus**, *dat.* **-ī**) which (*of two*)

iūdicō, 1. decide, judge

āc, *conj.* (*used only before consonants. See* **atque**, V, vocab.) and also, and

linter, lintris, F., M. skiff, ferry, boat

explōrātor, -ōris, M. scout, spy

citrā, *adv.* and *prep. c. acc.* on this side of, within

vigilia, -ae, F. wakefulness, keeping watch (*by night*), a watch

castra, -ōrum, N. camp

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

***Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:**

1. The rivers flowed with remarkable smoothness. 2. The Aeduans were not able to determine by the eyes in which direction the Saone was flowing. 3. They informed Caesar that the Helvetians had crossed this river by several boats joined together. 4. At the fourth watch almost all were this side of the camp. 5. Three legions set out from the camp with Caesar and arrived at the third watch. 6. Caesar decided that he ought not to wait until the enemy destroyed the property of his allies. 7. He showed that the rest of the enemy were retreating.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quod flūmen fluit per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum? Quōmodo fluit Arar? Quōmodo trānsībant eum Helvētiī? Quī certiōrem faciunt Caesarem? Quid dīxērunt explōrātōrēs? Quae pars eōrum erat citrā flūmen? Quandō profectus est Caesar ē castrīs? Quam ad partem eōrum pervēnit? Quae est cōnstrūctiō nōminis *Arar?* (Est nōminātīvus, subiectum verbī?) Quae est cōnstrūctiō *lēnitāte?* (Est ablātīvus modī.) *lintribus?* (Est ablātīvus īnstrūmentī.) *vigiliā?*

*The dictation exercises will hereafter be omitted, as teachers and pupils have become familiar with the plan. It is hoped the practice will be continued in each lesson. Mere translation is by no means the whole work of the student. At no stage in the study of Latin should the student fall below the standard of the ability to render short passages into Latin or English when either language is pronounced. This ability is to be secured and maintained only by continued daily dictation exercises on the general plan heretofore pursued.

legiōnibus? trādūxisse? (Est perfectum īnfīnītīvī, ōrātiōne oblīquā cum *certior factus est.*) *possit?* · (Est subiunctīvus cōnsecūtiōnis.)

Give the construction of **lēnitāte** (LXVII, 2); **oculīs** (XL, 1.); **partem** (LXVIII, 3); **ratibus; partēs; Helvētiōs** (LXX, 2); **vigiliā; legiōnibus** (LXVII, 3); **castrīs.**

NOTES

1. **fluat** is in the subjunctive because in an indirect question. The direct question would be, **in utram partem fluit?** A direct question is a question directly asked; e. g., *How old is he?* An indirect question is a question so incorporated into another sentence as to have lost its directly interrogative form; e. g., I know *how old he is;* Will you tell me *how old he is?* Here the word *how* is still interrogative, though the clause which it introduces has lost the question *form.* Indirect questions require the subjunctive. App. 114; A. 334; G. 467; H. 529, I; P. 518.

2. **trēs . . . trādūxisse,** *that the Helvetians had conveyed three parts* (or *fourths*) *of their troops across this river.* Of the compound verb *trādūxisse,* the simple verb governs *partēs* while *flūmen* is the object of *trāns* in composition. A. 239 2 *b*; G. 331; H. 376.

3. **explōrātor:** nouns ending in **-tor** denote the agent or doer, and are of the masculine gender. They are formed by adding **-or** to the stem of the perfect participle with the stem vowel omitted; e. g. **āct-or** from **āctus** the perfect part. of **agō; conductor,** from **condūcō,** perf. part. **conductus.**

4. **vigiliā:** *watch.* The Romans, for military purposes, divided the night, from sunset to sunrise, into four equal watches (**vigiliae**), called **prīma nox, nox concubia** (ending at midnight), **nox media,** and **gallicinium.**

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM TERTIUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus;

nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

impediō, 4. impede, obstruct, embarrass

in-opīnāns, opīnantis, *adj.* [**opīnor,** suppose, think] not expecting, unaware

ag-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**ad**+**gradior,** walk, go] go to or against, attack

con-cīdō, -ere, -cīdī, cīsus [**cum**+**caedō,** cut] cut to pieces, kill

mandō, 1. [**manus,** hand+**dō,** give] command, entrust, give up

silva, -ae, F. forest, woods

pāgus, -ī, M. district, canton

nam, *conj.* for, now

ab-dō, -ere, didī, ditus put away, hide

quattuor, *indecl. num.* four

inter-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus make way with; slay, kill

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Many of these, disordered and unwary, were attacked and slain. 2. The Helvetians, having given themselves up to flight, arrived at the nearest woods. 3. They said that this one district was called Tigurinus. 4. In the whole Helvetian state there are four districts. 5. Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain, and his army sent under the yoke, by this canton. 6. This part of the Helvetians had gone from home in the recollection of our fathers. 7. The Saone was flowing with remarkable smoothness so that the eyes could not decide in which direction it was flowing. 8. At the second watch the scout crossed in a skiff to a place this side of the camp.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quis est aggressus eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs? Quam partem eōrum Caesar concīdit? Quid reliquī fecērunt?

Quot pāgī erant in omnī cīvitāte Helvētiā? Quem interfēcerat pāgus hīc ūnus? Quandō interfēcerat pāgus hīc L. Cassium? Quō mīssus est exercitus Rōmānus? Quae forma est *impedītōs?* (Participium perfectum.) Quae est ēius (*its*) cōnstrūctiō? (Est accūsātīvus plūrālis, congruitque [*agrees with*] *eōs.*) Quae est cōnstrūctiō nōminis *partem?* (Accūsātīvus, obiectum verbī *concīdit.*) Quae sunt partēs prīmāriae verbī *concīdit?* Quā in cōnstrūctiōne est *fugae? pāgus? memoriā?* Quō in cāsū est *eōs? sēsē? silvās? cīvitās?* Quō in modō est *exīsset? mīserat?*

Inflect together **is pāgus, omnis cīvitās, hīc pāgus.**

Give the construction of **fugae** (LXVI, 1); **silvās** (LXVIII, 3); **pāgōs; domō** (LVI, 1); **patrum** (LXVI, 4). Explain the mode of **exīsset** (XLVI, 1).

NOTES

1. **mandārunt:** uncontracted form? LI, 7.

2. **appellābātur Tigurīnus,** *was called Tigurinus. Tigurīnus* is Predicate Nominative after the copulative verb *appellābātur.* Cf. *Gallī appellantur,* III.

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM QUARTUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

The irregular verb **ferō,** (*bear, bring*), differs from regular verbs of the third conjugation (*a*) in sometimes dropping the stem vowel, e. g., **ferre** for *ferere;* **fers** for *feris,* **fer** for *fere;* and (*b*) in the use of entirely different roots in the perfect stem and in the perfect participle stem.

Principal Parts: Active: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,**
Passive; **feror, ferrī lātus sum**

Vōx Āctīva		Vōx Passīva	
INDIC.	**SUBJ.**	**INDIC.**	**SUBJ.**
	Tempus Praesēns		
ferō	**feram**	**feror**	**ferar**
fers	**ferās**	**ferris**	**ferāris (re)**
fert	**ferat**	**fertur**	**ferātur**

	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
Imperf.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
Fut.	feram		ferar	
	ferēs, etc.		ferēris (re) etc.	
Perf.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
Plūsqupf.	tuleram	tulissem	lātus eram	lātus essem
F. Exāct.	tulerō		lātus erō	

IMP. Praes.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
Fut.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INF. Praes. ferre **Perf.** tulisse **Praes.** ferrī **Perf.** lātum esse
Fut. lātūrus esse **Fut.** lātum īrī (lātum fore)

PART. Praes. ferēns **Fut.** lātūrus **Perf.** lātus **Ger.** ferendus

GER. ferendī *etc.*

SUPINUM

Acc. lātum **Abl.** lātū

In the same way inflect **īn-ferō**, observing the stems given in vocab.

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

sīve (or **seu**), *conj.* [**sī** + **-ve**, *or*] or if

sīve . . . sīve (**seu . . . seu**) whether, . . . or

cāsus, -ūs, M. [**cadō**, fall] accident, chance, misfortune

deus, -ī, M. deity, a god

immortālis, -e [**in**, *neg.* + **mors**, death] immortal

īn-signis, -e [**signō**, mark] signal, noted, remarkable

calamitās, -tātis, F. defeat, disaster

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus [ferō, bring] bring on, inflict

per-solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus [solvō, loose] loose thoroughly, pay in full, pay

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Whether by chance or by design of the gods, Caesar inflicted punishment upon the Helvetians. 2. That part which first (*prīnceps*) inflicted signal disaster upon the Roman people now (*nunc*) paid the penalty. 3. The design of these four men was hindered by the flight of the rest. 4. They thought they would attack and cut to pieces the soldiers of this canton. 4. Those who were unwary either gave themselves up to flight or were killed.

Inflect together, **deus immortālis; quae pars; cīvitās Helvētia; populus Rōmānus.**

NOTES

1. **quae....Helvētiae,** *that part of the Helvetian state which.* The antecedent (*pars*) here appears only in the relative clause with the relative (*quae*) in agreement.

2. **populō:** for the constr. see on LXVII, 1.

3. **ea...persolvit,** *that first paid the penalty.* Observe that the adjective *prīnceps* here has the force of an adverb.

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM QUINTUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L, Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium interfēcerant.

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pōntem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. · Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

sōlum, *adv.* only, merely
sed, *conj.* but
nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam both . . . and, not only . . . but also
pūblicus, -a, -um public, common
ulciscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum avenge, punish
socer, socerī, M. father-in-law
avus, -ī, M. grandfather
cōn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow up, pursue, overtake
cūrō, 1. [**cūra,** *care*] take care, provide, cause
repentīnus, -a, -um sudden, unexpected, hasty
com-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus move thoroughly, rouse, agitate
XX, (**vīgintī**), *indecl. num.* twenty
aegerrimē, *adv.* [*sup. of* **aegrē,** *with difficulty*] with the greatest difficulty
Divicō, -ōnis, M. Divico, *a Helvetian chieftain*
Cassiānus, -a, -um of Cassius, Cassian

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1 He was avenging both public and private wrongs by this punishment. 2. Lucius Piso, the lieutenant, was the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. 3. Piso the elder (*mājor*) and Cassius were slain in the same battle. 4. When this battle had been fought, he caused a bridge to be made across the Saone. 5. When the Helvetians knew that he had done in one day that which they had accomplished with the greatest difficulty in twenty days, they sent ambassadors.

6. In this embassy was Divico, who had fought with Cassius. 7. I do not know whether it was by chance or by the design of the immortal gods. 8. This remarkable disaster will bring punishment upon the enemy.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quās iniūriās ultus est Caesar? Nōnne Caesar pūblicās iniūriās ultus est? (Ita; ipse nōn modo pūblicās vērum etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est.) Quis erat socer Caesaris? Quae erat Caesaris uxor (*wife*)? (Calpurnia, Pīsōnis fīlia, erat uxor Caesaris.) Quōs interfēcērunt Tigurīnī? Quandō interfēcērunt Tigurīnī L. Pīsōnem? Quārē (*why*) cūrāvit Caesar in Arare pōntem faciendum? Quid trādūxit? Cūr sunt Helvētiī commōtī? Quōs mittunt ad eum? Quis fuit lēgātiōnis prīnceps? Quō in bellō fuerat dux Divicō? Quā in cōnstrūctiōne est *deōrum*? (Est Genetīvus possessiōnis). *iniūriās*? (Accūsātīvus, obiectum verbī *ultus est.*) *socerī*? *proeliō*?

Explain the mode of **posset** (XLVIII, 6); **fēcisse**; **intellegerent** (XLVI, 1).

NOTES

1. An English order from **quod** would be, *quod Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium* (*interfēcerant*), *interfēcerant Lūcium Pīsōnem lēgātum, avum Lūcii Pīsōnis ēius* (*Caesaris*) *socerī.*

2. **pōntem faciendum cūrat,** *causes a bridge to be made.* The Gerundive (*faciendum*) is here employed to denote *purpose.*

3. **cum ... intellegerent:** English order, *cum intellegerent illum fēcisse ūnō diē id quod* etc. **ut ... trānsīrent,** is in apposition with **id.** Cf. **ut ... cremārētur,** XLIV, 5.

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM SEXTUM

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Hel-

vētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus set in motion, drive, act, speak
sīn, *conj.* [**sī** + **ne**] if however, but if
per-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow up, continue
persevērō, 1. persist, persevere
reminīscor, reminīscī, (*defective*) remember, recollect
vetus, veteris, *adj.* former, old
incommodum, -ī, N. inconvenience, misfortune
prīstinus, -a, -um former, primitive, original
improvīsō, *adv.* unexpectedly
ad-orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise against, attack
māgnopere, *adv.* greatly, especially
tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtus assign, allot, ascribe
dē-spiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus, [**speciō,** look] look down upon scorn, despise

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Divico said that if the Roman people would make peace with the Helvetians, they would go and remain where Caesar had desired them to be. 2. They remember the primitive valor of the Helvetians. 3. Divico said, as to the fact that (*quod*) Caesar had attacked one part, let him not ascribe (it) especially to his own valor. 4. Divico says, as to the fact that they cannot bring help to their (soldiers), let him not despise them. 5. His unexpected arrival caused a battle to be fought. 6. We write with the greatest difficulty.

Rem. The student may reproduce the direct discourse (*ōrātiō rēcta*) by putting himself in the place of the speaker and using the persons and modes naturally employed. Thus the speaker uses the first person (of himself and others associated with himself); the second person of those he addresses; the indicative in declarative clauses, and so on.

In this way the direct discourse is reproduced from the text above as follows:

Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs *faciet,* in eam partem *ībunt* atque ibi *erunt* Helvētiī, ubi eōs *tū cōnstitueris,* atque esse *volueris:* sīn bellō persequī *persevērābis, reminīscere* et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus *es,* cum iī, quī flūmen *trānsierant,* suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut *tuae* māgnō opere virtūtī *tribueris* aut *nōs dēspēxeris.*

NOTES

1. Explain the subjunctives **faceret** (LXX, 3, *a*); **cōnstituissent; voluisset; persevērāret; reminīscerētur** (LXX, 3 *b*); **adortus esset; trānsīssent; possent.**

2. **nē tribueret . . . aut dēspiceret,** *let him not ascribe . . . or despise* for **nē tribueris . . . aut dēspēxeris** (*do not ascribe or despise*) of direct discourse. Prohibitions are often expressed by **nē** with the perfect subjunctive. App. 103, *a*; A. 266; G.263, (*b*); H.484, IV.

3. **reminīscerētur, et veteris incommodī et prīstinae virtūtis,** *let him remember both the ancient disaster and the primitive valor.* Verbs of *remembering* (and forgetting) govern the Objective genitive. App. 59; A. 219; G. 376; H. 406, II; P. 365.

4. **quod,** *that, as to the fact that, as to* (*the statement that*), *whereas,* is the *colloquial quod,* used in referring to a statement made by another. A. 333 *a;* G. 525, 2, 3; P. 540 (4).

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM SEPTIMUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre:

Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret: Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contenderent aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi cōnstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

māior, māius [*comp. of* **māgnus**, great] greater; older: *pl. as subst. with or without* **nātū**, ancestors

discō, -ere, didicī, discitūrus learn

quam, *adv.* than (*with comp.*)

magis . . . quam more . . . than, rather . . . than

dolus, -ī, M. treachery, deceit

īnsidiae, -ārum, F. ambush, ambuscade

nītor, nītī, nīsus (**nīxus**) **sum** strive; rely upon

quārē, *adv.* [abl. of **quī** and **rēs**] from which thing, wherefore

com-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō**, send] send together commit, entrust, permit

cōn-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus [**cum** + **sistō**, stand] stand together, take a stand, stop; depend on, consist in

inter-neciō (**niciō**) **-ōnis,** F. [**nex**, slaughter] slaughter, extermination

nōmen, nōminis, N. name; account

prō-dō, -ere, didī, ditus [**dō**, give] give forth, transmit, hand down

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

Compare with same exercise on p. 175.

1. But if he persists in continuing (to continue) the war, let him remember the former misfortunes. 2. The primitive valor of the Helvetians is especially ascribed to their ancient customs. 3. We scorn to attack men by ambuscades. 4. Divico said: We (*nōs*) have learned to contend by valor rather than by treachery. 5. Divico said: Do not permit that the place where we stand take its name from the slaughter of the Roman army. 7. The Helvetians had learned from their fathers and forefathers to contend by bravery and not by ambuscades.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quōmodo erat Caesar ūnum pāgum adortus? Poterantne Helvētiī suīs auxilium ferre? (Minimē [*by no means*], Helvētiī suīs auxilium ferre nōn poterant.) Quae ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicerant? Quae essent (*would be*) Divicōnis verba in ōrātiōne rēctā? (Verba Divicōnis essent: "Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum iī quī flūmen trānsierant, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut tuae māgnoperē virtūtī tribueris, aut nōs dēspēxeris; nōs ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostrīs didicimus, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contendāmus aut īnsidiīs nītāmur. Quārē nē commīseris, ut is locus ubi cōnstiterimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat, aut memoriam prōdat.")

NOTES

Compare the direct discourse given in the answer to the last question with the indirect discourse in the text of the lesson. Note each word in which a change is made and explain the change according to the principles stated in LXX and in the Rem. and notes of the last lesson.

1. **īnsidiīs nīterentur**, *trust in strategems* or *rely upon ambuscades*. The ablative is used with **nītor** (and **innītor**). This is explained as an ablative of means, G. 401, N. 6; P. 420 or as (a figurative) ablative of place, H. 425 II; A. 254 *b*.

2. **patribus; calamitāte**: LX, 2.

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM OCTAVUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

The tenses formed from the present stem (**es-**) of the verb **sum** (**esse**) are given in the intr. notes of XXXIV and XLI.

The tenses formed from the perfect stem **fu-** are as follows:

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INFIN.
	Tempus Perfectum		
Sing.	**fuī**, I was (have been) etc.	**fuerim**, etc.	**fuisse**, to have been.
	Plūsquamperfectum		
Sing.	**fueram**, I had been, etc.	**fuissem**, etc.	
	Fūturum Exāctum		
Sing.	**fuerō**, I shall have been etc.		

Verte in Anglicum:

Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre;

INDEX VOCABULORUM

dubitātiō, -ōnis, F. doubt, hesitation

commemorō, 1. bring to mind, commemorate, mention

graviter, *adv.* (*comp.* **gravius**) severely), with annoyance

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear, bring, endure

meritum, -ī, N., (*in abl. as adv.* deservedly, desert, merit

ac-cidō, -ere, cidī [**ad** + **cadō**, fall] fall to, befall, happen

aliquis (aliquī), aliqua, aliquid (aliquod), *indef. pron.* [**alius** + **quis**] some, any

cōnscius, -a, -um [**cum** + **sciō**, know] conscious, aware of

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus be on one's guard, take care, beware

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Sequentīa litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. They will learn to rely upon deceit. 2. Wherefore, I permit all to endure this punishment. 3. Caesar replied to Divico: "I hesitate the less because I hold in memory those things which you have called to mind." 4. Caesar endured it with the more annoyance the less deservedly it had happened to the Roman people. 5. If the Roman people had been conscious (to itself) of any wrong it would not have been difficult to take precautions.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Cuī respondit Caesar? Cūr sibi minus dubitātiōnis dabātur? Quās rēs tenēbat Caesar memoriā? Cūr ferēbat eās rēs gravius? Num populus Rōmānus alicūius iniūriae erat sibi cōnscius? Quārē est populus Rōmānus dēceptus? Quae essent verba Caesaris orātiōne in rēctā? (Verba Caesaris ōrātiōne in rēctā haec essent: "Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs, quās vōs lēgātī Helvētiōrum commemorāvistis memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidērunt: quī, sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre.)

Following the Rem. in LXXVI and the principles stated in LXX, reconstruct the direct discourse from the text of the lesson and compare results with the answer to the last question.

Explain the mode of **darī**, LXX, 2; **commemorāssent**, LXX, 3 *a*; **tenēret**; **ferre**; **accidissent**; **fuisse**.

NOTES

1. **minus dubitātiōnis**, *the less hesitation.* For the Gen. see on LXXI, 2.

2. **commemorāssent**: uncontracted form? L, 7.

3. **eō gravius, quō minus ... accidissent**; *he was the more annoyed, the less deservedly they had befallen the Roman people.* **eō ... quō**, *the ... the.* The ablative is employed with comparatives (here *gravius* and *minus*) or with words involving a comparison to denote the *degree* or *measure of difference.* This construction is called the Ablative of the Degree of Difference (*ablātīvus mēnsūrae*). App. 92; A. 250; G. 403; H. 423; P. 415. Cf. **eō minus** in first line of text and **quō facilius**, LXII,

4. **quī sī**, *and if it* (the Roman people). The relative (*quī*) when used to connect independent statements is best translated by a conjunction and a demonstrative or personal pronoun.

5. **alicūius . . . fuisset**, *had been conscious to itself of any wrong.* *a.* **alicūius**: the indefinite pronoun **aliquis** is inflected like **quis**, XLIX. Intr. n. 2. *b.* **cōnscius**: governs **iniūriae**, XXV, 2; and **sibi**, XXXVII, 2. *c.* **fuisset**: the Subjunctive in a conditional clause, *contrary to fact.*

PENSUM SEPTUAGESIMUM NONUM

Verte in Anglicum ūnā cum textū superiōre

Sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commīssum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vēxāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse?

INDEX VOCABULORUM

dē-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take] take from, deceive, cheat
timeō, -ēre, timuī dread, fear
contumēlia, -ae, f. insult, indignity
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum forget
num, *adv. interrogative particle, in direct questions, implying a negative answer*
recēns, recentis, *adj.* late, recent
temptō (**tentō**), 1. try, attempt assail
vēxō, 1. harass, trouble, vex
dē-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place] place aside, put away

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Roman people were deceived in this, because they did not know that anything (*aliquid*) had been done (*commīssum*) by them wherefore they should fear. 2. They did not think they ought to fear (it must be feared by them) without a cause. 3. Caesar did not wish to forget the recent wrongs. 4. Could Caesar forget the former insult? 5. The Helvetians attempted a march through the province against his will. 6. Caesar was not able to forget the wrongs of the Aeduans and Ambarri. 7. Caesar endured these insults with annoyance because he was not conscious of any wrong. 8 We should mention the merits of the Helvetians. 9. Beware lest something (*aliquid*) befall you (*tibi*). 10. Forget all doubts.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Num Caesar veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī volēbat? (Nōn putō eum id voluisse.) Num Caesar recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere poterat? (Minimē, Caesar . . . nōn poterat.) Quōmodo Helvētiī iter per prōvinciam temptāverant? Quōs populōs vēxāverant Helvētiī? Quae essent Caesaris verba ōrātiōne in rēctā? (Caesaris verba ōrātiōne in rēctā essent; Sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commīssum ā sē intellegēbat, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī volō, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod mē invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vēxāvistis, memoriam dēpōnere possum?)

The answer to the last question represents the direct discourse as reconstructed from the text of the lesson. Note and justify each change according to the principles stated in LXX.

NOTES

1. **eō dēceptum (esse)**, *they had been deceived by this.*
2. **(aliquid) commīssum (esse)**, *that anything had been done.*
3. **ā sē**, *by themselves*, XXXV, 1. **timēret:** LXXII, 1.

4. **timendum**: sc. **esse**. What constr. is thus formed? LX, 5. The construction is impersonal, *it was to be feared*, but it is generally better to render the impersonal Latin verb by the personal construction: *nor did they (populus Rōmānus) think they ought to fear without reason.*

5. **contumēliae**: LXXVI, 3.

6. **vellet**: for inflection see next lesson.

7. **num etiam recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere posse**, *could he also put aside the recollection of the recent wrongs?* **num posse**, *could he?* For infin. see on LXX, 3 *d*.

8. **tentāssent**: cf. *commemorāssent* in last lesson.

9. **eō invītō**, *against his will.* Constr.? LXII, 2.

PENSUM OCTOGESIMUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTE:

The verbs **volō**, *be willing, wish* and **nōlō** (**nōn** + **volō**), *be unwilling, not wish*, present some irregularities (due mainly to contraction) and are inflected as follows: Principal parts, **volō, velle, voluī**
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī

Tempus Praesēns

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
volō	velim	nōlō	nōlim
vīs	velīs	nōnvīs	nōlīs
vult (volt)	velit	nōnvult	nōlit
volumus	velīmus	nōlumus	nōlīmus
vultis (voltis)	velītis	nōnvultis	nōlītis
volunt	velint	nōlunt	nōlint

Tempus Imperfectum

volēbam	vellem	nōlēbam	nōllem

Tempus Futūrum

volam		nōlam	
volēs, etc.		nōlēs, etc.	

Tempus Perfectum

voluī	voluerim	nōluī	nōluerim

Tempus Plūsquamperfectum

volueram	**voluissem**	**nōlueram**	**nōluissem**

Tempus Futūrum Exāctum

voluerō	**nōluerō**

IMPERATIVUS

Praes. **nōlī, nōlīte,** do not

Fut. **nōlītō, nōlītōte,** thou shalt not, ye shall not
nōlītō, he shall not

INFINITIVUS

velle	**voluisse**	**nōlle**	**nōluisse**

PARTICIPIA

volēns, willing **nōlēns,** unwilling

Verte in Anglicum:

Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre

INDEX VOCABULORUM

octōgēsimus (-gēnsimus), -a, -um eightieth
victōria, -ae, F. victory
tam, *adv.* so, so very
īnsolenter, *adv.* [**īn-solēns,** unwonted] strangely, insultingly
glōrior, 1. glory in, boast of
diū, *adv.* long, for a long time
impūne, *adv.* [**in,** *neg.* + **poena**] without punishment, with impunity
ad-mīror, 1. [**mīror,** wonder] wonder at, be surprised, wonder

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Helvetians boasted insolenlty of their victory and wondered that they had inflicted the wrongs with impunity for so long a time. 2. Caesar said the fact that (*quod*) they boasted so insolently was an injury to the Roman people. 3. I wonder that Caesar can put away the recollection of the re-

cent insult. 4. They tried to harass the Allobroges. 5. The Roman people were unwilling to be deceived. 6. I wish all would fear to inflict injury.

Reconstructing the direct discourse from the text we have:

Quod vestrā vīctōriā tam īnsolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrāminī, eōdem pertinet.

Explain the change in each instance.

NOTES

1. **vīctōriā**: LXVI, 1.
2. **eōdem pertinēre**, *tended to the same result.*

PENSUM OCTOGESIMUM PRIMUM

Verte haec in Anglicum:

Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

cōn-suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus become accustomed, be accustomed, be wont

enim, *conj.* for (*explanatory and confirmatory*)

com-mūtātiō, -ōnis, F. [mūtō, change] a changing, a change

doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitūrus grieve, suffer

scelus, sceleris, N. crime, wickedness

secundus, -a, -um [sequor, follow] following, second, prosperous

inter-dum, *adv.* meanwhile, sometimes

diūturnus, -a, -um [diū] long, prolonged

impūnitās, -tātis [in + poena] F. freedom from punishment, impunity

malus, -a, -um bad, wicked

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō.

1. Caesar said that the gods sometimes grant prosperity to the wicked. 2. They do this in order that men may live more bitterly because of (*ex*) a change in their condition (*rērum*). 3. The gods wish to take vengeance on men for their crimes. 4. The men, whom the gods wish to punish, are often granted quite long freedom from punishment. 5. Caesar grieved because they boasted of their victories. 6. They have not inflicted injuries for a long time.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Dīī immortālēs quid cōnsuēvērunt facere? Quārē concēdunt Dīī hominibus rēs interdum secundiōrēs? Quibus concēdunt impūnitātem diūturniōrem? Quae verba dīxisset Caesar ōrātiōne in rēctā? (Caesar dīxisset: "Cōnsuēvērunt enim Dīī immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī volunt, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere".)

Inflect together **Deōs immortālēs, secundiōrēs rēs, diūturniōrem impūnitātem.**

Explain the mode of **cōnsuēsse** (LXX, 2); **doleant** (LXII, 1); **velint** (LXX, 3 *a*); **concēdere** (XXX, 1).

Review the text of the lessons from LXXLII, translating in both direct and indirect discourse.

NOTES

1. **cōnsuēsse:** contracted from **cōnsuēvisse.** The perfect tense of this verb has a present signification. Thus, **cōnsuēsse,** *to be accustomed* and (**Caesar dixīt**) **cōnsuēsse** *etc., Caesar said that the immortal gods are* (not *had been*) *accustomed.*

2. **secundiōrēs rēs,** *a considerable degree of prosperity.* **diūturniōrem** *quite long.* Observe that the comparative may be rendered by *too, quite, rather, considerable,* or any term expressing a comparison.

PENSUM OCTOGESIMUM SECUNDUM

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. Review XVIII, Intr. n. 1, 2; XXXII, Intr. n. 1.

2. The personal pronouns, **egō** of the first person and **tū** of the second person, are inflected as follows:

	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**egō**, I	**nōs**, we	Nom.	**tū**, thou (you)	**vōs**, ye (you)
Gen.	**meī**, of me	**nostrūm (-trī)** of us	Gen.	**tuī**	**vestrūm(-trī)**
Dat.	**mihi**, to me	**nōbīs**, to us	Dat.	**tibi**	**vōbīs**
Acc.	**mē**, me	**nōs**, us	Acc.	**tē**	**vōs**
Voc.	——	——	Voc.	**tū**	**vōs**
Abl.	**mē**, by me	**nōbīs**, by us	Abl.	**tē**	**vōbīs**

Verte in Anglicum:

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Divicō respondit; Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint: ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

INDEX VOCABULORUM

polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum promise

satis-faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus make *or* do enough for, satisfy; apologize

īn-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [**statuō**, set up] set in order; establish; arrange, train, instruct

testis, -is, M., F., a witness

respōnsum, -ī, N. [**respondeō**] reply, answer

dis-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cēdō**, go] go apart, depart, withdraw

Indicā vocābula ex hīsce dēprōmpta:

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō.

1. Caesar said that the immortal gods are wont sometimes to grant prosperity and quite long freedom from punishment. 2. Although these things are so, yet if hostages are given to me by you, that I may know that you will do those things which you promise, I will make peace. 3. Divico replied that his people were so trained by their ancestors that they were accustomed to receive hostages. 4. When this reply had been given, Divico departed from the place.

Latīnē hīs respondētō.

Praetereā Caesar Divicōnī quid dīxit? Haec dīxit Caesar: (Cum haec ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, utī ea quae pollicēminī vōs factūrōs intellegam, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulistis, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbīscum pācem faciam.) Quae respondit? (Divicō respondit: "Ita Helvētiī a māiōribus suīs īnstitūtī sunt, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuēverint; ēius reī populus Rōmānus est testis.") Deinde (*then*) quid fēcit Divicō?

The answers to the first and second questions show what were probably the exact words of the speakers. Contrast with the *ōrātiō oblīqua* of the text and explain the changes according to the principles stated in LXX and illustrated in the preceding lessons.

Explain the case of **iīs**, XXXV, 1; **ipsīs, sociīs**, LXVII, 1; **iīs**, LXVII, 3; **reī, respōnsō**, XL, 3.

NOTES

1. **cum ... sint,** *although these things are so.* **cum** *concessive* (*though, although*) is followed by the Subjunctive. App. 112, *b*; A. 326; G. 587; H. 515 III; P. 570 (2). What is the construction with *cum temporal*? with *cum causal*?

2. **sī Aeduīs ... item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant,** *if they would make amends to the Aeduans ... and likewise if to the Allobroges.* Verbs modified by or compounded with *satis* (also *bene* and *male*) govern the dative of the indirect object. Thus *Aeduīs* and *Allobrogibus* are governed by *satisfaciant*. App. 62, Rem.; A. 227 *e* 2; H. 384, II 4 N. 1.

3. **cōnsuērint:** LII, 3.

From this point the text will be given connectedly with vocabulary and notes instead of being divided into *pensa* as heretofore. The exercises for writing are placed at the end of each chapter and may be divided in the assignment of lessons at the discretion of the teacher.

Caesar follows the Helvetians and is defeated in a cavalry skirmish.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum āgmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnunquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacēssere

1. posterus, -a, -um [**post**, after] after, following, next
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus move, remove
2. equitātus, -ūs, M. [**equitō**, ride] cavalry; horsemen
4. prae-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus send before *or* in advance
5. cupidē [**cupidus**, desirous] eagerly
6. āgmen, -inis [**agō**, set in motion], N. a marching column; army
īn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [**sequor**, follow] follow up, pursue; harass
aliēnus, -a, -um [**alius**, other] another's; alien; unfavorable
7. paucus, -a, -um (*usually in pl.*] little; few
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus fall, be slain
8. quīngentī, -ae, -a, five hundred
eques, -itis, M., a horseman, a rider. — *Plur.* cavalry. *Then* (*as orig. serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*). *Also*, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*)
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great, such
9. prō-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus [**pellō**, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout
audācter [**audāx**, bold], boldly, daringly
sub-sistō, -ere, stitī [**sistō**, stand], stand still, withstand, resist
10. lacēssō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus [**laciō**, entice,], arouse, irritate, attack

---

3, 4. quem . . . coāctum habēbat: *which . . . he had* (having been) *collected*. It will be observed that the perfect participle with *habēre* has about the same force as a perfect tense in the active voice. A. 292 *c*; G. 238; H. 388 I, N.; P. 547 *c*.

5. quī videant, *to see*. Constr.? LVII, 2. **quās in partēs,** *in what direction*. **faciant:** LXXII, 1.

6. novissimum āgmen, *the rear*.

8. sublātī, *elated*. Give the principal parts of **tollō**.

10. Derivative verbs like **lacēssō** ending in **-ēssō**, are called *intensives* (**intēnsīva**), and denote energy or eagerness of action.

coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat āc satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

11. (coepiō) **coepī, coepisse,** *defect.* began, commenced, undertook
12. praesentia, -ae, F., presence, the present moment: **in praesentiā,** for the moment, at the moment
rapīna, -ae [**rapiō,** pillage], F., pillaging, robbery, plunder
pābulātiō, -ōnis [**pābulum,** fodder], F., getting fodder, foraging
populātiō, -ōnis [**populor,** ravage], F., ravaging, pillaging
13. circiter, *adv. and prep. c. acc.* about, near
quīndecim [**quīnque,** five + **decem**], *indecl. num.*, fifteen
15. amplē [**amplus,** large], largely, widely, *comp.* **amplius,** more, longer
quīnī, -ae, -a [**quīnque**], *distrib. num. adj.*, five each, five at a time
sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**sex,** six], six each
inter-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be *or* lie between, intervene

---

11, 13. Verbs like **coepī,** wanting in one or more of the stems, are called defective (**verba dēfectīva**). **satis (esse) habēbat . . . prohibēre:** *he held that to prohibit was enough;* **prohibēre** is the subject of **esse** understood. The infinitive as a substantive may be used as the subject or object of another verb. A. 270, 1; G. 421; H. 538; P. 531.

15. amplius . . . mīlibus passuum, *more than five or six miles.* After the comparative **amplius, quam** (*than*) is omitted, though supplied in translating. When **quam** is thus omitted after a comparative, the following noun is in the ablative. A. 247; G. 398; H. 417; P. 416. Numeral adjectives like **quīnī** and **sēnī** are called *distributives.* Here they are used to indicate that the two armies were this distance apart each day. **interesset;** LII, 3.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. On the next day the Helvetians moved their camp three miles. 2. All the cavalry were sent in advance by Caesar to see where the enemy would march. 3. Caesar's horsemen followed the rear of the Helvetians too eagerly, and engaged in battle in an unfavorable place. 4. He said that a few of his (men) fell. 5. We promise to instruct the witnesses. 6. They satisfied the enemy by this reply and departed from the place. 7. The Helvetians were elated by this battle, because

five hundred of their horsemen put to flight so great a multitude of Roman soldiers. 8. After these things they resisted boldly, and attacked our men on the rear. 9. Caesar's men were restrained from battle by him. 10. He deems it (*habet*) sufficient for the present to keep the soldiers of the enemy from plunder and foraging. 11. On the next day the cavalry of the enemy was sent in advance. 12. A few who followed too eagerly, fell among the enemy. 13. The place was unfavorable for the army. 14. They marched so that the two armies were not more than five or six miles apart. 15. The rear of the enemy and our van-guard marched thus about fifteen days.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quandō mōvērunt castra? Quis fēcit idem? Quot mīlitēs praemīsit Caesar? Equitātum unde (*whence*) coāctum habēbat Caesar? Cūr praemīsit Caesar equitātum? Ubi commīsit proelium equitātus Caesaris? Quot cecidērunt? Quā in cōnstrūctiōne est *diē?* (Est ablātīvus temporis.) *locō?* (Est ablātīvus sēparātiōnis.) *idem?* (Obiectum verbī *facit.*) Quō in gradū comparātiōnis est *cupidius?* (Est in gradū comparātīvō.) Quae forma est *īnsecūtī?* (Participium perfectum.) Quō in tempore est *movent?* (Est in tempore praesentī.) *habēbat? cadunt?* Quō in modō est *facit?* (Est in modō indicātīvō.) *videant? faciant? subsistere?* Cūius generis est *hostis? eques? āgmen?* Quī sublātī sunt? Cūr sublātī sunt? Quōmodo coepērunt Helvētiī subsistere? Quōs coepērunt lacēssere? Ā quā rē continēbat Caesar suōs? Volēbatne Caesar proelium committere? Quot diēs iter fēcērunt? Quot mīlia passuum intererant inter novissimum āgmen hostium et nostrum prīmum?

[1]The term **vōx** is employed as a convenient equivalent for the word *voice.* The word is not so used in classical Latin. Quintilian used **faciendī mōdus** for *active,* and **patiendī modus** for *passive voice.*

The Aeduans fail to furnish Caesar promised supplies.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvēxerat, propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī: cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī

1. interim, *adv.* meanwhile, in the meantime
cotīdiē [**quot**, how many, every, + **diēs**], daily, every day
2. pūblicē [**pūblicus**, public], on behalf of the state, publicly
flāgitō, 1. demand, importune, press
3. frīgus, -oris, N., cold weather, cold
4. pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, place, put, pitch (**castra**): *pass.*, be situated
modo, *adv.* [**modus**, measure], **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature
5. pābulum, -ī N., food, fodder, sustenance
quidem, *adv.*, (*emphasizing the expression before it*) indeed, at least, truly: **nē . . . quidem**, not even.
6. sub-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus [**vehō**, carry], bring up
7. ā-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus [**vertō**, turn], turn away
8. nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [**nē** + **volō**, wish], *a.*, *n.*, not wish, be unwilling. (for inflection see LXXX, Intr. n.)
9. cōn-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bring together, collect
com-portō, 1. carry together, collect
ad-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be near *or* at hand; assist

---

2. **flāgitāre** = **flāgitābat** (**flāgitāvit**). In animated description the present infinitive may be used for the imperfect or perfect indicative and has its subject in the Nominative. This is called the Historical Infinitive (*Īnfīnītīvus Historicus*). A. 275; G. 647; H. 536, 1; P. 530 *a*.

3. **ut**: what part of speech? how translated? XLVI, 3.

4. **frūmenta**: *standing grain*, **frūmentum**, *grain* (*harvested*) and because in bulk, singular.

6. **frūmentō**: LI, 5. **flūmine**, *by way of the river*. The Ablative, without a preposition, is used to denote *the way by which*. A. 258, *g*; G. 389; H. 420 1,3; P. 407, *c*.

8. **diem . . . Aeduī**, *the Aedui kept putting him off from day to day*. **dūcere, dīcere**: for form and rendering see on **flāgitāre** l. 2.

9. **cōnferrī . . . dīcere**: *they* (*Aedui*) *kept saying it* (**frūmentum**) *was being collected, it was being brought on the way, it was at hand*. **cōnferrī**: for the inflection of **ferō**, see LXXIV, 1, 2. **diūtius** (**diū**): *too long*.

intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mē- 10
tīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māg-
nam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciacō et Liscō, quī
summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant
Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet
potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque
ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propīnquīs 15
hostibus ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex
parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō et-
iam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

10. īn-stō, stāre, stitī, stātus stand upon; be near at hand
mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, measure
11. con-vocō, 1. call together, summon
12. Liscus, -ī, M., *a chief magistrate of the Aedui*
13. summus, -a, -um [*sup. of* **superus**] highest
prae-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus be over *or* in command
vergobretus, -ī, M., vergobret, *the title of the Aeduan chief magistrate*
14. creō, 1. create, produce; elect, appoint
annuus, -a, -um [**annus,** year], year by year, yearly, annual. 1
vīta, -ae, F., life
nex, necis [**necō,** slay], F., violent death, death
15. potestās, -tātis [**possum,** be able], F., power; dominion; authority
accūsō, 1. [**ad**+**causa**] blame, censure, accuse
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy, purchase
16. propīnquus, -a, -um [**prope,** near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *in pl. as subst.* relatives
17. sub-levō, 1. sustain, assist
praesertim particularly, especially
18. prex, precis, (*in sing. only in abl.*) [**precor,** pray], F., prayer, entreaty
19. dē-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [**statuō,** set up], set *or* place aside, forsake, desert
queror, -ī, questus sum, complain, bewail, lament

---

11. oportēret: why subj.? **convocātīs . . . prīncipibus:** constr.?

13. magistrātuī: constr.? LXVII, 1

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Caesar will demand of the Aeduans the grain which they promised. 2. The enemy, who resisted so boldly, were put to flight. 3. For the present they will subsist (*vivent*) by plunder, pillaging, and foraging. 4. The Aeduans pub-

licly promised to bring grain to Caesar. 5. As was said before, in the first chapter, Gaul slopes toward the north. 6. Caesar thought that not even a sufficiently great supply of fodder was at hand. 7. The grain in that place was not ripe, because of the cold. 8. Caesar turned away from the Saone because he wished to follow up the Helvetians. 9. For this reason he was not able to use the grain. 10. Caesar's ships were bringing the grain on the river Saone. 11. Caesar was put off from day to day by the Aeduans. 12. The Aeduans said that the grain was being collected and was being carried to Caesar. 13. The Aeduans put off Caesar too long. 14. It was necessary for Caesar to measure out grain to his men. 15 Liscus, who was over the highest office, was called vergobret by the Aeduans. 16. The vergobrets were appointed annually and had the power of life and death over their people (*in suōs*). 17. Diviciacus and Liscus were among the chief men whom Caesar called together. 18. The Aeduan chieftains were severely censured by Caesar because they did not assist him with grain. 19. Since he could neither buy grain nor take it from the fields, it was necessary that he be aided by them. 18. Caesar thought he ought to be aided in so critical a time, with the enemy so near. 20. Caesar said that he had undertaken the war influenced in a great measure (*māgnā ex parte*) by their entreaties. 21. Caesar was complaining the more bitterly because he had been abandoned. 22. The vergobret, who holds (is over) the highest office, will measure the grain.

Latīnē hīs respondētō:

Quotiēs (*how often*) flāgitāvit Caesar frūmentum? Quōmodo erant Aeduī frūmentum pollicitī? Quā in cōnstrūctiōne est *proeliō? rapīnīs? diēs?* (Est accūsātīvus temporālis.) Cūr frūmentum mātūrum nōn erat? Ubi est Gallia posita? Num pābulī satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat? (Minimē, satis māgna cōpia nōn suppetēbat.) Quō in flūmine subvehēbat

Caesar frūmentum? Num Caesar eō frūmentō ūtī poterat? Cūr Caesar eō frūmentō ūtī nōn poterat? Quō Helvētiī sē āverterant? Volēbatne Caesar ab iīs discēdere? Quā in cōnstrūctiōne est *pollicitī essent?* (Est subiūnctīvus in ōrātiōne oblīquā.) Quid sīgnificat *ut* indicātīvō iūnctum? Quid sīgnificat *ut* subiūnctīvō iūnctum? Quā in cōnstrūctiōne est *Aeduōs? frīgora?* (Est in accūsātīvō cum prepositiōne *propter.*) *agrīs?* (Abl. locī.) *frūmentō? Arare? nāvibus? diem?* Quae dīxērunt Aeduī? Quī diēs īnstābat? Quōs convocāvit Caesar? Quot prīncipēs habēbat in castrīs? Quī erant in hīs? Quis praeerat summō magistrātuī? Quantam (*how great*) potestātem habēbat vergobretus? Quae fōrma est *cōnferrī?* (Est īnfīnītīvus praesēns, passīvā vōce.) Cūr est in īnfīnītīvō? (Est in īnfīnītīvō quoniam [*because*] ōrātiō est oblīqua.) Quae fōrma est *comportārī? dūcī? īnstāre? mētīrī?* Quā in cōnstrūctiōne est *diē? prīncipibus? magistrātuī?* (Est datīvus cum compositā *prae.*) Quae est verbī *oportēret* cōnstrūctiō? Quod genus verbī (*what kind of a verb*) est *oportēret?* (Verbum impersōnāle.) Quōs accūsāvit Caesar? Quōmodo eōs accūsāvit? Cūr accūsāvit eōs? Num Caesar frūmentum emere poterat? Eratne tempus necessārium? Quī nōn sublevābant Caesarem? Cūr Caesar bellum suscēpit? Cūr Caesar multō etiam gravius querēbātur? Nōnne Caesar ab Helvētiīs dēstitūtus est? Quae fōrma est *emī?* (Est praesēns īnfīnītīvus, fōrmae autem passīvae.) *sum? sublevētur? queritur? suscēperit?* (Est perfectum subiūnctīvī, persōna tertia, singulāris.) Quī subiūnctīvus est *posset? sublevētur? suscēperit?* (Subiūnctīvus causae.) *dēstitūtus sit?* Quae sunt partēs prīmāriae verbī *queror?*

* Hereafter the questions in Latin will be omitted. The general plan of questioning in Latin so as to go over the text, which has been first read, then translated, then gone over in the dictation exercise, has been so well illustrated as not to require further space. The Glossary will supply terms necessary for an explanation of the constructions in Latin. It is earnestly hoped that the omission of the questions will not abate their use by teacher or student. The dictation exercise, questions, and translating of English into Latin are essential to a real mastery of the subject. Hurrying over the text by merely giving the translation is not making haste in learning the language.

Liscus shows the bad faith of an Aeduan faction headed by Dumnorix.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs

1. tum, *adv.* then, *period of time*
dēmum, *adv.* at length, at last, finally
2. anteā, *adv.*, formerly, before
taceō, 2. be silent *or* quiet, pass over in silence
prō-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], place *or* set forth, explain, declare
4. valeō, -ēre, -uī (*no participle*) be strong or powerful
prīvātim, privately, individually, as private citizens
multō (**multum**), much (*comp.* **plūs,** *super,* **plūrimum**)
5. sēditiōsus, -a, -um [**sēditiō**] seditious, mutinous
im-probus, -a, -um [**probus,** good], bad, base, wicked
dē-terreō, 2. frighten away from, hinder, prevent
8. per-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bear *or* carry through; report, endure
dubitō, 1., *a., n., have two opinions,* waver in judgment, be uncertain, doubt
9. superō, 1. be over, surpass, overcome

---

2. quod: *sc.* the antecedent *id,* the object of *prōpōnit.* **esse nōnnūllōs:** form in dir. disc.?

4. quī . . . possint, *who as private citizens possess more influence than, etc.*

5. sēditiōsā: significance of the ending **-ōsus**? LXVI, 7.

6—8. *a.* **nē . . . cōnferant,** *from bringing together, from furnishing.* The negative clause of purpose with **nē** or **quōminus** after a verb of hindering or opposing may be rendered by *from* with the verbal noun in *-ing.* A. 331 *e* 2; G. 548; P. 493 (2). *b.* **praestāre . . . Gallōrum . . . perferre . . . dubitāre,** *it was better to endure the rule of the Gauls rather than that of the Romans, nor did they doubt.* **c. sī . . . possint,** etc.: the unfriendly Aeduan chiefs say: **sī . . . nōn possumus . . . praestat, neque dubitāmus,** etc. **superāverint:** the future perfect indicative in *ōrātiō rēcta* becomes pf. subj. in *ōrātiō oblīqua.* **quīn:** meaning after an expression denoting doubt? XXXIX, vocabulary.

9, 10. Aeduīs . . . sint ēreptūrī, *they would wrest from the Aeduans.* Many verbs compounded with **ab, dē, ex** (**ē**) govern the Dative (here *Aeduīs*) instead of the Ablative of Separation. A. 229; G. 345;

lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriā rē coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

10. **lībertās, -tātis** F., liberty, freedom
11. **coërceō**, 2. [**arceō**, shut up], restrain, check, control
13. **quantus, -a, -um**, *a. interrog.* how much? how great? how large? what? *b. relative*, as much, as great (large) as; **tantus . . . quantus**, as much (great *or* far) as

H. 386, 2; P. 380. **sint ēreptūrī**: form? XXXVIII, 1. What mode in direct discourse?

Reconstruct the direct disc. of this speech according to the principles stated in LXX.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Liscus, who was influenced by the speech of Caesar, declared that some were very powerful. 2. Those whose influence was very great, prevented the people from furnishing grain. 3. If these chieftains could not get possesion of the leadership, they preferred the rule of the Gauls. 4. These said they did not doubt that the Romans would take away liberty from the Aeduans. 5. Let us censure them, especially since they have forsaken us. 6. Caesar could not purchase grain from the neighboring tribes. 7. Those things which were being done in the camp, were reported to the enemy by these men. 8. Liscus thought he could not restrain these men. 9. I know with how much danger Liscus informed Caesar. 10. When Liscus had been sternly rebuked by Caesar, he set forth those things which he knew. 11. Liscus was silent as long as possible because he knew with how great danger he would speak. 12. The Aeduans knew what was being done in our camp.

Explain the mode of **gerantur** (LXX, 3 *a*); **ēnūntiārī** (XX, 1); **coërcērī** (XXX, 1); **posse**; **ēnūntiārit**; **fēcerit** (LXXII, 1); **potuerit** (LXX, 3 *a*); **tacuisse**. Give the construction of **eīsdem** (XXXV, 1); **hostibus**; **hōs** (XX, 2); **sē**; **sēsē**; **perīculō** (LXVII, 2).

The influence of Dumnorix. His character and policy.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem Diviciacī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberalitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrīs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vēctīgālia parvō pretiō

2. dē-sīgnō, 1. [**sīgnō**, mark], point out, mean, indicate
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, perceive, think, feel, be aware; decide
3. praesēns, -entis [**praesum**, be before *or* at hand], present, immediate, at hand
iactō, 1. [*freq. of* **iaciō**, hurl], toss; (*of words*) talk about, discuss
celeriter [**celer**, quick], *adv.*, quickly, rapidly, speedily
concilium, -ī [**calō**, call], N., gathering, assembly; council
4. dī-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**dis-** *or* **dī-**, apart], send apart, break up, dismiss; abandon
retineō, 2. [**teneō**, hold], hold back, detain; restrain
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, inquire, ask, examine
sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* **sōlīus**, alone, only, the only
5. conventus, -ūs [**veniō**, come], M., coming together; meeting, assembly
līberē [**līber**, free], *adv.*, freely, without restraint
6. sēcrētō [**sēcernō**, separate], separately, privately, secretly
reperiō, -īre, repperī, (reperī), repertus [**pariō**, procure], find; find out, discover
vērus, -a, -um, true, real, genuine; *in neut. as subst.*, the truth
7. audācia, -ae [**audāx**, bold], F., boldness, daring; effrontery
līberālitās, -tātis [**līber**, free], F., generosity, munificence; extravagance
9. portōrium, -ī [**portō**, carry], N., toll, duty, tax, tariff *on exports and imports*
vēctīgal, vēctīgālis [**vehō**, convey], N., taxes *or* rents (*conveyed to the pūblicānī*), revenue, income
parvus, -a, -um, *comp.* **minor**, *superl.* **minimus**, little, small, insignificant
pretium, -ī, N., price, valuation

---

6. (ea) esse vēra, (*that these reports*) *are true.* The predicate adjective (*vēra*), like a predicate noun, agrees with its subject (here *ea*) in case. A. 186 *b* 1; G. 211; H. 536 2, 2. **(reperit) ipsum esse** etc., (*he discovers*) *that Dumnorix is the very man.*

7, 8. Give the constr. of **audāciā** (LIV, 4); **grātiā**; **rērum** (XXIV, 3); **annōs** (XXV, 5).

9. parvō pretiō, *at a small*

redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī au- 10
deat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Bitūrī- 15

10. redimō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus [emō, buy], buy up, purchase

liceor, 2. [liceō, offer for sale], make an offer, bid (*at an auction*)

contrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.* on the other hand, opposite *or* contrary to, against

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare, risk, venture

11. nēmō, -inis [nē + homō, man], M., F., no one, nobody

familiāris, -e [familia, household], personal, private; *as subst.*, intimate friend; sc. **rēs,** personal property, estate

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase, augment

12. largior, 4. [largus, large], give largely *or* freely; be liberal *or* extravagant; bribe

13. sūmptus, -ūs [sūmō, take, expend], M., expense, charge

semper, *adv.*, always, ever

alō, -ere, -uī, -itus, nourish, support

15. largiter [largus, large], freely, liberally; **largiter posse,** to have very great influence, be very powerful

potentia, -ae [potēns, powerful], F., power, authority, influence

māter, mātris, F., mother; matron

Bitūrīgēs, -um, M., *a tribe of Central Gaul in two branches, the Vibisci around Bordeaux, and the Cubi around Bourges*

---

price. Price or Valuation (especially when definite) is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition. This construction is called the Ablative of Price (*Ablātīvus pretiī*). App. 94; A. 252; G. 404; H. 422; P. 408.

10. redēmpta habēre, *had bought up* (*in a bought up condition*). For this use of the perf. part. see ch. **15**, 3, 4. **illō licente:** LI, 6. **audeat:** a few verbs like *audeō*, having no perfect stem, use passive forms for tenses of completed action. Such verbs are called Semi-deponents (*semī dēpōnentia*). A. 136; H. 465 N. 2; P. 196.

11. nēmō: force of its position in the sentence? **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

13. sē: who? XXXII, 1.

14. neque = et nōn. domī, *at home.* The Locative of the second declension ends in **-ī** in the singular and in **-īs** in the plural. App. 100; A. 258 *c* 2; G. 411; H. 425–6; P. 97 (3).

15. largiter posse = largiter potentum esse. causā, *for the sake of.* For constr. see LXIV, 1.

gibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō āc potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propīnquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Diviciacus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō

16. illīc [**ille**, that + **-ce**], in that place, there

collocō, 1. [**locō**, place], place together, place, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre**, to give in marriage

17. uxor, -ōris, F., wife

soror, -ōris, F., sister

18. nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, veil one's self for; marry (*of the bride*)

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus, favor, befriend

19. cupiō, -ere, cupīvī (iī), **cupītus**, be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor

af (**ad**) **fīnitās, -tātis** [**fīnis**, adjacent] F., alliance by marriage, relationship, connection

ōdī, ōdisse, *def.* (*pf. with signif. of pres.*), hate, detest

21. dē-minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtus [**minuō**, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair

antīquus, -a, -um [**ante**, before], former, old, ancient

22. honor (**honōs**), **-ōris**, M., honor, regard, glory, distinction

restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**statuō**, set up], set up again, reestablish, restore

25. dē-spērō, 1. [**spēs**, hope], cease to hope, despair

---

16. collo-cāsse (also **comparāsse** l. 12): uncontracted form? LI, 7. **ipsum**: i. e. Dumnorix.

17, 18. ex mātre, *on his mother's side.* **propīnquās suās**, *his female relatives.* **nūptum collocāsse**, *had given in marriage.* For the form of **nūptum** see LXIX, 1.

19. cupere: for the conjugation of verbs in **-iō** see LXV.

suō nōmine, *on individual grounds.*

21. dēminūta: sc. **sit**. Why not **est**?

22. quid: for form and trans. see XLIX, Intr. n. 2.

23. imperiō, *under the control* or *with the ascendency.* The Ablative expressing both *time* and *cause.*

Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum. 30

26. equester, -tris, -tre [**eques**, horseman], of *or* belonging to a horseman; of cavalry, cavalry

ad-versus, -a, -um [**versus** *p. p.* of **vertō**, turn], *turned to or against;* opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable

30. per-terreō, 2. [**terreō**, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly

---

26, 27. quod . . . factum, *respecting the unfortunate engagement of cavalry which had occurred a few days before.*

28. auxiliō, *as* (or *for*) *an aid.* The Dative with many verbs denotes the Purpose or End in view. This construction is called the Dative of Purpose (Service) (*Datīvus finis*). With this dative is commonly joined another dative (of Possession or Reference) showing the person or object affected. App. 67; A. 233, *a*; G. 356; H. 390 I, 1; P. 385–6. Explain the infinitives in the text of this lesson. LXX, 2.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, was pointed out by this speech of Liscus. 2. Caesar thought he could not discuss these things when many were present. 3 Having quickly dismissed the council, he asked Liscus to tell (*ut dīceret*) what (things) were said in the assembly. 4. The others said that Liscus had spoken the truth (true things). 5. Dumnorix was a man of great boldness, and desirous of a revolution. 6. For many years the taxes had been bought up by him. 7. Others did not dare to bid, when Dumnorix was bidding. 8. Dumnorix increased his property by buying the revenues (the revenues having been bought up). 9. We perceive how great a danger it is to restrain the council. 10. Liscus, who was detained, pointed out the only way. 11. The estate of Dumnorix was increased in this manner (*modus*). 12. Abundant (*māgnus*) resources for bribing were procured by him. 13. If we sup-

port the cavalry at our own expense we shall have it near us. 14. They are very powerful not only among the Bituriges but also among other tribes. 15. He gave his female relatives (l. 18) in marriage to noted, influential men. 16. The mother, sister, and other female relatives of Dumnorix were all given in marriage by him. 17. The duties and taxes can be bought up at a small price. 18. If no one dares to purchase we shall not bid. 19. He favored the Helvetians because he had married (led in marriage) the daughter of their chief (*prīnceps*). 20. Dumnorix hates the Romans because he thinks his influence is lessened by their arrival. 21. Dumnorix thought his brother would be restored to (*in*) his former place of honor. 22. He had the highest expectation (came into the highest hope) of getting possession of the kingdom by means of (*per*) the Helvetians. 23. Under the rule of the Romans he despaired of the influence which he had. 24. Dumnorix and his cavalry began the flight (made the beginning of the flight) in the unsuccessful cavalry battle. 25. The Aedui had placed Dumnorix in command of the cavalry which they sent as an aid to Caesar. 26. Dumnorix thought that the flight of his men would terrify the rest of the cavalry. 27. The flight was made in order that the rest of the cavalry might be terrified.

Caesar counsels with Divitiacus concerning his brother Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs

1. cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus [cum + (g)nōscō, learn], *n.*, learn thoroughly; learn, ascertain: *in perf. tenses*, understand, know

---

1, 2. cum . . . accēderent, *since the most clearly proven facts coincided with these suspicions.* These facts (*rēs*) are stated in the following *quod* clauses. **quod:** for its use see on LXXVI, 4.

3. trādūxisset: for construction see LIV, 5.

inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Diviciacī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam, nē ēius suppliciō Diviciacī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciacum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdiānīs inter-

4. in-iūssū, *abl. from* **iniūssus, -ūs**, [**iubeō**, order], without command *or* order
5. īn-sciēns, -entis [**sciō**, know], not knowing, unaware, ignorant
7. animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sum, [**animus** + **ad** + **vertō**], to turn the mind to; to notice; **in**: to punish
8. re-pūgnō, 1. [**pūgnō**, fight], fight back; resist, oppose
9. studium, -ī [**studeō**, be zealous], N., zeal, eagerness, good will, devotion
10. ēgregius, -a, -um [**ē** + **grex**, herd], *out of the common herd*; superior, eminent, remarkable
iūstitia, -ae [**iūstus**, just], F., justice, rectitude, uprightness
11. temperantia, -ae [**temperāns**, temperate], F., moderation, prudence, self-control
supplicium, -ī [**sub** + **plicō**, bend], N., *bending or kneeling in supplication or to receive punishment*; supplication (*rare*); punishment
12. of-fendō, -ere, fendī, fēnsus [**ob** + **fendō**, strike], strike against, wound, hurt, alienate: **ānimum offendere**, wound the feelings
vereor, 2. reverence; fear, dread
prius, *adv.* [**prior**, former], before, sooner, previously; **prius quam** (**priusquam**), before that, before
quis-quam, quae-quam, quic-(quid-)quam, *indef. pron.*, any one, anything
13. vocō, call, summon; call upon; encourage
interpres, -pretis, M., F., interpreter, mediator

---

4. cūrasset: uncontr. form? LI, 7. **iniūssū . . . ipsīs**, *without his own order and (that) of the state but also without their* (the Aeduans') *knowledge.*

6. satis esse causae, *that it was a sufficient reason.* Adverbs denoting quantity govern the Partitive Genitive. App. 59, *d*; A. 216, 4; G. 369; H. 397 4 foot-note 3; P. 355 (2).

7. animadverteret: LXXII, 1.

8. ūnum, *one consideration.*

11. nē with a verb of *fearing* (here *verēbātur*) is translated *that.* The final *or* purpose clause (cf. XLVIII, 6; XLV, 4) denotes purpose or desire. Thus **nē**, a negative, indicates that the object (of *verēbātur*) was not desired.

12. prius quam (**priusquam**) (also *antequam*) is used with the

pretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem
15 Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cuī summam omnium
rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī
20 vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

14. re-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [moveō, move], move back *or* away, remove, withdraw
Valerius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Gaius Valerius Procillus, *a prominent Gaul whose father had received Roman citizenship*
16. colloquor, -ī, locūtus sum [cum + loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer
simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time: **simul atque, simulāc,** as soon as
commonefaciō, -ere, fēcī, factus [cum + moneō, warn + faciō], remind forcibly, impress upon
18. sēparātim [sēparō, separate], separately, apart, asunder
19. petō, -ere, -īvī (iī), -ītus, seek, aim at, make for, attack, try *or* go to get; ask, entreat: **petere ut liceat,** to ask permission
hortor, 1. exhort, encourage, urge strongly
offēnsiō, -ōnis [offendō, strike against], F., *a striking against;* hurting, wounding; offense

---

Indicative in simple statements of fact but if some further relation is implied (*futurity, anticipation, expectation*) the verb is in the Subjunctive. App. 111, c; A. 327; G. 574–7; H. 520; P. 505.

14. prīncipem, *a prominent man.*

15, 16. cuī . . . habēbat, *in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters.* **fidem habēbat** = **cōnfidēbat** and the dative **cuī** is explained as in XIX, 1.

18. sint dicta, dixerit: LXX, 3 *a.*

20. causā cōgnitā, *after investigating the case.* **statuat, iubeat:** XLVIII, 6.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Caesar was informed that Dumnorix had led the Helvetians through the boundaries of the Sequanians. 2. He had done all these things without his order and also without the knowledge of the Aeduans. 3. Having learned these things, he determined to punish him because he thought there was sufficient cause. 4. The remarkable devotion and rec-

titude of his brother Diviciacus was opposing this. 5. Caesar feared that the punishment of Dumnorix would wound the feelings of his brother. 6. They had favored and desired this alliance. 7. I think his former honor was not lessened but restored. 8. He is greatly frightened and despairs because of the unfavorable cavalry battle. 9. Diviciacus was called by him in order that he might speak with him concerning what the others had said. 10. Valerius, the interpreter, was not removed with the other interpreters. 11. Caesar had the highest confidence in Troucillus in all things. 12. He said that in the conference in his presence (*apud sē*) each one had spoken many things. 13. Caesar besought and urged Diviciacus, after examining the case (*abl. abs.*), either himself to decide or to order the state to decide. 14. He learned that the punishment was without their knowlege or order. 15. They fear to oppose this remarkable devotion, rectitude, and prudence.

Caesar spares Dumnorix but places him under guard.

20. Diviciacus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille

1. lacrima, -ae, F., tear
2. com-plector, -ī, plexus sum [**plectō**, braid], embrace, clasp, enclose
ob-secrō, 1. [**sacer**, sacred], implore (*on sacred grounds*), entreat, beseech
3. sciō, 4. distinguish; know, understand

---

2. quid: form and meaning? XLIX, 6. **gravius**, *too* (or *very*) *severe*. State the different auxiliary words that may be used in translating the comparative.

3. in, *against* (*in regard to*). **scīre** etc.: reconstruct the direct discourse. "I know that these (statements) are true and from this fact no one feels (*capit*) more (of) sorrow than I do," etc.

4. eō: LXVI, 1. **dolōris**: LXXI, 2.

5, ff. ipse, sē, suam, sēsē: i. e. Diviciacus. **domī**: chap. **18**, 14.

minimum propter adolēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset: quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit utī et reī

6. adolēscentia (adul-) **-ae** [**adolēscēns**, a youth], F., youth
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus [*incept. of* **creō**, create], *n.*, *begin to create:* grow *or* increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*); become famous *or* prominent
7. (ops,) opis [**Ops**, the goddess of plenty], F., power, help, strength; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence
nervus, -ī, M., sinew, tendon, nerve; *in pl.*, energy, power
minuō, -ere, -uī, minūtus [**minus**, less], lessen, impair, diminish
8. perniciēs, -ēī, [**per** + **nex**, death], F., destruction, ruin
amor, -ōris [**amō**, love], M., love
9. frāternus, -a, -um [**frāter**, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother
exīstimātiō, -ōnis [**exīstimō**, estimate], F., judging, opinion
vulgus (**volgus**), **-ī**, N. *and* M., the common people, crowd, rabble, the masses: *in abl. as adv.*, commonly, generally
13. verbum, -ī, N., word
fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētus, weep, lament
14. dextra, -ae [**dexter**, right *sc.* **manus**], F., the right hand
prēndō, -ere, -dī, prēnsus [for **prehendō** = **prae** + **hendō**, hold] lay hold of, seize, grasp
cōn-sōlor, 1. [**sōlor**, comfort], comfort, cheer
ōrō, 1. [**ōs**, mouth], speak, plead, entreat
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F., the public matter *or* interests; *hence* the state, commonwealth. *Both parts of this compound are inflected.* Cf. *iūs iūrandum*

---

6. minimum posset, *had very little influence.*
7. opibus, nervīs: LI, 5.
8. amōre: XL, 1.
9, 10. quod ... accidisset: in dir. disc., "Now if anything rather severe shall befall (shall have befallen) him from you."
12. futūrum (esse) utī ... āverterentur, *it would happen that etc. a.* **futūrum esse ut** (= **fore ut**) with the Subjunctive is here used for the future passive infinitive which rarely occurs. *b.* The same form is necessarily employed when the given verb has no future participle. **āverterentur**: mood and why?
13. cum *while.* **peteret**: XLVI, 1.
14, 15. rogat ... faciat, *he asks him to make* etc. The purpose

pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Diviciacō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

17. con-dōnō, 1. [**dōnō**, give], give freely; give up; pardon, forgive
ad-hibeō, 2. [**habeō**, have], *a.*, have *or* bring to, bring in, summon, employ, use
18. re-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, [**prehendō**, seize] hold back *or* fast, seize hold of; criticise, blame, censure
19. moneō, 2. warn, advise, admonish, teach
20. vītō, 1. avoid, shun, evade
praeter-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus [**praeter**, beyond + **eō**], go beyond *or* past, pass by; omit, neglect, reject: *in p. p. as adj.*, past: *as subst.*, the past

---

clause without an introductory **ut** may follow verbs of *asking, urging,* and *desiring* including *volō* and its compounds. App. 107, *e*; A. 331 *f* Rem.; G. 546 Rem.; H. 499; P. 491.

tantī . . . ostendit, *he shows that his good will is of so great value to him.* The Genitive (here *tantī*) is used to express *indefinite* price or value. App. 58, *b*; A. 252 *a*; G. 379; H. 404–5; P. 371. How is definite price or value expressed. ch. **18**, 9.

16. voluntātī āc precibus, *at his wish and entreaty.*

20. vītet: LI, 4. **praeterita,** *the past.* **frātrī,** *for (the sake of) his brother.*

21. pōnit = adpōnit, *he places over.*

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Diviciacus embraced Caesar and besought him not to decide too severely. 2. Diviciacus said: I know these things are true and no one on this account feels (*capiō*) more sorrow than I do. 3. Dumnorix had grown in wealth and power although (*quamquam*) formerly he had very little influence. 4. He used this power for diminishing the popularity of his brother. 5. Brotherly affection influenced Diviciacus to ask these things. 6. Let us inform the interpreter before Valerius calls anyone. 7. I will ask these separately and urge

them without offence. 8. At the same time he conversed with many others. 9. If anything shall have befallen him rather severe, the people will think it was done at my desire. 10. From this thing it will come to pass that all will turn away from me. 11. He said this because he was an intimate friend of Caesar. 12. While he was weeping, Caesar grasped his hand and comforted him. 13. Having shed many tears, he made an end of beseeching. 14. He besought Caesar to pardon his brother. 15. His favor was of so much importance to Caesar that at his desire he forgave the wrong to the state. 16. When Diviciacus had been summoned he disclosed everything which he knew about his brother. 17. Caesar said to Dumnorix: I warn you in the future to avoid every suspicion: I will forgive the past for the sake of your brother, 18. Having placed guards, in order that he might know what he would do, he departed.

Caesar arranges to harass the Helvetians

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub mōnte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra mōntis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgā-

2. cōn-sīdō, -ere, sēdī, sessus [**sīdō**, sit down], sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp
3. octō (VIII), *indecl. num.*, eight
quālis, -e [**quis**], *interrog.*, of what sort, kind *or* nature, what; *rel.*, of such a sort, kind *or* nature, such as, as
4. circuitus, -ūs [**circumeō**, go around], M., going around; a winding path, circuit: **in circuitū**, all around
ascēnsus, -ūs [**ascendō**, climb up], M., climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent

---

2. hostēs . . . cōnsēdisse, *that the enemy had encamped at the foot of the mountain.* **mīlia passuum octō**, *eight miles.* For the Acc. see App. 77.

3. quālis nātūra, *what was the character.*

4. (eōs) quī cōgnōscerent mīsit, *he sent men to learn.* For the mode and equivalent of **quī** see LVII, 2.

tum prō praetōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

6. **praetor, -ōris** [for **praeitor** fr. **prae-eō**, go before], M., leader, chief, president; general, commander; praetor, judge
dux, ducis [dūcō, lead], M., F., leader, guide, commander
7. **ascendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus** [**ad**+**scandō**, climb], *a.*, *n.*, climb up to, ascend, mount, climb
10. **P.**, *abbrev. for* **Pūblius**, *a Roman praenomen or given-name*
Cōnsidius, -ī, M., Publius Considius, *one of Caesar's officers*
mīlitāris, -e [**mīles**, soldier,], of a soldier, military, martial: **rēs mīlitāris**, the science of warfare.
perītus, -a, -um, tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, accustomed to
11. **L.**, *abbrev. for* **Lūcius**, *a Roman praenomen or given-name*
Sulla, -ae, M., *a Roman family name;* Lucius Cornelius Sulla *the dictator, the bitter foe of Marius and leader of the aristocracy*
posteā, *adv.*. [**post**, after], after this, afterwards
Crassus, -ī [**crassus**, thick], M., (1) M. Licinius Crassus, *triumvir with Caesar and Pompey*; (2) *his son* Publius Licinius, *a lieutenant in Caesar's army;* (3) *a second son*, Marcus Licinius, *one of Caesar's quaestors*

---

8. **quid cōnsiliī sit**, *what his plan is.* **sit**: LXII, 1.
10, 11. **quī . . . habēbātur**, *who was regarded very skillful in military science.* **reī**: App, 55.

Both in reading and in translating give the names in full; thus Publius for **P.**, Lucius for **L.**, Marcus for **M.**

Explain the case of **diē** (XXXVII, 1); **explōrātōribus** (XXXV, 1); **legiōnibus** (LXVII, 3). Inflect **certior, quālis, ascēnsus, praetōre, itinere.**

Inflect the verb **sequor.**

Explain the words in this chapter affected by indirect discourse, naming the form they would have in direct discourse,

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The scouts informed Caesar that the enemy were eight miles away. 2. The Helvetians had encamped at the foot of

the mountains. 3. Scouts were sent by Caesar to learn (who should learn) what was the nature of the ascent of the mountain. 4. The scouts reported that the ascent was very easy. 5. Titus Labienus, a lieutenant with praetorian powers, was ordered to ascend the summit (*summum iugum*) of this mountain. 6. The scouts, who had been sent in advance (*praemittō*), showed the way to Titus. 7. Caesar said to Titus: I will tell you what my plan is. 8. Having sent the cavalry in advance (*abl. abs.*) Caesar pushed on (*contendō*) by the same road. 9. He sent in advance Publius Considius, who had been considered very skillful in military matters. 10. Weeping and entreating he grasps his right hand.

His plans are frustrated by the mistake of Considius.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit, mōntem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī: id sēā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās

1. lūx, lūcis [**lūceō**, be light], F., light
3. captīvus, -ī [**capiō**, take], M., captive, prisoner
4. com-periō, -īre, perī, pertus, find out with certainty, discover, ascertain
5. equus, -ī, M., horse
ad-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō**, send], send to; let in admit; let go *or* loose; permit,
ac-currō, -ere, currī (**cucurrī**), **cursus** [**ad**+**currō**, run], run up *or* rush to
6. Gallicus, -a, -um [**Gallia**], pertaining to Gaul *or* the Gauls, Gallic

---

1. **prīmā lūce**, *at day break.* **summus mōns**, *the summit of the ridge* (*the top of the mount*). Adjectives denoting *order* and *succession* are used in agreement with the noun, to designate *a particular part.* A. 193; G. 287 R. 2.; H. 440 2 N. 1, 2; P. 442.

2—4. **passibus**: ch. **15**, 15, **ut**: as in XLVI, 3. **tenērētur, abesset, cōgnitus esset**: mood and why? XLVI, 1.

5. **equō admissō**, *at full gallop.* Observe that the Ablative Absolute is here equivalent to an Ablative of Manner.

in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committēret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, mōnte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et mōntem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

8. collis, -is, M., hill
sub-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], *lead or draw from beneath;* draw *or* lead up; lead *or* draw off, withdraw
aciēs, -ēī (old gen. **aciē**), [cf. ācer, sharp], F., sharp point *or* edge *of a weapon;* sharp *or* keen sight, glance; a line (*as forming an edge*), battle line
īn-struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus [**struō**, build], build upon, construct; form, draw up, array
9. praecipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], take beforehand, anticipate; instruct, order
nisi, *conj.* [nē+sī, if], *not if;* if not, if . . . not, except, unless
10. prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, near, nigh
11. impetus, -ūs [petō, attack], M., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence
12. abstineō, 2. [teneō, hold], hold off, keep aloof from, refrain
dēnique, *adv.* [deinde, then + -que], and then, thereupon, finally, at last
16. inter-vāllum, -ī [vāllum, intrenchment], N., *the space between two palisades or the 200 feet between the rampart and tents;* interval (*of space or time*)

8, 9. ut erat eī praeceptum, *as he had been directed.* For trans. cf. LXXIX, 4. The real subject is the following clause, **nē committeret,** and we can translate literally *as not to engage in battle had been enjoined upon him.* **committeret:** LXX, 3 *b*.
12. multō diē, *in broad day,* contrasted with **prīmā lūce.**
14. perterritum, *entirely overcome.*
15. quod . . . renūntiāsse, *had reported to him as if seen what he had not seen.* **renūntiāsse:** uncontracted form? LI, 7.
16. quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, *at the usual interval.*

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. At daybreak, Labienus, who was occupying the top of the mountain, saw Considius rushing up to him at full speed

2. The enemy's camp was not far from the camp of Labienus. 3. The arrival of Caesar and Labienus was not known by Considius. 4. Considius said: The mountain which you wished Labienus to seize is held by the enemy; I know this by the insignia. 5. Caesar's troops were withdrawn by him to the nearest hill and the line of battle was formed. 6. Caesar said to Labienus: Do not engage in battle unless my troops are seen near the enemy's camp. 7. He wished an attack to be made upon the enemy on all sides at the same time. 8. Having seized the mountain he keeps the soldiers from battle for the present. 9. When it was broad day (*multō diē*) Caesar was informed that his men were holding the mountain. 10. Considius, who was thoroughly frightened, reported to Caesar what he had not seen, as if he had seen it (*prō vīsō*). 11. They were accustomed to follow the enemy at an interval of five or six miles (see text at end of LXXXVII). 12. The Helvetians' camp was pitched (*pōnō*) several miles from the Roman camp.

The Romans, marching toward Bibracte, are followed and harrassed by the Helvetians.

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus pas-

1. **postrīdiē**, *adv.* [**posterus**, following + **diēs**], on the day following, the next day: **postrīdiē ēius diēī**, on the next *or* following day
bīduum, **-ī** [**bis**, twice + **diēs**], N., space *or* period of two days, two days
2. **super-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** [**super**, over], be over *or* left, survive
3. **Bibracte, -is**, N., *the chief town of the Aedui, now* Autun *in Bourgogne*
4. **cōpiōsus, -a, -um** [**cōpia**, abundance], abundantly *or* well supplied, wealthy

---

1. The adv. **postrīdiē** has here its original force as a noun, and is followed by the Gen. **diēī**.
3. **oppidō**: XXXIII, 3.
4. **mīlibus**: ch. 15, 15.

suum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimā- 5
vit: iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve 10
eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō āgmine īnsequī āc lacēssere coepērunt.

5. frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum, grain], *of or* pertaining to grain; sc. **rēs**, supply of grain, provisions: sc. (**loca**) productive

prōspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [speciō, look], look forward, look out; see to, provide for

7. fugitīvus, -a, -um [fugiō, flee], fleeing, *as subst.* a runaway slave *or* soldier, deserter, fugitive

Aemilius, -ī, M., Lucius Aemilius, *a Gaul in charge of a decuria of Caesar's cavalry*

decuriō, -ōnis, M., [decem], decurion, *a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten*

8. seu *or* **sīve**, *conj.* [sī + ve or], or if, if either; whether, either: **seu . . . seu**, either . . or, whether . . . or

timor, -ōris [timeō, fear], M., fear, alarm, dread

9. prīdiē, *adv.* [prī- in prior + diēs], on the day before

11. interclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus [claudō, shut], shut *or* cut off, obstruct, hinder

cōn-fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum [fīdō, trust], trust completely, rely on, hope: *in p. p. as adj.*, trusting in, relying upon

com-mūtō, 1. [mūtō, change], change *or* alter completely, change; exchange

12. con-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus. [vertō, turn], turn completely, wheel around; turn, change: **sīgna convertere**, to change front

---

5. reī . . . prōspiciendum, *that he must look out for supplies.* **reī**: LXVII, 1. **prōspiciendum (esse)**: for the form see LVII, 5; for the mode, LXX, 2; for the trans., LXIX, 4.

6. Bibracte: LV, 1.

9. exīstimārent: LIII, 5. **eō magis**, *the more.* LXVIII, 3.

10. sīve eō, *or for this reason.*

11. rē . . . posse, (*the Romans*) *could be cut off from supplies* (*at Bibracte*). **rē frūmentāriā**: LV, 1. **interclūdī**: XXX, 1.

Inflect together **rēs frūmentāria, superior locus, novissimum āgmen.**

Explain the construction of each of the infinitives in this chapter and the subjunctives not mentioned in the notes.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Caesar thought it was necessary to measure out grain to his (men) on the following day. 2. Bibracte, a large and wealthy town of the Aedui, was distant about (*ad*) eighteen miles. 3. Caesar turned away his line of march (*iter*) in order that he might look out for supplies. 4. The runaway slave reported to the Helvetians that Caesar was pushing on (*contendō*) to Bibracte. 5. I do not believe that the Romans were thoroughly overcome (*perterreō*) by fear. 6. The day before, the Romans did not engage in battle when they had seized the higher places (*abl. abs.*). 7. The Helvetians fully trusted that they could cut off the Romans from supplies. 8. Therefore (*itaque*) they completely changed their plan, and reversed their line of march. 9. Our men were harassed on the rear by the enemy. 10. I begin to understand (*intellegō*) the plan of the Helvetians.

Caesar prepares for battle. The Helvetians advance to the attack.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia

1. **post-quam**, *conj.*, after that, after, as soon as
ad-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus [vertō, turn], turn to, turn toward *or* against: **animum**, observe, notice
3. **sustineō**, 2. [**sub** + **teneō**, hold], uphold, sustain; check, restrain; withstand, endure
4. **medius, -a, -um**, in the middle *or* midst, in the middle of, intervening
triplex, -icis [**trēs** + **plicō**, fold], three-fold, triple
5. **veterānus, -a, -um** [**vetus**, old], old, veteran
6. **proximē**, *adv.*, last, lately

---

1. **id ... advertit**, *directed his attention to this.* For constr. of **animum** and **id** cf. that of *partēs* and *flūmen*, LXXII, 2.
3. **quī sustinēret**, *to check.* LVI, 2.
4. **in colle mediō**, *midway up the slope*
5. **in summō iugō**: the preposition **in** is employed with the Ab-

collocārī, āc tōtum mōntem hominibus complērī et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab hīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iūssit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

Sarcina.

7. com-pleō, -ēre, plēvī, plētus [pleō, fill], fill up *or* completely, complete

sarcinae, -ārum [sarciō, mend, restore], F., *pl.*, baggage *or* luggage (*of the individual soldier*), packs

9. mūniō, 4. [cf. **moenia**, walls], defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect

10. impedīmentum, -ī, [impediō, hinder], N., hindrance, obstacle: *pl.* baggage *or* luggage (*of an army*), baggage-train (*including the draught animals*)

11. cōnfertus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* cōnferciō, crowd together], crowded together, dense, compact

rēiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], hurl *or* drive back, repel; cast down *or* off, reject

phalanx, -ngis (*Gr. acc. pl.* **phalangas**), F., a compact band of troops, phalanx. *The Roman phalanx was from eight to twenty-four deep*

12. succēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [sub+cēdō, go], go *or* come under; go *or* come up from beneath, come up to, advance, come close to, take the place of; succeed, prosper

---

lative to denote the place *where* (*in which*). This construction is called the Locative Ablative (*ablātīvus locālis*). App. 96; A. 258 *c* 1; G. 385; H. 425; P. 423. When is the preposition omitted? LII, 1.

8. eum: sc. *locum*. **hīs**: XXXV, 1.

10. impedīmenta: composition? Note the change of **n** to **m** before the labial **p**. Note the ending **-mentum**, commonly denoting the means of the action indicated by the verb; e. g. **mone(u) + mentum**, *a means of admonishing* (**moneō**); **doce(u) + mentum**, *a means of teaching* (**doceō**).

9. collocārī, complērī, cōnferrī, mūnīrī iūssit: for constr. of the infinitives, see XXX, 1.

12. sub . . . successērunt, *came up . . . near to*. **sub** (also *in*, *subter*, *super*) is followed by the Accusative with a verb of motion. What case is used in relations of *rest*?

Give the principal parts of **mīsit, iūssit, secūtī, contulērunt, complērī, successērunt.**

Give the construction of **collem** (LXVIII, 3); **auxilia** (XX, 2); **carrīs** (LXVII, 3); **aciē** (LXVII, 2); **equitātū** (XL, 3); **phalange.**

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. When Caesar had turned his attention (*animus*) to this, he thought his troops must be withdrawn. 2. The cavalry were sent by him to withstand the attack of the enemy. 3. When he had formed a triple line half way up the hill, he ordered two legions to be placed on the summit. 4. Caesar enlisted these legions very recently (*proximē*) in hither Gaul. 5. He stationed all the auxiliaries so that the whole place would be filled with men. 6. The place where (*quō*) the packs were collected (*cōnferō*) was fortified by the soldiers. 7. All the wagons of the Helvetians, with their baggage, were collected in one place. 8. Our cavalry was driven back by them, and they advanced in a dense line to our rear.

The battle. The Helvetians are forced to retreat.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs mīssīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā dīsiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedī-

1. prīmum, *adv.* [**prīmus**, first], first, at first, in the first place: **cum prīmum**, as soon as
de-inde (dein), *adv.* [**dē** + **inde**, thence], from thence; thereupon, then; next
2. aequō, 1. [**aequus**, equal], make even *or* equal, equalize
3. co-hortor, 1. [**cum**+**hortor**, encourage], encourage greatly, animate, rally
4. pīlum, -ī, N., heavy javelin, pilum
5. per-fringō, **-ere**, **frēgī**, **frāctus** [**frangō**, break], break *or* burst through
dīsiciō, **-ere**, **iēcī**, **iectus** [**iaciō**, hurl], hurl apart *or* aside; scatter, route, disperse
gladius, -ī, M., sword
dē-stringō, **-ere**, **strinxī**, **strictus** [**stringō**, bind, strip], unbind, strip *or* draw off; unsheathe, draw (**gladium**)
6. pūgna, -ae [**pūgnō**, fight], F., a fight, battle; contest, dispute

---

1. suō (equō remōtō), *sending away his own horse.*
3. tolleret: XLVIII, 6.
5. gladiīs dēstrictīs, *with drawn swords.* LXVII, 2.
6. Gallīs ... impedīmentō, *it*

mentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trāns-fīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflēxisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brāchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmit-10

Scūtum.

Clipeus.

7. scūtum, -ī, N., shield, buckler; *oblong, convex* (2½ x 4 *ft.*), *made of wood covered with leather* (*or iron plates*), *with a metal rim*

ictus, -ūs [īcō, strike], M., stroke, blow, thrust

trāns-fīgō, -ere, fīxī fixus [fīgō, fix], thrust *or* pierce through, transfix

8. colligō, 1. [cum + ligō, bind], bind *or* fasten together, unite, hamper

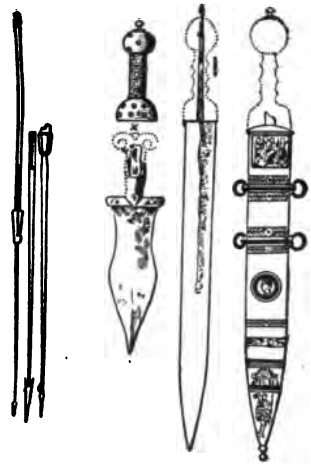
ferrum, -ī, N., iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, sword, spearpoint, chain, etc

īn-flectō, -ere, flēxī, flexus [flectō, bend], bend in, bend, inflect

ē-vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsus [vellō, pluck], pull *or* tear out; pluck *or* root up

9. sinister, -tra, -trum, left; **sub sinistrā**, on the left; *in fem. sing. as subst.* (*sc.* **manus**), the left hand

commodē [**commodus**, convenient], conveniently, readily, easily; **nōn satis commodē**, not very easily



Pīla *Gladiī*

pūgnō, 1. fight, give battle, contend; oppose; strive

10. brāchium, (bracch-) -ī, N., the arm *from the hand to the elbow*, fore-arm

prae-optō, 1. [optō, choose], choose rather, prefer

manus, -ūs, F., the hand; **in manibus**, near at hand; *as the instrument of war*, force, courage; an armed troop, band, company

ē-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [mittō, send], send out *or* forth, let go; hurl, discharge

---

was a great hindrance to the Gauls in fighting. For Dat. cf. ch. 18, 28.

8. cum . . . īnflēxisset, *as the iron point had become bent.*

10. multī ut . . . praeoptārent, *so that many preferred.* Mode?

tere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō mōnte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter
15 XV āgmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ā latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in mōntem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conver-

11. nūdus, -a, -um, naked, unclothed; unprotected
corpus, -oris, N., the body, person; a (*dead*) body
tandem, *adv.* [**tam**, so + **-dem** (cf. **idem**)], *just so far;* at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis*, pray now, then, now
vulnus (vol-), -eris, N., a wound; cut; calamity
dēfessus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **dēfetīscor**, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint
12. re-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus [**ferō**, bear], bear *or* carry back; give back, restore; **sē referre** (*or* **pedem referre**), go back, retreat; **grātiam referre**, return thanks
sub-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [**sub**, under, near], *n.*, be under *or* below; be near *or* close at hand
13. eō [*old dat. of* **is**], *adv.*, thither, there (*in sense of* thither), to the place (*where etc.*), to them (it, him, etc.)
15. claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *a.*, shut, close; shut in, enclose; conclude, terminate
16. latus, -eris [cf. **lātus**, wide], N., side; wing *or* flank *of an army*
aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertus [**ab** + **pariō**, bring forth], *a.*, *bring forth from;* expose; *in p. p. as adj.*, exposed, unprotected
circum-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō**, come], *a.*, come around, surround, encompass; invest, circumvent
17. cōnspicor, 1. [**spec-** in obsol. **speciō**, look], *a. and n.*, look closely, observe, descry, perceive
rūrsus (rūrsum), *adv.* [for **reversus**, from **revertō**, turn back], *backwards;* again, back again.
18. redintegrō, 1. [**re-** + **integrō**, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive

---

LII, 3. **multī**, being emphatic, precedes **ut**, which usually stands first in its clause. **manū**: of what gender are most nouns of the fourth declension?

11. nūdō corpore, *without a shield.*

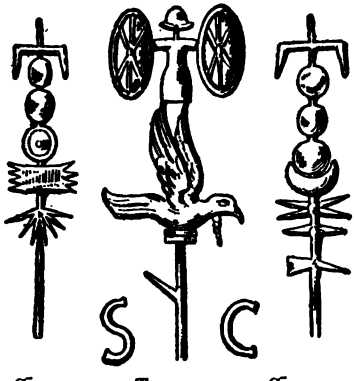
12, 13. circiter ... spatiō, *about a mile distant.* **spatiō**: LXXVIII, 3. **passuum**: XLIX, 1.

15. novissimīs praesidiō, *a protection to the rear.* cf. l. 6.

16. ex itinere, *interrupting their march.*

18, 19. conversa sīgna intu-

sa sīgna bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut vīctīs āc submōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret. 20



Sīgnum. *Tropaeum.* *Sīgnum.*

19. **sīgnum**, -ī, N., mark, sign; military standard, banner; signal, watchword; statue; seal; **sīgna sequī**, follow the standard; **ab sīgnīs discēdere**, withdraw from the ranks; **sīgna īnferre**, advance; **sīgna convertere**, wheel about

bipertītō, *adv.* [bis + partior, divide], in two parts *or* divisions, in two ways

vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus [cf. vinciō, bind, restrain], *a., and n.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; excel; prevail

20. **sub** (sum-) **-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus** [sub + moveō, move], *a., move from beneath* or *near;* move *or* send away, remove, dislodge

resistō, -ere, stitī, stitum, to halt, stop, stand still; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain

---

lērunt, (literally) *carried their reversed standards:* (more freely) *wheeled about and advanced.* **bipertītō**, *in two divisions*, i. e. in two directions.

20. **vīctīs āc submōtīs**, *the conquered and dislodged* (Helvetii). **ut venientēs sustinēret**, *to withstand those* (the Boii and Tulingi) who were advancing. Observe that the present participle (*venientēs*) is here equivalent to a relative clause.

Inflect together **capitō mōnte, succēdentibus nostrīs.** Note the number of participial (*absolute*) constructions and remember that in translating, a clause is frequently required.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The danger of all was made equal by Caesar, who removed his own (horse) and the horses of all the officers (*praefectī mīlitum*) out of sight. 2. He did this in order that the hope of flight might be taken away, and he encouraged his men to engage in battle. 3. By hurling javelins (*abl. abs.*) from their higher position, our soldiers easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy. 4. The phalanx of the Helvetians was easily dispersed, and the Romans began to attack them with drawn swords. 5. It was a hindrance to the Helvetians

that many of their shields were pierced through by one thrust of the javelin. 6. The iron point (*ferrum*) of the javelin bent back so that it could not be pulled out of the shields. 7. The shields were carried (*ferō*) with the left hand. 8. Caesar said that the Helvetians could not fight conveniently because the left hand was hindered. 9. This is a great hindrance to me, because I cannot pull out the iron point of the pilum. 10. One thrust of the javelin often pierced through the shield. 11. I can fight even if (*etiamsī*) my left hand is hindered. 12. Many of the enemy exerted (*jactō*) the arm in vain (*frūstrā*) for a long time and then (*deinde*) threw down their shields and fought with their bodies unprotected. 13. The Helvetians, exhausted with wounds, retreated to the mountain which was near. 14. When our men came up (*abl. abs.*) to the mountain, the Boii and Tulingi attempted to surround them. 15. About fifteen thousand men marched (*iter faciō*) with them, in order that they might be a protection to the rear. 16. This was seen by the Helvetians, who again pressed on (*īnstō*) and renewed the battle. 17. The Romans faced about and advanced against them in two divisions. 18. The conquered and dislodged Gauls were resisted by the first and second lines.

They are routed and flee northward. Caesar pursues.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē con-

1. **anceps, ancipitis** [**ambō**, both +**caput**, head], two headed, with two sides *or* fronts, double; doubtful, wavering
ācriter [**ācer**, sharp], *adv.*, sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously

---

1. **pūgnātum est**, *they fought.* For trans. cf. LXXIX, 4.
3, 4. **alterī . . . alterī**, *the one party* (Helvetii) . . . *the other party* (Boii and Tulingi).

tulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est propterea quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla cōniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermīssō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quar-

5. hōra, -ae, F., hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night reckoning between sunrise and sunset), varying in length according to the season*

6. vesper, -erī, M., evening; **sub vesperum**, towards evening

7. nox, noctis, F., night

8. vāllum, -ī [**vāllus**, palisade], N. wall *or* rampart *of earth* (*set with palisades*); entrenchments, earthworks

ob-iciō, icere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**, throw], *a.*, hurl *or* place in the way, set against *or* in front; expose; throw up, *in p. p. as adj.*, opposed, lying in the way

9. cōn-iciō, icere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**], *a.*, hurl *or* throw together; cast; let fall; put together logically, conjecture

10. rota, -ae, F., wheel

matara, -ae, F., [*Celtic*] javelin, pike

trāgula, -ae [**trāhō**, drag], F., *a light Celtic* javelin *or* dart *attached to a strap by which it was hurled*

sub-iciō, icere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**], *a.*, hurl *or* put under *or* near; discharge below; place below, subject; throw from beneath, throw up

vulnerō, (vol-), 1. [**vulnus**, a wound], *a.*, wound, injure, hurt

15. inter-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō**, send], *a.*, *n.*, send between, interrupt, discontinue, leave off

Lingonēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe in the Vosges near the sources of the Maas and Marne; capital, Andematunnum, the modern Langres*

5, 6. cum pūgnātum sit: for the Subj. see LXXXII, 1. **hōrā septimā**: what time of day?

7. ad multam noctem, *till late at night.*

9. nostrōs venientēs: see on ch. **25**, 20.

11. esset pūgnātum: for trans. cf. l. 1; for the mode XLVI. 1.

impedīmentīs, castrīs: XX, 3.

12. ūnus ē fīliīs, *one of his sons.* Observe that cardinal numerals regularly take the Ablative of Source with ē (ex) or dē instead of the Partitive Genitive.

14. eāque tōtā nocte, *during that whole night.*

15. partem: XXXIII, 5.

tō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem 20 locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

17. sepultūra, -ae [sepeliō, bury], F., burial, sepulture
trīduum, -ī [trēs, three + diēs], N., three days
moror, 1, [mora, a delay], *n.*, delay, tarry, linger
18. littera (lītera), **-ae,** F., a letter *of the alphabet, a written* sign, mark, *or* character; *in pl.*, letter, epistle, missive
nūntius, -ī, M., messenger, courier; message, tidings; command, injunction
19. nēve (neu), *conj.* [nē + ve, or], and not, nor; **nēve** (neu) . . . **nēve**, neither . . . nor
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *a.*, aid, help, assist

---

17. sepultūram: formed from the perf. part. stem (**sepult-**) of **sepeliō** + the significant ending **-ūra** denoting *the thing done, the result of the act;* English *-ure.* Cf. **pingō, pict-ūra,** *picture;* **aperiō, apert-ūra,** *aperture.*

18. potuissent: LXV, 3. **nē . . . iuvārent,** (ordering them) *not to* etc. What mode in direct disc.? LXX, 3 *b.*

19, 20. sē eōdem . . . habitūrum (esse), *he would regard them in the same position as the Helvetii.*

Explain the case of **Orgetorīgis** (LXVI, 4); **nocte** (XXXVII, 1); **noctis** (LXXI, 2), **itinere** (XIX, 3); **fīnēs**) LXVIII, 3); **diē**; **trīduum** (XXXIII, 5); **frūmentō** (XL, 1); **rē**; **locō** (LIII, 1); **cōpiīs** (LXVII, 3).

Inflect together **eō proeliō, tōtā nocte, nūllam partem, diē quartō, aliā rē, eōdem locō, omnibus cōpiīs.**

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The Helvetians for a long time fought a doubtful battle. 2. Some of the enemy began to retreat to the mountain; others were gathering (*cōnferō*) at their wagons because they thought they could not withstand the attack of our soldiers. 3. They fought about the baggage from the seventh hour far into the night. 4. A retreating (*āversus*) enemy was seen by no one, although the battle lasted until evening. 5. When they hurled javelins at (*in*) our men, who were advancing,

they wounded some. 6. Pikes and darts were hurled from below, between the wheels of the wagons. 7. They fought several hours before (*prius quam*) the Romans obtained possession of the Gauls' camp. 8. They captured Orgetorix's son and daughter, who were in the camp. 9. Many thousands of Helvetians who survived this battle set out on the march, and after (*post*) three days arrived (having set out, arrived) in the boundaries of the Lingones. 10. The Romans could not pursue them on the same night, because many of the soldiers were wounded. 11. Caesar said to the Lingones: "Do not aid the Helvetians with grain or anything. If you shall have aided them, I shall consider you in the same position in which I consider the Helvetians." 12. After an interval of three days all the troops followed.

Surrender of the Helvetians. Six thousand escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iūssisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs,

1. **inopia, -ae** [**inops**, needy], F., need, want, poverty, destitution
2. **dēditiō, -ōnis** [**dēdō**, give up], F., giving up; surrender, capitulation
3. **prō-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus** [**iaciō**, throw], *a.*, throw forward *or* away, project; cast; reject, abandon
4. **suppliciter** [**supplex**, suppliant], *adv.*, suppliantly, humbly
6. **pāreō**, 2. [cf. **pariō**, bring forth] *n.*, *come forth, be clear;* obey, submit, yield to, comply with, be subject to

---

2. **quī cum**, *when these* (ambassadors). For trans. cf. LXXVIII, 4.

5. **quō tum essent**, *where they* (the Helvetians) *then were.* This clause depends on the subjunctive clause **atque (cum) . . . iūssisset** and, regarded as an integral part of the clause, has its verb attracted to the Subjunctive. This construction is called the Subjunctive by Attraction. A. 342: G. 663; H. 529 II; P. 523.

arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia VI ēius pāgī, quī Verbigēnus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

7. servus, -ī, M., slave, servant
per-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus [**fugiō,** flee], *n.*, flee for refuge, take refuge in; desert
poscō, -ere, poposcī [cf. **precor,** ask], *a.*, ask, demand, request (*stronger than* **petō,** *less strong than* **flāgitō**)
8. con-quīrō, -ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus [**quaerō,** search], *a.*, seek for carefully, search for, hunt up
9. Verbigēnus, -ī, M., *one of the four clans of the Helvetii*
10. trā-(trāns-) dō, dere, didī, ditus [**trāns** + **dō,** give], *a.*, give across *or* over, give up, surrender; intrust, confide; hand down, transmit
11. salūs, salūtis [**salveō,** be well], F., health, welfare; preservation, security, safety
dēdītīcius, -a, -um [**dēdō,** surrender], surrendered, subject; *as subst.*, one surrendered (*formally*), prisoner
12. occultō, 1. [*freq. of* **occulō,** hide], *a.*, hide, secrete; keep secret, conceal
īgnōrō, 1. [**īgnārus,** not knowing] *a.*, not know, be ignorant of, be unacquainted with; fail to observe, overlook: *pass.*, be unobserved, unrecognized
13. ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus [**gradior,** step], *a.*, *n.*, step *or* go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark

---

7, 8. quī perfūgissent, *who had fled* (i. e. if any had fled). The relative clause here is used with the Subjunctive to define or characterize the antecedent (*servōs*) *in a supposable case.* This construction is called the Subjunctive in a Relative Clause of Characteristic. App. 109; A. 320; H. 503 I; P. 500. **dum ... cōnferuntur,** *while these were being sought out and brought together.* **dum,** *while,* is used with the pres. ind. in referring to past events and must be translated by the impf. indic. **ea** is used *inclusively* for *obsidēs, arma, servōs.* The masculine *iī* (*eī*) may also be used when the adjective refers to different genders of *living beings* and also to *things without life,* or the adjective may agree with the nearest noun. App. 18; A. 187 2 *b*, n; H. 430 2 *n*; P. 336.

9. quī Verbigēnus appellātur, *which is called Verbigenus.* Contrast this relative clause, which *states a fact,* with the relative clause in 7, 8 above. **Verbigēnus:** LXXIII, 2.

10, 11. timōre nē, *by the fear that.* For trans. of **nē** see on Ch. **19,** 11.

Give the construction of **dēditiōne** (LXIV, 1); **pedēs** (LXVIII, 3); **suppliciō** (XL, 1); **nocte**; **castrīs**; **fīnēs**.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The legates said that they were influenced by the scarcity of grain. 2. The surrender was made towards evening at the tenth hour. 3. The ambassadors met Caesar on the way and cast themselves at his feet. 4. Some spoke humbly, others wept, all asked for peace. 5. Caesar said that the Helvetians must remain where they then were, and await his arrival. 6. The Helvetians obeyed Caesar because they feared him. 7. When Caesar had come to them, he demanded all the slaves who had deserted to them. 8. The Helvetians brought to Caesar those things which he had demanded. 9. Several (*nōnnūllus*) thousand men who were overcome (*perterritus*) by fear that they would suffer punishment if they gave up their arms, departed from the camp in the early part of the night. 10. These men thought that their flight would be easily concealed or entirely overlooked. 11. Caesar was not ignorant that these men had gone.

---

28. Quod ubī Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit: reductōs in

These are retaken and put to death, the rest compelled to return to Helvetia.

1. re-scīscō, -ere, scīvī, (sciī), scītus [**scīscō**, inquire], *a.*, find out, learn, discover
2. re-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead *or* bring back, draw back; restore, replace
3. pūrgō, 1. [**pūrus**, clean + **agō**], *a.*, clean, clear, excuse, exonerate: *in p. p. as adj.*, freed from blame *or* suspicion, exonerated

---

1. quod, *this*. cf. LXXVIII, 4. **quōrum**: the antecedent is **hīs**, the indir. object of **imperāvit**.

2, 3. utī: how distinguished from the pres. infin. of **ūtor**? **utī conquīrerent** etc., *to search them out* etc. For constr. of the clause cf. L, 4. **sī sibi . . . vellent**, *if they wished to be blameless before him* (or *in his eyes*). The dative **sibi** indicates the person *in reference to whom* the statement is made. This construction is called the Dative of Reference (*Datīvus relatiōnis*): App.

hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latovīcōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iūssit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmīssīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iūssit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque

5. perfuga, -ae [perfugiō, flee for refuge], M., refugee, deserter
6. unde, *adv.*, (*of place*) from which place, from what (*country etc.*), whence (*of substantives*), from whom (what)
7. frūx, frūgis, F., (*usually in plur.*) fruit, produce
ā-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssum (ā+mittō), to send away, dismiss; to lose
8. famēs, -is, F., hunger, want, famine
tolerō, 1. [cf. tollō, lift up], bear up under, endure; nourish, support
10. ratiō, -ōnis [**reor,** reckon], F., reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, course, means; motive, principle, reason
11. vacō, 1. *n.*, be empty *or* unoccupied; have leisure; lie waste
12. bonitās, -tātis [**bonus,** good], F., goodness, fertility (*of lands*)

68; A. 235; G. 352; H. 384 4 n. 3; P. 381. **reductōs:** render by a temporal clause, *after they had been brought back*. Cf. the use of the perfect participle in XL, 3; L, 8.

4. in . . . habuit, *he treated them as enemies*, i. e. he put them to death.

8, 9. quō . . . tolerārent: for the mode see on LI, 3; for the use of **quō** instead of *ut eō* see on LXI, 1. **ut iīs facerent,** *to provide them with.*

10. eā ratiōne, *for this reason.*
13. suīs=Germānōrum.

14,–16. Bōiōs . . . concessit: English order: *concessit Aeduis petentibus, ut collocārent Bōiōs in suīs fīnibus quod cōgniti erant ēgregiā virtūte* (of eminent valor). **ut . . . collocārent** is the dir. obj. and **Aeduīs** the indir. obj. of **concessit. Bōiōs** is placed first for emphasis. **virtūte:** LIII, 4.

posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

17. pār, paris, equal, alike, equal to, a match for: **est,** it is fit *or* proper; **pār atque,** the same as

condiciō, -ōnis, f., (condicō), condition, quality, state; terms, stipulation

17, 18. parem . . . atque . . . erant, *the same as they themselves were in* (*or such as they themselves enjoyed.*). **atque** (āc) generally means *as* or *than* after words of likeness and comparison. The origin of this use of **atque** may, perhaps, be shown thus: *Tu es in parī servitūtis condiciōne atque ego* (Latin idiom). *Ego atque tu in parī servitūtis condiciōne sumus* (Eng. idiom).

Inflect together frūgibus āmissīs, eā ratiōne, suīs fīnibus, petentibus Aeduīs, parem condiciōnem; beginning with the nom. sing. Inflect in full the verb **iūssit.**

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. Caesar ascertained that the deserters had gone through the boundaries of the neighboring peoples. 2. Caesar said: "Search them out and bring them back if you wish to be blameless in my sight." 3. He commanded that they should be treated as(held in the number of) enemies. 4. All the rest were received in capitulation after they had given up (*abl. abs.*) the deserters and hostages. 5. The Helvetians and other tribes (*populus*) had set out from their own boundaries. 6. When Caesar ordered them to return, they did so, although there were no crops at home. 7. Caesar commanded the Allobroges: "Furnish (*faciō*) the Helvetians with a supply of grain." 8. They themselves, having burned their towns and villages, were ordered by Caesar to restore them. 9. He was doing these things especially for this reason, because he was unwilling that the Germans should dwell in the Helvetians' territory. 10. He did not wish the Germans to be neighbors to the friends of Rome. 11. They asked Caesar to permit them (*ut sibi liceat*) to place (*ut c. subj.*) the Boii in their territory because they knew them to be of eminent valor (*abl. characteristic*). 12. The Boii received fields from the Aeduans, and afterward equal terms of independence.

Enumeration of the Helvetians and their allies.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium ratiōnum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latovīcōrum XIIII, Rauricōrum XXIII Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

1. tabula, -ae, F., board, plank; writing-tablet, writing; list

Tabulae.

2. Graecus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian

3. nōminātim [nōminō, name], by name, expressly, in detail

5. puer, -erī, M., boy, child; son: *in pl.*, children (of both sexes); **ā puerō (puerīs),** from childhood

senex, senis, *adj.*, old: *as subst.*, an old man

mulier, -eris, F., woman; wife

6. summa, -ae, [for **summa rēs**], F., the main thing *or* point, sum total, whole amount, aggregate; general management, chief control

caput, capitis, N., the head (*of men and animals*); person, individual; a head *or* leader; a section *or* chapter; mouth (*of a river*): **capitis poena,** capital punishment.

9. nōn āgintā, *indec. num adj.* ninety

10. red-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus, [re- + eō, go], *n.*, go *or* turn back, return; be brought *or* reduced; fall to, descend

cēnsus, -ūs [cēnseō, estimate], M., estimation, census

---

3. quibus in tabulīs, *in which.* For a like repetition of the antecedent see LI, 1.

4. exīsset: LXXII, 1; **possent,** mood and why?

5, 6. quārum ... summa ... CCLXIII, *the aggregate of all these was two hundred and sixty-three thousand Helvetii.* **ratiōnum** and **capitum** (which are best omitted in translation) are used by Caesar in careless contempt for the *persons* that composed this motley multitude.

8. quī ... possent: contrast with **quī ... rediērunt,** l. 10. the Indicative denoting the certainty or fact.

9. fuērunt: agrees with the plural predicate. A. 204 *b*; H. 462.

In reading the numerals give the Latin words representing them instead of the abbreviations: CCLXIII, **ducenta sexāgintā tria**; XXXVI, **trīgintā sex**; XIV, **quattuor decem**; XXIII, **vīgintī tria**; XXXII, **trīgintā duo**; XCII, **nōnāgintā duō**; CCCLXVIII, **trecenta sexāgintā octō**; **C et X**, **centum et decem.**

Read over the sketch of this eventful campaign at the beginning of this book.

Sequentia litteris Latīnīs mandātō:

1. The lists, which were brought to Caesar, were written in Greek characters. 2 The number of those who had gone from home was written on the lists. 3 The names of the soldiers who could bear arms were not on the same lists with those of the women and children. 4. Caesar states (*dīcō*) that three hundred and sixty-eight thousand of these had left their homes, and that ninety-two thousand could bear arms. 5. Caesar ordered his men to find out how great a number of them returned to their homes. 6. They reported that the number was one hundred and ten thousand. 7. More than (*plūs quam*) two hundred thousand persons (*capita*) perished (were lost) in this war. 8. This closes (*fīniō*) the account (*narrātiō*) of the war with the Helvetians.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON I

This and the following lesson include important grammatical subjects not conveniently or completely presented in the text upon which the preceding lessons are based. They are presented with the exercises as essential to a complete statement of the elements of Latin Grammar. They may be omitted, at the discretion of the teacher, until these points are found in the further study of Latin.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (Sententiae Conditiōnālēs)

Introductory Notes:

1. A conditional sentence consists of two clauses; the *condition* (protasis) and the *conclusion* (apodosis).

2. The classes of conditions are as follows.

a. Simple, *implying nothing as to fulfillment;*

The Indicative is used both in condition and conclusion. **sī valēs, bene est,** *if you are in good health, it is well.*

b. VIVID FUTURE:

The future (or future perfect) is used in both clauses. **sī valēbis, gaudēbō,** *if you are (shall be) well, I shall be glad.*

c. LESS VIVID FUTURE:

The present (or perfect) Subjunctive is used in both clauses. **sī valeās, gaudeam,** *if you should be well, I would be glad.*

If the act or event of the protasis is thought of *as completed before that of the conclusion* BEGINS, the perfect Subjunctive is used.

d. CONTRARY TO FACT (UNREAL): *implying that the supposition is untrue.*

The Imperfect Subjunctive is used in referring to present time, the Pluperfect Subjunctive in referring to past time. **sī valērēs, gaudērem,** *if you were well* (as you are not), *I would be glad:* **sī valuissēs, gāvīsus essem,** *if you had been well, I would have been glad.*

e. GENERAL CONDITIONS: referring (1) to the *customary* or *repeated* act of a definite subject with the Indicative in both clauses: **sī valēbās, gaudēbam,** *if you were well* (whenever that was the case), *I was glad;* or (2) to the act of an *indefinite* subject (*you, any one*); the condition with the Subjunctive and the conclusion with the Indicative: **sī dīcis, īrāscit,** *if you* (*any one*) *speak, he becomes angry.*

Name the class of conditions of the following examples, selected from the text of the preceding lessons: **sī perrumpere possent** (LXII); **id sī fieret** (LXVI). Other examples are found in the text of *pēnsa*, LXXVI; LXXVIII; LXXIX; LXXXII; chaps. **17; 18; 20; 26; 28.** It will be observed that the examples in these *pēnsa* are found in Indirect discourse and their classification is to be determined after restoring the Direct discourse. The form in which they appear in the text will be understood by noting (1) the changes incident to a change from *direct* to *indirect* discourse and (2) the rules for the *Sequence* of *Tenses* (explained in the following *pēnsum*). App. 117; A. 304–311; G. 589–603; H. 507–512; P. 476, 477.

Sequentia litterīs Latīnīs mandātō:

1. If they return home, they obtain supplies. 2. If they (shall) return home, they will obtain supplies. 3. If they were greatly terrified, they asked for peace. 4. If they had been greatly terrified, they would have asked for peace. 5. If I should meet him I would cast myself at his feet. 6. If the battle were fought, we would get possession of the camp. 7.

If he (at any time) saw people, he spoke to them. 8. If you (any one) complain, he shows what he thinks.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON II

SEQUENCE OF TENSES (Cōnsecūtiō Temporum)

INTRODUCTORY NOTES:

1. The PRIMARY (*principal*) tenses are those expressing *present* or *future* time: the Present, Future and Future Perfect Indicative; the Present and Perfect Subjunctive; the Present and Future Imperative.

a. Occasionally the Perfect Definite (i. e. the Perfect with *have*), is regarded as a primary tense when present time is clearly in the writer's mind.

b. The Historical Present is sometimes followed by a primary and sometimes by a secondary tense.

2. The SECONDARY (*historical*) tenses include all forms referring to *past* time: the Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect Indicative; the Imperperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; and the Historical Infinitive.

3. In subordinate clauses the use of tenses follows the rule:

Primary tenses are followed by primary tenses (in the subjunctive), secondary tenses are followed by secondary tenses: as —

venit ut videat, *he comes to see.*

veniēbat ut vidēret, *he was coming that he might see* (or to see).

veniet ut videat, *he will come to see.*

venī (imperative), **ut videās,** *come, that you may see.*

vēnit ut vidēret, *he came to see.*

vēnit ut videat, *he came to see* (1 *a* above).

vīderat quid fēcissēs, *he had seen what you had done.*

vīderō quid fēceris *I shall have seen what you have done.*

App. 101–2; A. 285–287; G. 510–518; H. 491–495.

Translate and explain the tense and mode for the following examples from the text of the preceding lessons: **cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent** (XIX); **fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur** (XXIII); **persuādet Casticō ut rēgnum occupāret** (XXXIII, XXXV) see on 1 *b* above; **cōnantur ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant** (XLVII); **persuādent Rauricīs utī proficīscantur** (LI); **lēgātōs mittunt, quī dīcerent** (LVI); **lēgātīs respondit, sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur** (LVIII); **obsidēs, utī dent, perficit** (LXIV); (*dīxērunt*) **sē meritōs esse ut oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint** (LXIX). Note other examples throughout the text of the lessons.

C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

B. C. 58.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Description of the divisions and inhabitants of Gaul.

Orgetorix persuades the Helvetians to invade Gaul.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnīs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

Preparations of the Helvetians.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit.

Orgetorix conspires with chiefs of other tribes for supremacy.

In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloēdis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occu-

pāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciacī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy but escapes. His sudden death.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinclīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

The Helvetians complete their preparations and depart.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent, trium mēnsum molita cibāria sibi quemque

domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauricīs et Tulingīs et Latovīcīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur, Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

They arrange to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant: is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar delays them by pretexts.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ūlteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō sine

üllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nüllum: rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum mīssum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Aprīl. reverterentur.

He prevents their crossing the Rhone.

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter üllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

The Helvetians obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

9. Relinquēbātur üna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre,

ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorigis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Caesar brings up his forces to oppose their passage.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ūlteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutrōnēs et Grāiocelī et Caturigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ūlteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit: inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Helvetians invade the country of the Aedui who implore Caesar's protection.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur.

Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fōrtūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

At the crossing of the Arar Caesar destroys the Tigurini who formed the rear-guard of the Helvetians.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit: reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.

Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

The Helvetians, headed by Divico, haughtily ask for peace.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūius lēgātiōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūros Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī, quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūtī tribuerit aut ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs dīdicisse, ut magis virtūte quam dolō contenderent aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi cōnstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

Caesar proposes terms, which they refuse.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commīssum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veter-

is contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vēxāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā vīctōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Divicō respondit; Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint: ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Caesar follows the Helvetians and is defeated in a cavalry skirmish.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum āgmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnunquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat āc satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Aeduans fail to furnish Caesar promised supplies.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat: eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvēxerat, propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī: cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciacō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propīnquīs hostibus ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

Jscus shows the bad faith of an Aeduan faction headed by Dumnorix.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Caesarī

ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

The influence of Dumnorix. His character and policy.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorigem, Diviciacī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberalitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrīs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vēctīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, proptereā quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Bituri-gibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō āc potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrum habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propīnquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Diviciacus frāter in antīquum lōcum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorige atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Caesar counsels with Diviciacus concerning his brother Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīcionēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Diviciacī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in se voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam, nē ēius suppliciō Diviciacī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciacum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cuī summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

Caesar spares Dumnorix but places him under guard.

20. Diviciacus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adolēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae

apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Diviciacō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorigī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar arranges to harass the Helvetians in the rear and in front.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

His plans are frustrated by the mistake of Considius.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admīssō ad eum accurrit, dīcit, montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās

in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, mōnte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelioque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

The Romans, marching toward Bibracte, are followed and harassed by the Helvetians.

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit: iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō āgmine īnsequī āc lacēssere coepērunt.

Caesar prepares for battle. The Helvettians advance to the attack.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, [ita utī suprā] sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī, intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab

hīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iūssit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successerunt.

The battle. The Helvetians are forced to retreat.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlites ē locō superiōre pīlīs mīssīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflēxisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brāchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter XV āgmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ā latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī; quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs āc submōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

They are routed and flee northward. Caesar pursues.

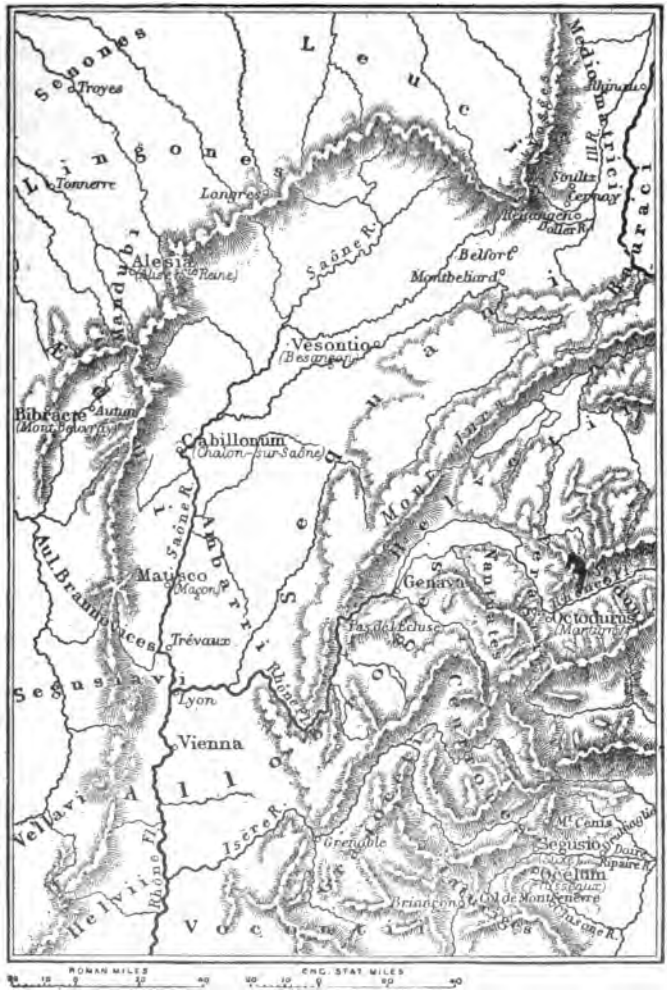
26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.

Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter ierunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermīssō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermīssō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

Surrender of the Helvetians. Six thousand escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iūssisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermīssā, circiter hominum mīlia VI ēius pāgī, quī Verbigēnus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs, suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

I. CAMPAIGN OF 58.



These are retaken and put to death. The remainder are compelled to return to Helvetia.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit: reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latovīcōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iūssit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmīssīs, domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iūssit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

Enumeration of the Helvetians and their allies.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latovīcōrum XIV, Rauricōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX AND INDEX

The various forms of inflection and the important principles of Grammatical construction which have been given in connection with the successive lessons are here presented in a connected manner. References are given to the lessons (by Roman numerals) and Notes (by Arabic numerals) where the principles are first explained and illustrated

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Origin,	See Introd.	Lesson.	I.
Alphabet and its divisions,	"	"	"	II.
Pronunciation, Roman method,	"	"	"	IV.
" English Method	"	"	"	V.
Syllables,	"	"	"	VI.
Quantity,	"	"	"	VII.
Accent,	"	"	"	VIII.
Order of words,	"	"	"	IX.

NOUNS

The Declensions

1. Definition, VII, Introd. note 1; Characteristic, VII, Intr. n. 2; Stem, VII, 2; Termination, VII, 3.

2. First or **a Declension:** Characteristic, VII, Intr. n. 3; Examples of Inflection, VII, Intr. n. 3 and page 57, Chart, I; Gender, VII, 1.

3. Second or **o Declension:** Characteristic, VIII, 3 and Intr. n.; Examples of Inflection, VIII, Intr. n., XXI, Intr. n. 3, and page 57, Chart, II; Gender, VIII, 1.

Additional examples, stems in **-ro.**

	Singular		Plural	
	boy (m.)	*man* (m.)		
N.	puer	vir	puerī	virī
G.	puerī	virī	puerōrum	virōrum
D.	puerō	virō	puerīs	virīs
Ac.	puerum	virum	puerōs	virōs
V.	puer	vir	puerī	virī
Ab.	puerō	virō	puerīs	virīs

4. Third Declension: Formation of stems, XIII, Intr. n. 1–5. Examples of Inflection, XIII, Intr. n. 2 and page 57, chart, III; Gender, XIII, 1 *a–c;* Vowel stems, XIII, 2 *a–c.*

Additional examples.

a. Stem ending in a mute.

	Singular		Plural	
	soldier (m.)	*state* (f.)		
N.	mīles	cīvitās	mīlitēs	cīvitātēs
G.	mīlitis	cīvitātis	mīlitum	cīvitātum
D.	mīlitī	cīvitātī	mīlitibus	cīvitātibus
Ac.	mīlitem	cīvitātem	mīlitēs	cīvitātēs
V.	mīles	cīvitās	mīlitēs	cīvitātēs
Ab.	mīlite	cīvitāte	mīlitibus	cīvitātibus

b. Stem ending in a liquid.

Singular.	*consul* (m.)	*sister* (f.)	*father* (m.)	*name* (n.)	*body* (n.)
N.	cōnsul	soror	pater	nōmen	corpus
G.	cōnsulis	sorōris	patris	nōminis	corporis
D.	cōnsulī	sorōrī	patrī	nōminī	corporī
Ac.	cōnsulem	sorōrem	patrem	nōmen	corpus
V.	cōnsul	soror	pater	nōmen	corpus
Ab.	cōnsule	sorōre	patre	nōmine	corpore
Plural.					
N., Ac., V.	cōnsulēs	sorōrēs	patrēs	nōmina	corpora
G.	cōnsulum	sorōrum	patrum	nōminum	corporum
D., Ab.	cōnsulibus	sorōribus	patribus	nōminibus	corporibus

c. Stem ending in i.

Sing.	*tower* (f.)	*cloud* (f.)	*animal* (n.)	*spur* (n.)
N.	turris	nūbēs	animal	calcar
G.	turris	nūbis	animālis	calcāris
D.	turrī	nūbī	animālī	calcārī
Ac.	turrim (em)	nūbem	animal	calcar
V.	turris	nūbēs	animal	calcar
Ab.	turre (ī)	nūbe	animālī	calcārī
Plural.				
N.	turrēs	nūbēs	animālia	calcāria
G.	turrium	nūbium	animālium	calcārium
D.	turribus	nūbibus	animālibus	calcāribus
Ac.	turrīs (ēs)	nūbīs (ēs)	animālia	calcāria
V.	turrēs	nūbēs	animālia	calcāria
Ab.	turribus	nūbibus	animālibus	calcāribus

d. Stem ending in a consonant in the singular and in a vowel (i) in the plural. X, 4.

Sing.	*city* (f.)	*night* (f.)	*age* (f.)	*mouse* (m.)	*shower* (m.)
N.	urbs	nox	aetās	mūs	imber
G.	urbis	noctis	aetātis	mūris	imbris
D.	urbī	noctī	aetātī	mūrī	imbrī
Ac.	urbem	noctem	aetātem	mūrem	imbrem
V.	urbs	nox	aetās	mūs	imber
Ab.	urbe	nocte	aetāte	mūre	imbre (ī)
Plural.					
N.	urbēs	noctēs	aetātēs	mūrēs	imbrēs
G.	urbium	noctium	aetātium(um)	mūrium	imbrium
D.	urbibus	noctibus	aetātibus	mūribus	imbribus
Ac.	urbīs (ēs)	noctīs (ēs)	aetātīs (ēs)	mūrīs (ēs)	imbrīs (ēs)
V.	urbēs	noctēs	aetātēs	mūrēs	imbrēs
Ab.	urbibus	noctibus	aetātibus	mūribus	imbribus

e. The following are among those sometimes classed as irregular because exhibiting peculiar forms:—

Singular.	*ox, cow* (c.)	*old man* (m.)	*flesh* (f.)	*bone* (n.)	*force* (f.)
N., V.	bos	senex	carō	os	vīs, see LII,
G.	bovis	senis	carnis	ossis	Intr. n.
D.	bovī	senī	carnī	ossī	
Ac.	bovem	senem	carnem	os	
Ab.	bove	sene	carne	osse	
Plural.	*cattle*				
N., A., V.	bovēs	senēs	carnēs	ossa	
G.	boum (bovum)	senum	carnium	ossium	
D., Ab.	bōbus (būbus)	senibus	carnibus	ossibus	

5. Fourth Declension; Characteristic, XXVII, Intr. n.; Examples of Inflection, XXVII, Intr. n. and page 57 Chart, IV; Gender, XXVII, 4.

Domus, *house*, (f.) has two stems, ending in **u** and **o**, and is declined as follows:

	Singular	Plural
N.	domus	domūs
G.	domūs (domī, *loc.*)	domuum (domōrum)
D.	domuī (domō)	domibus
Ac.	domum	domōs (domūs)
V.	domus	domūs
Ab.	domō (domū)	domibus

6. Fifth Declension; Characteristic, XXIII, Intr. n.; Examples of Inflection, XXIII, Intr. n. and p. 57 Chart, V; Gender, XXIII, 1.

ADJECTIVES

7. First and Second Declensions: X, Intr. n.; Stems in **-rō**, X, 1; Examples of Inflection, X, Intr. n. and p. 58, Chart. Genitives in **-īus**, X, 2 and XX, Intr. n. For inflection of **alius, alter, neuter, nūllus, sōlus, ūllus, ūnus, uter** see XX, Intr. n. 1, 2.

8. Third Declension: Definitions, XIV, Intr. n. 1; Examples of Inflection, XIV, XV and p. 58, Chart.

Additional examples.

9. Consonant stems with one termination in nom. sing., with the form of i stems in abl. sing. (e or ī), in neut. plur. (**-ia**), and gen. plur. (**-ium**).

Singular.	M., F.,	N.	Plural. M., F.	N.
N.	**audāx**, *bold*	**audāx**	**audācēs**	**audācia**
G.	**audācis**	**audācis**	**audācium**	**audācium**
D.	**audācī**	**audācī**	**audācibus**	**audācibus**
Ac.	**audācem**	**audāx**	**audācēs (īs)**	**audācia**
V.	**audāx**	**audāx**	**audācēs**	**audācia**
Ab.	**audācī (e)**	**audācī (e)**	**audācibus**	**audācibus**

Singular.	M., F. (*going*)	N.	M., F. (*equal*)	N.
N. V.	**iēns**	**iēns**	**pār**	**pār**
G.	**euntis**	**euntis**	**paris**	**paris**
D.	**euntī**	**euntī**	**parī**	**parī**
Ac.	**euntem**	**iēns**	**parem**	**pār**
Ab.	**eunte (ī)**	**eunte (ī)**	**parī**	**parī**
Plural.				
N. V.	**euntēs**	**euntia**	**parēs**	**paria**
G.	**euntium**	**euntium**	**parium**	**parium**
D.	**euntibus**	**euntibus**	**paribus**	**paribus**
Ac.	**euntīs (ēs)**	**euntia**	**parīs**	**paria**
Ab.	**euntibus**	**euntibus**	**paribus**	**paribus**

Singular.	M., F. (*headlong*)	N.	M., F. (*rich*)	N.
N. V.	**praeceps**	**praeceps**	**dīves**	**dīves**
G.	**praecipitis**	**praecipitis**	**dīvitis**	**dīvitis**
D.	**praecipitī**	**praecipitī**	**dīvitī**	**dīvitī**
Ac.	**praecipitem**	**praeceps**	**dīvitem**	**dīves**
Ab.	**praecipitī**	**praecipitī**	**dīvite**	**dīvite**
Plural.				
N. V.	**praecipitēs**	**praecipitia**	**dīvitēs**	**[dītia]**
G.	**praecipitium**	**praecipitium**	**dīvitum**	**dīvitum**
D.	**praecipitibus**	**praecipitibus**	**dīvitibus**	**dīvitibus**
Ac.	**praecipitēs**	**praecipitia**	**dīvitīs (ēs)**	**[dītia]**
Ab.	**praecipitibus**	**praecipitibus**	**dīvitibus**	**dīvitibus**

Singular.	M., F. (*fertile*)	N.	M., F. (*old*)	N.
N. V.	**ūber**	**ūber**	**vetus**	**vetus**
G.	**ūberis**	**ūberis**	**veteris**	**veteris**
D.	**ūberī**	**ūberī**	**veterī**	**veterī**
Ac.	**ūberem**	**ūber**	**veterem**	**vetus**
Ab.	**ūbere**	**ūbere**	**vetere**	**vetere**
Plural.				
N. V.	**ūberēs**	**ūbera**	**veterēs**	**vetera**
G.	**ūberum**	**ūberum**	**veterum**	**veterum**
D.	**ūberibus**	**ūberibus**	**veteribus**	**veteribus**
Ac.	**ūberēs**	**ūbera**	**veterēs**	**vetera**
Ab.	**ūberibus**	**ūberibus**	**veteribus**	**veteribus**

10. Comparatives: Formation, XV, Intr. n. 1; Examples of Inflection, XV, Intr. n. 2 and Chart II (**melior**).

11. Plūs, *more*, is a neuter noun in the singular and an adjective in the plural.

	Singular	Plural	
	N.	M., F.	N.
N. V.	**plūs**	**plūrēs**	**plūra**
G.	**plūris**	**plūrium**	**plūrium**
D.	——	**plūribus**	**plūribus**
Ac.	**plūs**	**plūrēs** (**īs**)	**plūra**
Ab.	**plūre**	**plūribus**	**plūribus**

12. Superlatives: Formation and Inflection, XVIII, 2.

13. In the following adjectives the three forms of comparison are derived from different stems:—

bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best.
malus, pēior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst.
māgnus, māior, māximus, great, greater, greatest.
parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least.
multus, plūs (*n.*), **plūrimus,** much, more, most.
multī, plūrēs, plūrimī, many, more, most.
nēquam (*indecl.*), **nēquior, nēquissimus,** worthless.
frūgī (*indecl.*), **frūgālior, frūgālissimus,** useful, worthy.
dexter, dexterior, dextimus, on the right, dexterous.

14. The following Comparatives and Superlatives appear without a Positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:—

cis, citrā (*adv.* on this side): **citerior, citimus,** hither, hithermost.
in, intrā (*prep.* in, within): **interior, intimus,** inner, inmost.
prae, prō (*prep.* before): **prior, prīmus,** former, first.
prope (*adv.* near): **propior, proximus,** nearer, next.
ūltrā (*adv.* beyond): **ūlterior, ūltimus,** farther, farthest.

15. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):—

exterus, exterior, extrēmus (extimus), outer, outmost.
īnferus, īnferior, īnfimus (īmus), lower, lowest.
posterus, posterior, postrēmus (postumus), latter, last.
superus, superior, suprēmus *or* **summus**, higher, highest.

The plurals, **exterī**, *foreigners;* **posterī**, *posterity;* **superī**, *the heavenly gods;* **īnferī**, *those below*, are common.

16. The following in **-lis** add **-limus** to the stem with the stem vowel dropped: **facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis**; comparative regular: as, **facilis**, *easy;* **facilior, facillimus.**

17. Adjectives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative; the comparative is regular: as **ācer**, *keen;* **ācrior, ācerrimus.**

18. Adjectives:—agreement with nouns of different gender, chap. **27**, 7, 8. Distributives, LI, 2. Denoting order and succession, chap. **22**, 1. Adjectives used as adverbs, LXXIV, 3.

19. Adverbs. In Latin, as in English, adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. For their formation from adjectives of the Second Declension see XVIII, 1. For formation of the comparative see XXI, 2. Position, Intr. Lesson, IX, *g*.

20. Numeral adverbs are formed from numbers above four by the ending **-iēs**. See illustrations in table (23, *a*).

21. Many adverbs were originally oblique cases of nouns, adjectives, or pronouns, e. g. **multō**, much; **tantum**, only; **quō**, whither; **contrā**, on the other hand; **rēctā**, straightway; **partim**, partly.

22. Adverbs are classified as adverbs of *manner*, e. g. **audācter**, boldly; of *quantity*, e. g. **multum**; of *place*, e. g. **eō**, there; of *time*, e. g. **nunc**, now; of *cause*, e. g. **eō**, for this reason; *interrogative*, e. g. **cūr**, why? **nōnne?** *negative*, e. g. **nōn, numquam.**

23. NUMERALS

a. The Cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum**, inclusive, are indeclinable.

b. The hundreds are declined like the plural of **māgnus.**

c. **Mīlle**, as an adjective, is indeclinable. As a substantive, **mīlle** is used in the Neut. Sing., Nom. and Acc. The plural is inflected like the plural of **mare** (Chart I): **mīlia, mīlium**, etc.

d. The inflection of **ūnus** is given in XX, Intr. n. 2; of **duo** in **LI**, Intr. n. 2; of **trēs**, in XLIX, Intr. n. 1. **ambō**, *both*, is inflected like **duo.**

e. The NUMERAL ADJECTIVES and ADVERBS are:—

Roman Numerals.	Cardinal, answering the question, *How many?*	Ordinal, answering the question, *Which in order?*	Distributive, answering the question, *How many each?*	Adverbs, answering the question, *How often?*
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, one	semel, once
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus *or* alter	bīnī [by one	bis
III.	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī *or* trīnī	ter
IV.	quattuor	quartus	quaternī	quater
V.	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī	quīnquiēs
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī	sexiēs
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī	septiēs
VIII.	octō	octāvus	octōnī	octiēs
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī	noviēs
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī	deciēs
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī	ūndeciēs
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī	duodeciēs
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī	terdeciēs
XIV.	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaternī dēnī	quattuordeciēs
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī	quīndeciēs
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī	sēdeciēs
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī	septiēsdeciēs
XVIII.	duodēvīgintī (octōdecim)	duodēvīcēsimus	duodēvīcēnī	duodēvīciēs
XIX.	ūndēvīgintī (novendecim)	ūndēvīcēsimus	ūndēvīcēnī	ūndēvīciēs
XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus	vīcēnī	vīciēs
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vīcēsimus prīmus	vīcēnī singulī	semel et vīciēs
XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus	trīcēnī	trīciēs
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēs
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgiēs
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī	sexāgiēs
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus	septuāgēnī	septuāgiēs
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus	octōgēnī	octōgiēs
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēs
C.	centum	centēsimus	centēnī	centiēs
CI.	centum et ūnus	centēsimus prīmus	centēnī singulī	centiēs semel
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī	ducentiēs
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecēnī	trecentiēs
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī	quadringentiēs
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsimus	quīngēnī	quīngentiēs
DC.	sexcentī	sexcentēsimus	sēscēnī	sexcentiēs
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī	septingentiēs
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī	octingentiēs
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī	nōngentiēs
M.	mīlle	millēsimus	millēnī	mīlliēs (mīliēs)
MM.	duo mīllia (mīlia)	bīs millēsimus	bīna mīlia	bis mīliēs

PRONOUNS

24. Personal. The inflection of the first personal pronoun (**ego**) and of the second personal pronoun (**tū**) is given in LXXXII, Intr. n. 2 and in Chart III.

Rem. A personal pronoun of the third person is wanting in Latin. A demonstrative (most frequently **is**) is sometimes used in the nominative and regularly in the oblique cases. The forms of the reflexive **suī** are used in indirect discourse.

25. Reflexive. For the inflection of the reflexive **suī** see XXXII, Intr. n. 1 and Chart III; for its use see XXXII, 1.

Rem. In the first and second persons the oblique cases of the Personal pronouns are used as reflexives, e. g. **mē amō**, *I love myself.*

26. Possessive. The possessive pronouns,

meus, my,	**noster**, our,
tuus, thy, your,	**vester**, your,
suus, his, her, its,	**suus**, their

are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions: **meus, mea, meum; noster, nostra, nostrum;** but **meus** has in the vocative singular masculine generally **mī**, sometimes **meus.**

Rem. As **suus** is reflexive, referring to the subject (see XXXII, 1) the genitive of a demonstrative pronoun must be used for a possessive, not referring to the subject: e. g. **umbram suam vīdit,** *he saw his* (own) *shadow* but **umbram ēius vīdit,** *he saw his* (somebody's else) *shadow.*

27. Demonstrative.

a. For definition and use see XVIII, Intr. n. 1.

b. **is.** For inflection and use see XVIII, Intr. n. 2.

c. **hīc.** For inflection see XXI, Intr. n. 2; for the use, XXI, Intr. n. 1.

d. **īdem.** For formation and inflection see XXXVII, Intr. n. 2.

e. **ille.** For inflection see XXXVIII, Intr. n. 2.

Rem. **Ille** refers to that which is *remote* or well known.

f. **iste** is inflected like *ille.*

Rem. **Iste** is intermediate, in remoteness, between *hīc* and *ille.* It is used of an opponent and sometimes in contempt.

The demonstratives are also inflected in Chart III.

28. Intensive. The intensive, **ipse**, is inflected in XXXVIII, Intr. n. 2 and in Chart III.

29. Relative. For inflection see XXII, Intr. n. 1 and Chart III. For translation by demonstrative and conjunction see LXXVIII, 4.

30. Interrogative and **Indefinite.** The inflection, with statement of the *adjective* forms, is given in XLIX, Intr. n. 2. See also Chart III.

31. Indefinite Compounds. The indefinite Compounds **sīquis, sī-**

quī (**sī quis, sī quī**), *if any one, if any;* **nēquis, nēquī** (**nē quis, nē quī**), *lest any one, lest any;* **num quis, num quī**, *whether any one, whether any;* **aliquis** (**alius** + **quis**), *some one or other, some one, some,* are declined like **quis** but (except in the Nominative plural feminine) generally have **qua** instead of **quae.**

The Indefinite Compounds **quīdam,** *a, a certain, a certain one;* **quispiam,** *any one, any;* **quisquam,** *any one at all;* **quīvīs** (**quī** + **vīs,** from **volō**), *any one you wish, any one, any;* **quīlibet** (**quī** + **libet,** *it pleases*), *any one you please, any one, any,* are inflected like the simple forms of **quis and quī.**

32. Indefinite Relative. *a.* The indefinite Relative **quisquis,** *whoever,* is a doubling of the Interrogative pronoun. The following forms belong to classic usage:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
		Singular.	
Nom.	**quisquis (quīquī)**		**quidquid (quicquid)**
Acc.	**quemquem**		**quidquid (quicquid)**
Abl.	**quōquō**	**quāquā**	**quōquō**
		Plural.	
Nom.	**quīquī**		
D., Abl.	**quibusquibus**		

b. The Indefinite Relative **quīcumque** (**quī** + **-cumque,** *ever*), *whoever,* is declined like **quī.**

33. Universal. For the *universal,* **quisque,** see XLIX, Intr. n. 2 and Chart III,

34. Correlatives. A table of pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and adverbs, exhibiting the forms when *demonstrative, relative, interrogative, indefinite relative,* and *indefinite,* is given in Chart III.

VERBS

35. Regular Verbs.

a. The conjugations — how distinguished, XXIV, Intr. n. 1, XXIV, Intr. n. 2.

b. Principal Parts, XXIV, Intr. n. 3.

c. Personal endings in Active Voice, XXIV, Intr. n. 3.

d. Personal endings in Passive Voice, XXVI, Intr. n. 1.

e. Tenses formed from Present stem in Indicative Active, XXIV, Intr. n. 4–6, and close of lesson.

f. Tenses formed from Present stem in Subjunctive Active, XXXVI, Intr. n. 1–4.

g. Tenses formed from Present stem in Imperative Active, XLII.

h. Tenses formed from Present stem in Indicative Passive, XXVI, Intr. n. 2, and close of lesson.

i. Tenses formed from Present stem in Subjunctive Passive, XXXIX.

j. Tenses formed from Present stem in Imperative Passive, XLII.

k. Personal endings of Perfect Indicative Active, XXXI, Intr. n. 4.

l. The Perfect stem, XXXI, Intr. n. 1–3.

m. Tenses formed from Perfect stem in Indicative Active, XXXI, Intr. n. 4–6.

n. Tenses formed from Perfect stem in Subjunctive Active, XXXVI, Intr. n. 5, 6.

o. Perfect tenses in Indicative Passive, XXXIV, Intr. n. 3–6.

p. Perfect tenses in Subjunctive Passive, XLI, Intr. n. 4, 5.

q. Infinitives, XLII. See also refs. in App. **120–123.**

r. Participles, XLII. See also refs. in App. **124.**

s. Gerund, XLII. See also refs. in App. **125.**

t. Supine, XLII. See also refs. in App. **127–129.**

A complete exhibit of the forms of the regular verb is also made in Charts IV–VI.

36. Deponent Verbs. For Definition see XXVII, 2. For Inflection see the forms of the regular verb in the passive voice.

37. Active Periphrastic. For formation and use see XXXVIII, 1.

38. Passive Periphrastic. For formation and use see LVIII, 5.

39. The Verb Sum. Tenses in the Indicative from the Present stem, XXXIV, Intr. n. 1–3. Tenses in the Subjunctive from the Present stem, XLI, Intr. n. 1, 2. Tenses from the Perfect stem, LXXVIII. The remaining forms of **sum** are:

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

2. **es,** be thou.	**este,** be ye.

FUTURE

2. **estō,** thou shalt be.	**estōte,** ye shall be.
3. **estō,** he shall be.	**suntō,** they shall be.

INFINITIVE

PRES. **esse,** to be.

PERF. **fuisse,** to have been.

FUT. **fore** or **futūrus esse,** to be about to be.

FUT. PART. **futūrus, -a, -um,** about to be.

The verb **sum** is defective as well as irregular, having no gerund or supine, and no participle but the future.

40. Compounds of Sum. **Sum** is compounded without any change of inflection with the prepositions **ab, ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, prō, sub, super.**

In the compound **prōsum, prō** is followed by **d** before **e.** Thus **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt,** etc. The preposition had the form **prōd** originally.

The full inflection of **possum** (*I am able, I can*) is here given. **Possum=potsum** (**potis,** *able,*+**sum**). Before **s** the **t** of the adj. is assimilated. It is retained before **e.**

PRIN. PARTS: **possum, posse** (*for* **pot-esse**), **potuī** (*for* **pot-fui**).

INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRESENT		FUTURE	
possum, I am able, can.	**possim**	**poterō,** I shall be able.	
potes, you can.	**possīs**	PERFECT	
potest, he can.	**possit**	**potuī,** I could.	**potuerim**
possumus, we can.	**possīmus**	PLUPERFECT	
potestis, you can.	**possītis**	**potueram**	**potuissem**
possunt, they can.	**possint**	FUTURE PERFECT	
IMPERFECT		**potuerō**	
poteram, I could.	**possem**		

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
PRES. **posse**	PERF. **potuisse**	PRES. **potēns** (used as an adjective), *powerful.*

41. Ferō. For inflection see LXXIV.

42. Verbs in -iō (capiō, faciō, fīō). For inflection see LXV.

43. eō. For inflection see LXIV.

44. volō and **nōlō.** For inflection see LXXX, Intr. n.

45. DEFECTIVE VERBS

a. The verbs **coepī** (*I began*), **ōdī** (*I hate*), and **meminī** (*I remember*) have lost their Present stem and are called *defective.* The following is a synopsis of the tenses formed from the Perfect stem:—

coep-
ōd-
memin- } **ī, -eram, -erō, erim, -issem, -isse.**

coepī has a fut. part. **coeptūrus** and a perf. part. **coeptus.**
ōdī has a fut. part. **ōsūrus** and a perf. part. **ōsus.**
meminī has the impv. **mementō, -tōte,** and the pres. part. **meminēns**

b. In **ōdī** and **meminī** the perf., plup., and fut. perf. have the meaning of the pres., imperf., and fut.; that is, they are *preteritive* verbs.

Nōvī, *I know*, and **cōnsuēvī** (**cōnsuēscō**), *I am wont*, are also preteritive verbs.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

46. Impersonal verbs have no personal subject. They appear only, in the third person of the indicative and subjunctive, and in the infinitive and gerund. They are:—

a. Verbs expressing the operations of nature and the time of day; as **pluit**, *it rains;* **ningit**, *it snows;* **vesperāscit**, *it grows late.*

b. Verbs of *feeling*, where the subject of the feeling becomes the object as affected by it; as, **miseret**, *it grieves;* **pudet**, *it shames.*

c. Verbs which have a phrase or clause as their subject; as, **accidit, fit**, *it happens;* **libet**, *it pleases;* **restat**, *it remains*, etc.

SYNOPSES OF IMPERSONAL VERBS

1. *it is plain*	2. *it is allowed.*	3. *it chances.*	4. *it results.*
cōnstat	licet	accidit	ēvenit
cōnstābat	licēbat	accidēbat	ēveniēbat
cōnstābit	licēbit	accidet	ēveniet
cōnstitit	licuit	accidit	ēvēnit
cōnstiterat	licuerat	acciderat	ēvēnerat
cōnstiterit	licuerit	acciderit	ēvēnerit
cōnstet	liceat	accidat	ēveniat
cōnstāret	licēret	accideret	ēvenīret
cōnstiterit	licuerit	acciderit	ēvēnerit
cōnstitisset	licuisset	accidisset	ēvēnisset
cōnstāre	licēre	accidere	ēvenīre
cōnstitisse	licuisse	accidisse	ēvēnisse
-stātūrum esse	licitūrum esse	——	ēventūrum esse

GENDER

47. I. **General rules.**

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and mountains are *masculine.*

b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees and of most abstract qualities are *feminine.*

c. Indeclinable names, infinitives, phrases, clauses used as nouns, and any terms used as indeclinable nouns are *neuter.*

II. **Special rules for the declensions.**

For gender of nouns of First declension see VII, 1; of Second declension, VIII, 1; of Third declension, XIII, 1 *a–c* and III below; of Fourth declension, XXVII, 4; of Fifth declension, XXIII, 1.

III. **The Gender of third declension nouns** may be determined by the endings of the Nominative singular, as follows—

a. Masculine endings (of the Nom. Sing.) are **ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -es** (*gen.* **-idis, -itis**).

b. Feminine endings are: **-ās** (*gen.* **-ātis**), **-ēs, -is, -ys, -x, -s** (following a consonant), **-dō, -gō** (*gen.* **-inis**), **-iō, -ūs** (*gen.* **-ūdis, -ūtis**)

c. Neuter endings are: **-a, -e, -ī, -y, -c, -l, -t, -men, -ar, -ur, -us** (*gen.* **-eris, -oris**).

CASES

The principal constructions, as explained and illustrated in the successive lessons of this book, are here presented in a connected form.

48. The names of the cases, with a statement of the general use of each case, are given in the introductory notes of V.

Nominative

49. Subject Nominative. The subject of a finite verb is put in the Nominative case; e. g. *Belgae* **ūnam partem incolunt** V, Intr. n. *a.*

50. Predicate Nominative. A noun in the predicate denoting the same person or thing as the subject is put in the Nominative; e. g. **Is pāgus appellābātur** *Tigurinus* LXIII, 2.

51. Nominative in Apposition. A noun in apposition with the subject is put in the Nominative; e. g. **Flūmen est** *Arar.*

Genitive

52. General Rule. Any noun defining or limiting another noun and denoting a *different* person or thing, is in the Genitive.

53. Subjective Genitive. The Subjective Genitive denotes the *Subject* or *agent* of any action or feeling, or indicates that to which a thing belongs; e. g. **cultū** *prōvinciae,* **Orgetorīgis** *cupiditās, Deī* **amor,** *the love of God,* i. e. the love felt by Him. *Deī* **amor,** *love for God,* illustrates the Objective Genitive.

Rem. This construction includes the Possessive Genitive (**57**) and the Genitive of Quality (**58**).

54. Objective Genitive. The Objective Genitive designates the object toward which the action or feeling is directed; e. g. **rēgnī** *cupiditāte, by a desire for royal power;* **causae** *dictiōnis, of the pleading of the case.*

This construction is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

55. The Genitive with Adjectives. The Objective Genitive is used with adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, skill, memory, sharing, guilt, fulness, mastery, and their opposites; also with verbals in **-āx** and present participles used as adjectives; e. g. **cupidus rērum novārum,** *desirous of a revolution; glōriae* **memor,** *mindful of glory; ratiōnis* **particeps,**

endowed with reason; mīlitāris reī **perītus,** *skilled in military science;* **tenāx** *prōpositī, steadfast in purpose.*

56. Partitive Genitive. See LXXI, 2. With any word denoting a part, substantives, comparatives, numerals, superlatives, etc., the Genitive may be used in indicating the whole of which the part is taken; e. g. *quārum* **ūnam,** II; **eam partem** *Ōceanī,* XVI; **nōbilissimōs** *cīvitātis,* LXVI; **tantum** *spatiī, so much* (of) *space;* **māior** *frātrum, the elder of the brothers.*

57. Possessive Genitive. See *Rem.* under **53.** The Genitive is used to indicate the author or possessor, LVI, 4; e. g. **in** *eōrum* **finibus,** XI; **fīnēs** *Sēquanōrum,* LXIX; **auctōritāte** *Orgetorīgis* **permōtī,** XXIX; **extrēmum oppidum** *Allobrogum,* XLIII. This construction includes —

a. The Appositional Genitive; e. g. **urbs** *Rōmae, the city of Rome,* and

b. The Predicate Genitive; e. g. **domus est** *Caesaris, the house is Caesar's;* **prūdentia est** *senectūtis, discretion belongs to* (is of) *old age.*

58. Genitive of Description or Quality. A limiting noun used to denote quality may be put in the Genitive when modified by an adjective; e. g. **vir** *summae virtūtis, a man of the highest courage.* (Cf. abl. of quality.) This construction includes —

a. The Genitive of Measure. XLIX, 1, and

b. The Genitive of Indefinite Value, Chap. **20,** 14, 15.

59. Genitive with Verbs. Verbs meaning to forget, remember, pity, concern, commonly take the (Objective) Genitive; e. g. **reminīscerētur et** *veteris incommodī* **populī Rōmānī et** *prīstinae virtūtis* **Helvētiōrum,** LXXVI, *let him remember,* etc.; *verbī* **oblītus sum,** *I have forgotten the word.*

a. Some verbs govern the Accusative and Genitive; e. g. **arguit** *mē fūrtī, he accuses me of theft; egestātis eum* **admonēbat,** *he reminded him of his poverty.*

b. **recordor,** *I recollect,* governs the Accusative when referring to *a* single act.

c. For the Genitive with **potior,** see XL, 4.

d. For the Genitive with **postrīdiē,** see Chap. **23,** 1; with **satis,** see Chap. **19,** 6.

Dative

60. The Dative of Indirect Object. The Dative of the Indirect Object shows to or for whom or what anything is or is done. This construction may be used with any Intransitive verb whose meaning allows or with Transitive verbs in connection with the Accusative; e. g. *Caesarī* **renūntiātur,** LXVI, 1; **sēsē** *fugae* **mandārunt,** LXXIII.

61. Dative with Special Verbs. The Dative of Indirect Object is

used with many verbs which in English are followed by a direct object; e. g. verbs meaning to *benefit, injure, command, obey, serve, resist, please, displease, persuade, pardon,* and in general any verb whose action affects indirectly the interests of its object; e. g. **et** *cīvitātī* **persuāsit,** XX; **ut sibi liceat,** LVI; *huic legiōnī* **Caesar cōnfīdēbat,** *Caesar trusted in this legion; tibi* **parcam,** *I will spare you.*

Rem. Verbs which take a Dative can be used in the passive only impersonally and the Dative is retained.

62. The Dative with Verbs Compounded with Prepositions. The Dative of Indirect Object is used with verbs compounded with the prepositions, **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes with **ab, circum, dē,** and **ex;** e. g. **cum virtūte** *omnibus* **praestārent,** XX; **et minus facile** *fīnitimīs* **bellum īnferre posset,** XXIII; **hōc** *Caesarī* **dēfuit,** *this failed Caesar; eī munītiōnī* . . . **T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit,** LXVII; *Aeduīs* **lībertātem sint ēreptūrī,** *they would take away liberty from the Aeduans.*

Rem. The adverbs **satis, bene,** and **male** also take the Dative in composition; e. g. **sī** *Allobrogibus* **satisfaciant,** LXXXII.

63. Dative with Adjectives. The Dative is used with many adjectives to denote the *object to which the quality is directed;* e. g. *plēbī* **acceptus,** XXXVII, 2; **proximīque** *Germānīs,* VII; *classī* **ūtile,** *useful for the class.*

64. Dative with Nouns and Adverbs. The Dative follows some nouns and adverbs formed from verbs and adjectives which take the Dative; e. g. *lēgibus* **obtemperātiō,** *obedience to the laws;* **proximē** *castrīs, very near the camp.*

65. Dative of Agent. The Dative of Agent is used with the Gerundive and the compound tenses of passive verbs to show the person on whom the necessity rests; e. g, **Caesar non exspectandum** *sibi* **statuit,** *Caesar determined that he ought non to wait* (lit. *that it ought not to be waited by himself,* LXXI, 3; **omnia** *Caesarī* **agenda erant,** *all things had to be done by Caesar.*

66. Dative of Possession. The verb **esse** and its compounds (except **abesse** and **posse**) are used to denote (the fact of) Possession; e. g. *sibi* **nihil esse,** *that they have nothing,* LXXI, 1; **est** *mihi* **liber,** *I have a book;* **deest** *mihi* **pecūnia,** *I lack money.*

76. Dative of Purpōse or End. The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End; e. g. *māgnō* **erat** *impedimentō, it was* (for) *a great hindrance,* Chap. **25; funditōrēs** *subsidiō* **mittit,** *he sends slingers for the as-*

sistance. This dative is often accompanied by another dative (of Reference, Possession) showing the person or thing affected, as *Gallīs* **māgnō erat** *impedīmentō, it was* (for) *a great hindrance to the Gauls; subsidiō oppidānīs, for the assistance of* (as an aid to) *the townsmen.*

68. Dative of Reference. The Dative of Reference (of Advantage or Disadvantage) designates the person for whose advantage or disadvantage something is; e. g. *sibi* **purgātī,** *blameless in his sight,* Chap. **28** 2, 3; *vītae* **discimus,** *we learn for life.*

69. Ethical Dative. The Ethical Dative (a special use of the Dative of Reference) is used with the personal pronoun (or reflexive) to denote the person especially interested, when the sense requires no such pronoun; e. g. **quid** *tibi* **vīs,** *what do you wish* (for yourself)?

Accusative

70. Accusative of the Direct Object. The Accusative of the Direct Object is used with transitive verbs to denote that which is directly affected, or is caused or produced by the action of the verb; e. g. **Helvētiī** *reliquōs Gallōs* **virtūte praecēdunt; is sibi** *legātiōnem* **ad cīvitātēs suscēpit.**

71. Direct Object with Special Verbs.

a. Many verbs expressing *feeling* (intransitive in English) govern the Accusative; e. g. *mē* **ridet,** *he laughs at me; meum cāsum* **dolent,** *they grieve at my calamity.*

b. Verbs of *taste, smell,* etc. take an Accusative of the quality; e. g. *vīnum* **redolēns,** *smelling of wine.*

c. The impersonal verbs **decet, dēlectat, fallit, fugit, iuvat, oportet, praeterit** govern the Accusative; e. g. *mē* **oportet,** *I ought* (it behooves me).

72. Cognate Accusative. Some verbs, otherwise intransitive, take an Accusative with a meaning kindred to their own; e. g. *vītam* **vivere,** *to live a life.*

73. Direct Object with Predicate Accusative. Verbs meaning to *make, call, choose, name, esteem, show,* and the like may take a Predicate Accusative in connection with the direct object; e. g. *Hamilcarem imperātōrem* **fēcērunt,** *they made Hamilcar commander.*

74. Direct Object with Secondary Accusative.

a. Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching,* and **celāre,** *to hide* or *conceal,*

take an accusative of the *person* with another of the *thing;* e. g. *mē sententiam* **rogāvit,** *he asked me my opinion.*

b. Verbs compounded with **ad, trāns,** or **circum** sometimes take two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition LXXII. 2.

75. Accusative of Specification. The Accusative of Specification (also called Greek or Adverbial Accusative) shows the part affected or the limit of the action, or that in reference to which the act takes place; e. g. *eam partem* **nōs locus admonuit,** *in reference to this thing the place has warned us; capita* **velāmur,** *we have our heads veiled* (we are veiled in respect to our heads). Here may be classed such adverbial phrases as: *māximam partem, for the most part; quod* **sī,** *but* (as to which) *if; quid* **dīcam?** *why should I speak?*

76. Terminal Accusative (of Place or Limit). The place (or person) *to which* is generally designated by the Accusative with the prepositions **ad** or **in,** but names of towns or small islands and the nouns **domus** and **rūs** omit the preposition, LXVIII; e. g. **minimēque ad** *eōs* **mercātōrēs saepe commeant;** ipse **in** *Ītaliam* **māgnīs itineribus contendit;** *domum* **reditiōnis spē sublātā,** XLVIII; *Rōmam* **eō,** *I am going to Rome.*

77. Accusative of Extent of Space. The Accusative is used to denote the *extent of space;* e. g. *mīlia* **passuum** *decem novem* **mūrum . . . perdūcit,** LX; **quī in longitūdinem** *mīlia* **passuum** CCXL, **in lātitūdinem** CLXXX **patēbant,** XXVII; **nix** *quattuor* **pedēs alta,** *snow four feet deep.*

Rem. Occasionally the genitive of quality is used instead of this construction. Compare also the ablative denoting measure of difference.

78. Accusative of Duration of Time (Temporal Accusative). The Accusative is used to denote time *how long;* e. g. **cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs** *multōs annōs* **obtinuerat,** XXXIII, 5; *septem hōrās* **pūgnāvērunt;** *complūrēs annōs,* Chap. **18.**

79. The Accusative in Exclamations. The Accusative is used in exclamations; e. g. *mē miserum, wretched me!*

80. Accusative, Subject of Infinitive. The Subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative, XX, 2; LXX.

81. Accusative with Prepositions. The Accusative is used with the prepositions

ad, *to*
adversus, *against*
adversum, *towards*
ante, *before*
apud, *at, near*
circā, or
circum, *around*
circiter, *about*
cis, citrā, *this side*
contrā, *against*
ergā, *towards*
extrā, *outside*
īnfrā, *below*
inter, *among*
intrā, *inside*
iuxtā, *near*
ob, *on account of*
penes, *in the power*
per, *through*
pōne, *behind*
post, *after*
praeter, *beyond*
prope, *near*
propter, *on account of*
secundum, *next to*
suprā, *above*
trāns, *across*
ultrā, *on the further side*
versus, *towards*

82. Vocative

The Vocative is the case of direct address, but the Nominative is often used instead; e. g. *serve,***audī**, *slave, listen;* **audī** *tū, populus Albānus, hear thou, people of Alba.*

Ablative

83. Ablative of Separation. The Ablative of Separation denotes that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived and is used

a. With words meaning *to deprive, remove, be absent, need,* and the like; e. g. **Gallōs ab** *Aquitānīs* **Garumna flūmen dīvidit;** *suīs finibus* **eōs prohibent; ut dē** *finibus suīs* . . . **exīrent;** *hōc cōnātū* **dēstitērunt: aberrās ā** *prōpōsitō, you are wandering from the point.* See LV, 1.

b. With verbs compounded with **ā, ab, dē, ex:** e. g. **ut ē** *finibus* **suīs** *exeant, to leave their country,* XLVII; *hōc cōnātū* **dēstitērunt,** LXII.

c. With adjectives meaning *free from, without,* etc. e. g. **animus līber** *cūrā, a mind free from care.*

d. With **opus** and **ūsus** meaning *need;* e. g. *auctōritāte tuā* **nōbis opus est,** *we need your authority.*

e. With the prepositions **ā (ab), dē, ē (ex), sine.**

Rem. The preposition is more freely used when the separation is *literal* than when it is *figurative.* See the examples under *b* above.

84. Ablative of Source and Material. Source or Origin, and the Material of which anything consists is expressed by the Ablative. Sometimes a preposition, **dē, ē (ex)** is employed; e. g. **Iove nātus,** *son of Jove, descended from Jove;* **pocula ex aurō,** *cups of gold;* **quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant,** LX, 2. For the Ablative of Source instead of the Partitive Genitive see Chap. **26,** 12.

Rem. Material may also be expressed by the Genitive of Material, as: *lactis* **flūmina,** *rivers of milk.*

85. Ablative of Cause.

a. The Ablative, generally without a preposition, is used with verbs and adjectives to denote the *cause* or reason: e. g. *repentīnō* **ēius** *adventū* **commōtī**, LXXV; *suā victōriā* **glōriārentur**, *they boasted (because) of their own victory*, LXXX; **hūius potentiae** *causā*, *for the sake of this power*, Chap. **18**.

b. The Ablative of Cause is sometimes employed with the prepositions **ā (ab)**, **dē**, **ē (ex)**, **in**, **prae**; e. g. *quā* **dē** *causā*, IX; *quā* **ex** *parte*, XXV; **nōn prae** *lacrimīs* **scrībere**, *not to write in consequence* (or *because*) *of tears*.

86. Ablative of Agent. The Ablative with **ā** or **ab** is used with *persons* (or personified objects) to denote the AGENT or DOER, XXXV, 1. Cf. also **Divicō respondit: ita Helvētiōs ā** *māiōribus suīs* **īnstitūtōs esse**, *thus the Helvetians had been trained by their ancestors*, LXXXII; **ab** *eīsdem*, *by the same* (*persons*), Chap. **17**.

Rem. Contrast the Dative of Agent (**65**) which does *not* denote the *voluntary* agent but the person *on whom the necessity rests*.

87. Ablative of Comparison. The comparative degree is followed by the Ablative unless **quam** is used. With **quam** the objects compared are in the same case, Chap. **15**, 15. Cf. also **nōn longius** *mille* **et** *quīngentīs passibus*, Chap. **22**; **quid est melius** *bonitāte? what is better than goodness?* **callidior ēs quam hīc**, *you are shrewder than he*.

88. Ablative of Manner. The Ablative, commonly with **cum** or an adjective, or both (but frequently without a preposition), is employed to denote the manner of an action, LXVII, 2. Cf. also **cum** *virtūte* **vīxit** (Cic.), *he lived virtuously; gladiīs dēstrictīs*, *with drawn swords*, Chap. **25**; *māgnō dolōre* **afficiēbantur**, XXV; *quantō* **cum** *perīculō* **id fēcerit**, *with how great risk he did this*, Chap. **17**; **avis** *mōre*, *like a bird*, *in the manner of a bird*.

NOTE. Here belongs the Ablative in such expressions as, *in accordance with*; e. g. *mōre* **populī Rōmānī**, *in accordance with the custom of the Roman people*. This construction is, however, variously classified: see XLIV, 1.

89. Ablative of Accompaniment. Accompaniment is regularly denoted by the Ablative with the preposition **cum**. The preposition is often omitted in military expressions; e. g. **cum** *Germānīs* **contendunt**; **subsequēbātur** *omnibus cōpiīs*, *he followed close with all his troops*.

90. Ablative of Means or Instrument. The *instrument and means* of an action are expressed by the Ablative, without a preposition. See XL, 1 with examples there cited.

91. Ablative with Deponents. The Ablative is used with the de-

ponent verbs **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** and several of their compounds; also with **nītor** and **innītor.** See XX, 3; L, 5; LXXVII, 1.

Rem. With **ūtor, fruor, vescor,** this is an Ablative of Means; with **nītor, innītor,** a Locative Ablative.

92. Ablative of Degree of Difference. The Ablative is employed after Comparatives and words implying comparison to express the Degree of Difference, LXXVIII, 3. Cf. also *biduō* **mē antecessit** (Cic.), *he preceded me by two days; mīlle passibus* **longius,** *a mile farther (farther by a mile).*

93. Ablative of Quality or Description. The Ablative, with an adjective or limiting Genitive, is used to denote quality, LV, 4. Cf. also **Dumnorix** *summā audāciā, Dumnorix,* (a man) *of the greatest boldness,* Chap. **18; hominēs** *inimīcō animō, men of hostile spirit.*

94. Ablative of Price. The Price of an object (definite value) is regularly denoted by the Ablative; Chap. **18,** 9. **vendidit** *aurō* **patriam,** *he sold his country for gold; māgnō* **vendidit,** *he sold at a high price; parvō pretiō, at a low price.*

For the Genitive of *indefinite value* see Chap. **20,** 14, 15.

95. Ablative of Specification. The Ablative (without a preposition) is used to show *in what respect* a statement is true. See XLVII, 2 and the examples there cited.

Rem. The supine in **ū** belongs to this construction. See on XXXVIII, 2.

96. Ablative of Place (Locative Ablative).

a. The place *in which* (*where*) is regularly denoted by **in** with the Ablative, Chap. **24,** 5. Cf. **est in** *prōvinciā,* LXVI; **quae in** *conventū* **dīxerat,** Chap. **18.**

b. The preposition (**in**) is omitted with certain designations of *place:* See LII, 1.

c. Names of towns, small islands, and a few common nouns, denote the place *where* by the Locative (**100**).

97. Ablative of Time.

a. The Ablative (without a preposition) is employed to designate time *when* or *within which,* XXXVII, 1.

b. The Ablative with **in** is sometimes used to express a *definite time* (or circumstance) and with **dē** to express *action begun during* the given time, as: — **dē** *mediā nocte, in* (i. e. *begun in*) *the middle of the night.*

c. For the Ablative expressing both Time and Cause see Chap. **18,** 23. For *Duration of* Time see **78** above.

98. Ablative Absolute. A noun (or pronoun) and participle, used

parenthetically in explanation, are regularly put in the Ablative. A noun or an adjective may take the place of the participle. For examples and translations of the Ablative Absolute see XIX, 2; XL. 3; L, 6; LXI, 2; LXIII, 4; Chap. **22**, 5.

99. Ablative with Prepositions. The following prepositions govern the Ablative:—

ā, ab, abs, *away from, by*	**ē, ex,** *out of*
absque, *without, but for*	**prae,** *in comparison with*
cōram, *in presence of*	**prō,** *in front of, for*
cum, *with*	**sine,** *without*
dē, *from*	**tenus,** *up to, as far as*

The following govern the Ablative when denoting *rest in* a place, but the Accusative if denoting *motion to* a place.

in, *into, in* **sub,** *under* **subter,** *beneath* **super,** *above*

In general these prepositions are to be construed as denoting relations of *time, cause, place,* etc.

Locative

100. The Locative case occurs only with the names of towns and small islands, and with a few common nouns as **domus, rūs, humus.**

The Locative has the same form as the Genitive in the singular of the first and second declensions; e. g. *Rōmae, at Rome; domī, at home.* In third declension nouns and in the plural of all declensions the Locative has the same form as the Dative or Ablative; e. g. *rūrī, in the country; Karthagine, at Carthage; Athēnīs, at Athens.*

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

101. The tenses of the verb are distinguished as:

a. Primary *or* Principal Tenses: i. e. those denoting present or future time, the Present, Perfect *with have,* Future, and Future Perfect.

b. Secondary *or* Historical Tenses: i. e. those denoting past time, the Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Historical Infinitive.

102. In subordinate clauses, the use of tenses follows the rule:

Primary tenses follow Primary tenses and Secondary tenses follow Secondary tenses. For a further statement with illustrative examples see supplementary lesson II.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE

The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences

103. Hortatory Subjunctive

The Subjunctive is used in commands and exhortations; e. g. **obsidēs dentur,** *let hostages be given;* **eāmus,** *let us go.*

Negative commands (prohibitions) addressed to a particular person or persons are regularly expressed, in classic Latin prose, in one of three ways:

a. by **nē** with the Perfect Subjunctive; e. g. **nē id fēceris,** *don't do this.*

b. by **nōlī,** or **nōlīte,** with Complementary Infinitive; e. g. **nōlī id facere.**

c. by **cave,** or **cavēte,** with the Present Subjunctive; e. g. **cave** (nē) **id faciās.**

But **nē** is followed by the Present Subjunctive if the prohibition is general.

104. Optative Subjunctive

The Subjunctive is used to express a wish or desire, sometimes without a conjunction, sometimes with **utinam, ut, ō sī,**—the present for desires relating to future time, the imperfect for desires unfulfilled in present time, the pluperfect for desires unfulfilled in past time; e. g. **utinam meī cīvēs beātī sint,** *may my fellow-citizens be prosperous!* **O sī Caesar adesset!** *would that Caesar were here!* **O sī Caesar adfuisset!** *would that Caesar had been here!*

105. Dubitative or Rhetorical Subjunctive

The Subjunctive is used in questions, not as to what *is*, but as to what *might be*, or *should be*. Such questions either imply doubt (dubitative), as **quid agam?** *what can I do?* or are asked for effect (rhetorical), being in reality strong statements; e. g. **hōc faciam? Minimē.** *Can I do this? By no means.*

106. Potential Subjunctive

The Potential Subjunctive is used to express in an *unemphatic* way the ideas expressed by the auxiliaries of the English Potential (may, can, might, could, would); e. g. **dīcam,** *I should say;* **forsitan quaerātis,** *perhaps you may inquire;* **quid facerem,** *what could I do?*

Rem. 1. The Potential Subjunctive is also explained as the apodosis (conclusion) of a conditional sentence in which the protasis is omitted but may be supplied from the context. Thus in the first example, by supplying the protasis, we have **(sī quid dīcam) dīcam,** *If I should say anything, I should say —.*

Rem. 2. The Dubitative and Potential Subjunctive are also used in dependent clauses, especially in indirect questions.

The Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses

107. Final (Purpose) Clauses.

a. Pure clauses of Purpose are introduced by **ut** (**utī**); negative clauses by **nē,** rarely by **ut nē.** XLVIII, 6; XLV, 4.

b. **Relative clauses of Purpose** are introduced by the relative pronoun (**quī**) or the relative adverbs (**ubi, unde,** etc.), the antecedent being expressed or implied in the main clause. LXVI, 2.

Rem. The Pure (**ut**) clause of purpose indicates the purpose of the action expressed by the main verb while the Relative clause connects the purpose with some special word (antecedent expressed or implied) in the main clause. The relative is equivalent to **ut** with a demonstrative, as, **mīsit explōrātōrēs quī** (**ut iī**) **vidērent,** etc.

c. **Quō** (=**ut eō**) rather than **ut** introduces a purpose clause, whenever that clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree. See LXI, 1. Cf. **mōntem ascendit quō** (**ut eō**) **facilius vidēret,** *he went up the mountain to see* (that he might see) *more easily.*

d. Substantive clauses of Purpose are Pure clauses (see above) which have the construction of Substantives, i. e. are used as subject, or as object, or in apposition. See L, 4.

e. Purpose clauses without **ut.** See Chap. **20,** 14, 15.

f. Negative clauses of Purpose after verbs of hindering etc. See Chap. **17,** 6–8.

g. After verbs and expressions of *Fear, Anxiety, Danger* **nē** is used to introduce an affirmative clause and **nē nōn** or **ut,** a negative clause; e. g. **vereor nē labōrem augeat,** *I fear that I shall increase the difficulty;* **timeō, ut labōrēs sustineat,** *I fear that you will not endure the troubles,* see Chap. **19,** 11.

108. Consecutive (Result) Clauses.

a. Pure clauses of Result are introduced by **ut,** negative **ut nōn.** LI, 3.

b. **Relative clauses of Result** are introduced by the relative pronoun (**quī**) or the relative adverbs (**ubi, unde,** etc.).

The distinction between the Pure clause of result and the Relative clause is the same as in Purpose clauses, **107,** *b, Rem.*

c. Substantive clauses of Result are Pure clauses (see *a* above) which have the construction of a substantive. See LXIV, 5.

d. After words of doubt and hindrance, and general negative expressions, result clauses are introduced by **quīn** (**quī nōn**) and **quōminus** (**quō**[=**ut eō**] **minus**); e. g. **nūlla fuit cīvitās quīn mitteret,** *there was no state which did not send;* **interclūdor quōminus plūra dīcam,** *I am prevented from saying more.*

109. Relative Clauses of Characteristic. The Subjunctive is used in Relative Clauses to *characterize* (by modifying, restricting, etc.) the antecedent, especially if the antecedent is *general* or *indefinite,* i. e. not otherwise defined, Chap. **27,** 7, 8.

Rem. Relative clauses take the Indicative when they qualify by making prominent the *fact* stated (or denied) of the antecedent, but the Sub-

junctive if designed to make prominent the *character*, *cause*, *hindrance*, etc. stated in the relative clause.

110. Causal Clauses.

a. Causal clauses (introduced by **quod, quia, quoniam, quando**) take the Indicative when the cause is given on the authority of the writer or speaker; the Subjunctive is used when the writer or speaker gives the cause on the authority of another, LIII, 5. Cf. **Socratēs accūsātus est quod iuventūtem corrumperet,** *Socrates was accused because* (as they said) *he corrupted the youth.*

b. A relative pronoun or adverb introduces a causal clause, when the relative is equivalent to a causal conjunction with a demonstrative pronoun; e. g. **fortis puer, quī** (**cum is**) **sē dēfendat,** *brave boy, since he defends himself.*

Rem. This is a variety of the Characteristic clause. See **109** above with Rem.

c. The Subjunctive is used with **cum** causal, to describe the main clause by denoting the cause, LXIII, 3. Cf. **quae cum ita sint,** *since these things are so.*

111. Temporal Clauses.

e. Clauses with **cum** take the Indicative if they merely define *the time* at which the main act or event took place; they require the Subjunctive (imperfect and pluperfect) if they characterize or describe *the situation* in which the main act or event took place.

Rem. **Cum** (at an earlier time **quom**) is a relative, differing originally from **quī** only in being restricted to an antecedent denoting the idea of *time.* This antecedent is some phrase like **id tempus, eō tempore, tum,** etc., expressed or implied.

The Subjunctive thus used is, in fact, a *characterizing Subjunctive* (see **109,** Rem. Thus it gives the *character of the time at which* the main act or event took place, or briefly the *situation.*

The situation in which an act takes place must, in the majority of cases, necessarily operate as contributing to cause that act or to prevent it. Hence the idea of cause or concession, which originally does not belong to the clause, becomes associated with it (causal or concessive clause of *situation*).

The use of **cum** temporal with the Indicative is comparatively rare except with the indefinite sense of *whenever.*

b. **Postquam, ut, ubi,** and **simul atque** are regularly used with the historical perfect or present indicative, in narration.

c. **Antequam** and **priusquam** introduce statements of *fact* in the Indicative, or of acts *foreseen* and naturally *expected* in the Subjunctive.

d. **Dum, donec,** and **quoad** (*while, until*) take the Subjunctive if they imply *purpose, doubt,* or *futurity;* otherwise they are followed by the Indicative, LVIII, 2.

Rem. The pupil should become familiar with the uses of **cum**, in order that the force of the word may be recognized *at sight*. If it is followed immediately by an ablative, it may with caution be inferred that **cum** is the preposition *with*. If it stands at the beginning of a clause and no ablative follows it, **cum** is a conjunction; as such it may define the time of the main clause and take the Indicative, or it may express the the situation, either with or without ideas of cause or concession, and take the Subjunctive.

112. Concessive (Although) Clauses.

a. **quamvīs, ut, nē,** and **licet** (an impers. verb) take the Subjunctive.

b. **cum** concessive takes the Subjunctive, LXXXII, 1.

c. The relative **quī** (when used to express concession) takes the Subjunctive.

d. **quamquam** introduces what is *granted to be a fact* and takes the Indicative.

e. **etsī, etiamsī, tametsī** (compounds of the conditional conjunction **sī**) are followed by the Indicative or Subjunctive according to the rules for Conditional clauses. See supplementary lesson I, *b–e*.

113. Provisional Clauses. Dum, modo, dummodo, indicating a Proviso, *if only, provided that*, take the Subjunctive. The negative is **nē**; e. g. **ōderint, dum metuant,** *let them hate, if only they fear.*

114. Indirect Questions.

a. A direct question is a question directly asked; e. g. **quot annōs nātus ēs?** *how many years have you been born (yow old are you)?* An indirect question is a question that has been incorporated in another sentence, its original structure being so changed, to fit the new sentence, that the question form is lost; e. g. **quaesīvit quot annōs nātus essem,** *he asked how old I was (how many years I had been born).*

b. Indirect questions require the Subjunctive. LXXII, 1.

115. Subjunctive Clauses in Indirect Discourse. For the Subjunctive in Subordinate clauses in Indirect discourse see LXX, 3, *a*. For the Subjunctive for an Imperative clause of Direct discourse see LXX, 3, *b*. For the Subjunctive for an Interrogative clause of Direct discourse see LXX, 3, *c*.

116. Subjunctive by Attraction. When a sentence or clause has its verb in the Subjunctive, all clauses subordinate to it regularly take the Subjunctive, being attracted into the mode of the leading verb. This principle is often disregarded when the subordinate verb expresses the notion of fact or certainty. Chap. **27**, 5.

117. Conditional Sentences. The classes of conditional Sentences with illustrative examples, are given in supplementary lesson I. The

following classification (as preferred by some) may be followed instead of the classification referred to above.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Present	Simple	Present Indicative.
	Contrary to fact	Imperf. Subjunctive.
Past	Simple	Past (Imperf. or Perfect) Indicative.
	Contrary to fact	Pluperf. Subjunctive.
Future	Vivid	Future (Fut. Perf.) Indicative.
	Less vivid	Present Subjunctive.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (ORATIO OBLIQUA)

118. A direct quotation repeats precisely the words of the original speaker or writer; e. g. **puer dīcit, "eō Rōmam,"** *the boy says, "I am going to Rome."* An indirect quotation repeats the thought of the original writer or speaker, but alters the language to suit the structure of the reporter's sentence; **puer dīcit sē īre Rōmam,** *the boy says that he is going to Rome.* An indirect quotation is thus seen to be the direct object of some verb of *saying*. *He says that he is going.* The same grammatical construction follows verbs of *thinking*, *perceiving*, *knowing*, and the like. The name, "Indirect Discourse" (**Orātiō Oblīqua**) is therefore given to this construction whether it is the object of a verb of *saying* or not.

a. Definition. See LXX, 1.

b. The verb of the principal clause is in the Infinitive, XX, 1; LXX, 2; the Subject in the Accusative.

c. All Subordinate clauses are Subjunctive, LXX, 3 *a*.

d. Imperative clauses (of Direct discourse) become Subjunctive, LXX, 3 *b*.

e. Interrogative clauses (of Direct discourse) become Subjunctive, LXX, 3 *c*.

f. Rhetorical questions (of Direct discourse) become Infinitive, LXX, 3 *c*.

119. Use of Tenses in Indirect Discourse.

a. The Infinitive Clause will take the Present, Perfect, or Future Infinitive, according as the time denoted is present, past, or future, in relation to the verb of saying (or thinking, etc.).

b. Subjunctive clauses have their tenses determined by the law of Sequence of Tenses (supplementary lesson II) and depend upon the verb of saying. If, however, the perfect infinitive occurs in the declarative clause, the subordinate verb is in the imperfect tense, even though the verb of saying is present; e. g. *He says that Caesar sent in order that he might see*, **dicit Caesarem mīsisse, ut vidēret.** Here **vidēret** seems to be attracted into a past tense by **mīsisse.** See examples, Lesson LXX.

INFINITIVE

120. Infinitive as Subject. The Infinitive, either with or without a subject accusative, may be the subject of a verb, Chap. **15**, 11–13; **hominem mentīrī turpe est,** *for a man to lie is disgraceful.*

Used thus, the Infinitive is a substantive, and may, like any substantive, stand also in apposition with the subject of a sentence, or be used as a predicate noun.

121. Infinitive as Object. The Infinitive with subject accusative may be used as Object with verbs of *perceiving*, *knowing*, *saying*, etc. (**verba sentiendī et dēclarandī**). This construction gives the Indirect Discourse (**118**).

122. Complementary Infinitive. Many verbs, such as **possum** (*I am able*), **audeō** (*I dare*), **coepī** (*I begin*), require an Infinitive to complete their meaning. The Infinitive so used is called the Complementary (completing) Infinitive, XXX, 1.

123. Historical Infinitive. The Infinitive is often used in narration with subject nominative, where it is to be translated like the Imperfect (or Perfect) Indicative. Used thus, it is called the Historical Infinitive, Chap. **16**, 2.

Rem. This may be explained as a complementary Inf. depending on some verb easily supplied from the connection.

PARTICIPLES

124. The Participle is a verbal adjective, governing the same cases as the verb. The time represented is *present*, *past*, or *future*, with reference to the main verb of the clause.

a. For inflection see **iēns,** App. **9**; **oriēns,** XV; **prūdēns,** Chart II.

b. Present Participle=Relative clause, Chap. **25**, 20.

c. Perfect Participle=Relative clause, XLVI.

d. Perfect=Conditional clause, XLIV, 3.

e. Perfect as co-ordinate clause, L, 8.

f. Perfect with **habēre,** Chap. **15**, 3, 4.

g. Perfect as temporal clause, Chap. **28**, 2, 3.

h. Future Participle with **sum** (Active Periphrastic), XXXVIII, 1.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

125. The Gerund is a verbal noun of the Second declension, neuter, found in the oblique cases of the singular only, XXV, 1. As a noun it is governed by another word, as a verb it governs other words, XXXII, 4 *a*.

126. The Gerundive is the future passive participle and, like all par-

ticiples, has the syntax of an adjective agreeing with (not governing) another word, XXXII, 4 *b*. For the Gerundive denoting *purpose* see LXXV, 2. For the Gerundive with **sum** forming the Passive Periphrastic conjugation see LIX, 5.

SUPINE

127. The Supine is a verbal noun (of the fourth declension) with an *active* meaning, used only in the accusative and ablative.

128. The Accusative of the Supine is used:

a. With **īrī** to form the future passive infinitive.

b. With verbs of motion to express purpose, LXIX, 1.

129. The Ablative of the Supine is used as an Ablative of Specification, chiefly with the adjectives **facilis, difficilis, honestus, turpis, crēdībilis, incrēdibilis, mīrābilis, optimus,** and a few others; and with the nouns **fās, nefās, opus,** XXXVIII, 2.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

This vocabulary, briefly defining each word employed in the text of the Helvetian war, is designed mainly as an index to words more fully treated in the special vocabularies which accompany each lesson.

In compound words prefixes are separated by a hyphen. The definitions given will enable the student easily to determine whether the prefix **in-** is the negative particle or the preposition meaning *on, against, over*, etc.

The declension can be distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular. The figures 1, 2, 4, placed after the first form of a verb indicate that the principal parts are formed just as in the model verbs **amō, moneō, audiō.** When a figure does not thus indicate the verb to be regular and all the principal parts are not given, it will be understood that those not given are rarely if ever found. The perfect passive participle, and not the supine, is employed as the last of the principal parts because the formation of the compound tenses of the passive voice is thus more easily explained, and also because, as has been shown, in a large proportion of Latin verbs, no supine is found. Roman numerals placed after the definitions indicate the lesson where the word is more fully treated. The references in bold-faced Arabic numerals are to chapters. The mastery of words given as they occur in the preceding lessons should make frequent reference to this vocabulary unnecessary.

For abbreviations see page 16.

A.

A., see **Aulus.**

ā, ab, *prep. c. abl.*, from, by. IV.

ab-dō, -ere, didī, ditus, put away, withdraw, hide. LXXIII.

ab-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead away. LXIX.

abs-tineō, -ēre, tinuī, tentus, hold from, keep from. **22.**

ab-sum, esse, fuī, be away *or* distant. V.

āc, see **atque,** V. (**āc** is used only before consonants.)

ac-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, go to, approach, be added.

ac-cidō, -ere, cidī, fall to *or* upon, befall, happen. LXXVIII.

ac-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō], take to, receive, accept. XXXVII.
ac-currō, -ere, currī *vel* (**cucurrī**), **cursus**, run *or* hasten to. **22.**
ac-cūsō [causa], (1), call to account, reprimand, accuse. **16.**
aciēs, -ēī, F., battle-line. **22.**
ācriter, sharply.
ad, *prep. c. acc.*, to, toward, against, near.
ad-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead *or* bring to, influence.
ad-gredior, see **aggredior.**
ad-hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, bring in, employ. **20.**
ad-mīror (1), wonder at, admire.
ad-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send to, let in, let go, allow.
ad-orior, orīrī, ortus, rise against, attack. LXXVI.
ad-scīscō, -ere, scīvī, scītus, take to, receive, adopt. L.
ad-sum, esse, fuī, be at hand *or* near, be present, assist.
ad-ventus, -ūs [veniō], M., a coming to, arrival, approach.
ad-versus, -a, -um (*perf. pass. part. of* **vertō**), turned to, over against, opposite, unfavorable.
ad-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn to *or* towards.
aedificium, -ī, N., a building. XLVII.
Aeduus, -ī, M., an Aeduan.
aegerrimē (**aegerrumē**), *adv., sup. of* **aegrē**, with the greatest difficulty.
Aemilius, -ī, M., *a Roman praenomen.*
aequō (1), make even *or* equal.
af-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus (**faciō**), do something to, treat, affect.
af-fīnitās, M., alliance by marriage. **18.**
ager, agrī, M., field, territory.
ag-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [ad + gradior, *step*], go to, approach, attack.
āgmen, -inis, N., an army *on the march.*
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, put in motion, drive, do, discuss. LXXVI.
aliēnus, -a, -um [**alius**], another's, foreign, unfavorable.
aliquī, -qua, -quod, some, any. LXVIII.
alius, -a, -ud, *adj. or pron.*, another, other (of any number).
Allobrogēs, -um, M., *a powerful Gallic people between the Rhone and Isere.*
alō, -ere, aluī, alitus (**altus**), nourish, sustain.
Alpēs, -ium (rarely **Alpis**), the Alps.
alter, -era, -erum, one (of two), the other.
altitūdō, -inis, F., [**altus**], height; depth.
altus, -a, -um, high, deep.
Ambarrī, -ōrum, M., *clients of the Aeduans between the Saone and Rhone.*
amīcitia, -ae [**amīcus**], F., friendship.
amīcus, -ī, M., friend.
ā-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send away, let go, lose.
amor, -ōris [**amō**], M., love, desire.
amplus, -a, -um, large *or* full (all round), ample.
anceps, -cipitis [**ambō**, *both* + **caput**, *head*], two-headed, two-fold, doubtful.
angustiae, -ārum [**angō**, *squeeze*], F., narrowness, a narrow pass *or* defile.
angustus, -a, -um [**angō**], narrow.
animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, attend to, punish. **19.**
animus, -ī, M., soul, mind, feeling, spirit, courage.
annus, -ī, M., a year.
annuus, -a, -um, for a year, annual.
ante, *adv. or prep. c. acc.*, before.
anteā, *adv.*, formerly. **17.**
antīquus, -a, -um [**ante**], ancient, former.
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, uncover, open, disclose.
ap-pellō (1), call (by name), address.
Aprīlis, -e, of April, April. LIV.

apud, *prep. c. acc.*, among, near, with.
Aquilēia, -ae, F. LXVII.
Aquitānī, -ōrum, M., the Aquitani, Aquitanians.
Aquitānia, -ae, F., Aquitania.
Arar, Araris, M., the Saone (a Gallic river).
arbitror (1) [**arbiter,** *a judge*], decide, think.
arma, -ōrum, N., armor, arms.
ascendō, -ere, scendī, scēnsus [**ad** + **scandō,** *climb*], climb up, ascend.
ascēnsus (ads-), -ūs, M., a climbing up, ascent.
atque (āc), and also, and.
attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus [**ad** + **tangō,** *touch*], touch *or* border upon, lie near to, reach.
auctōritās, -tātis, F., influence, authority, advice.
audācia -ae [**audāx**], F., boldness.
audācter, boldly.
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, be bold, dare.
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase.
Aulus (A.), Aulus, *a Roman praenomen.*
aut, or (*used when the difference is marked.* Cf. **vel**); **aut . . . aut,** either . . . or.
autem (**aut**), *conj.*, on the other hand, but, moreover.
auxilium, -ī [**āugeō**], N., help, aid; *in pl.*, auxiliaries.
ā-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn off *or* away.
avus, -ī, M., grandfather.

B.

Belgae, -ārum, M., *a powerful people of N. E. Gaul.*
bellō (1), make *or* wage war.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, full of war, warlike. LXVI.
beneficium, -ī, N., kindness, benefit. LXIV.
Bibracte, -is, N. **23.**
biduum, -ī, N., two days.
bi-ennium, -ī, N., [**annus**], two years.
bi-partītō (**pars**), *adv.*, in two divisions.
Biturigēs, -um, M. **18.**
Bōiī, -ōrum, M. L.
bonitās, -tātis, F., [**bonus**], goodness.
bonus, -a, -um, morally good, good.
brāchium (**bracch-**), **-ī,** N., the forearm. **25.**

C.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, fall.
Caesar, Caesaris, *full name* **Gāius Iulius Caesar.** See Historical Sketch.
Gāius (C.) *or* **Gāius (G.).** Caius *or* Gaius, *a Roman praenomen.*
calamitās, -tātis, F., disaster, defeat.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize.
caput, capitis, N., head.
carrus, -ī, M., cart.
Cassiānus, -a, -um, Cassian, pertaining to Cassius.
Cassius, -ī, M., *a Roman praenomen.*
castellum, -ī (*diminutive of* **castrum**), N., a small fort, fortress, redoubt.
Casticus, -ī, M. XXXIII.
castra, -ōrum [**castrum,** *fort*], N., a fortified camp, camp.
cāsus, -ūs [**cadō**], a falling, fall, accident, calamity, chance.
Catamantaloedes, -is, M., *a Sequanian chieftain.*
Caturigēs, -um, M. LXVIII.
causa, -ae, F., cause, reason.
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, take precaution. LXXVIII.
celeriter (**celerius, celerrimē**), quickly.
Celtae, -ārum, M., the Celts.
cēnsus, -ūs, M., enumeration. **29.**
Ceutronēs, -um, M. LXVIII.
centum, *indecl. num.*, one hundred

certus, -a, -um, sure, certain: **aliquem certiōrem facere**, *to inform some one.*
cibārius, -a, -um, pertaining to food; *as subst.*, **cibāria, -ōrum**, N., food, provisions.
circiter, *adv.*, about.
circuitus, -ūs [circum + eō], M., a going round, circuit.
circum, *prep. c. acc.*, around, about.
circum-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, surround. **25.**
citerior, -ōris, *comp. adj.* (*no. positive*), nearer, hither.
citrā, *adv. and prep. c. acc.*, this side, within.
cīvitās, -tātis, F., citizenship, state, citizens.
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, shut, close.
cliēns, -entis, M., F., client, dependent.
coemō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, purchase. XXX.
coepī, coepisse, *defect. verb*, began.
co-erceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, control. **19.**
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, drive together; collect; compel.
cōgnōscō, -ere, gnōvī, gnitus, learn thoroughly; *in pf.*, have learned, know.
co-hortor (1), urge earnestly, exhort, encourage.
colligō (1), bind together. **25.**
collis, -is, M., hill.
col-locō (1), place together, station. **18.**
col-loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak together, converse.
com-būrō, -ere, būssī, būstus, burn up, consume. XLVIII.
com-memorō (1), recount, state, mention.
commeō (1), resort to *or* visit (frequently).
com-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send together, commit, combine, join.
com-modē, conveniently. **25.**
commone-faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, remind forcibly. **19.**
com-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move deeply, disturb, excite.
com-mūniō (4), fortify completely, intrench.
com-mūtātiō, -ōnis, F., a changing, change.
com-mūtō (1), change entirely; reverse.
com-parō (1), prepare, furnish, equip.
com-periō, -īre, perī, pertus, ascertain. **22.**
com-plector, -ī, plexus sum, embrace. **20.**
com-pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētus, fill, fill up, complete. **24.**
complūrēs, -a (ia), several, many. LXI.
com-portō, bring *or* carry together.
cōnātum, -ī, N. (**cōnātus, -ūs**, M.) trial, attempt.
concēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, go away, give way, yield.
con-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus, cut down, slay. LXIII.
conciliō (1), call together, win over, conciliate.
concīlium, -ī, N., assembly, council.
con-cursus, -ūs, M., running together, onset. LXII.
con-diciō (ditio), **-ōnis**, F., [dīcō], a speaking together, agreement, terms.
con-dōnō (1), pardon. **20.**
con-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead *or* bring together, hire.
cōn-ferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, bring together, collect, compare; **sē cōnferre**, to retreat.
cōnfertus, -a, -um, crowded. **24.**
cōn-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus, do thoroughly, complete, accomplish.
cōn-fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, trust in, rely on. **23.**
cōn-firmō (1), make firm, establish, assure, promise.
cōniciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, throw together; conjecture. **26.**
con-iūrātiō, -ōnis F., [iūrō, *swear*], a swearing together, conspiracy.
cōnor (1), try, attempt.

con-quīrō, -ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, search out. 27.
cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, related by blood; *as subst.*, kinsman.
cōnscīscō, -ere, scīvī, scītus, decree, appoint.
cōn-scius, -a, -um [sciō], knowing with, conscious.
cōn-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write together, enroll, levy.
cōn-sequor, sequī, secūtus, follow up, pursue, obtain.
Cōnsidius, -ī, M. 21.
cōnsīdō, -ere, sēdī, sessus, settle, encamp. 21.
cōnsilium, -ī, N., counsel, plan.
cōn-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus, take a stand, stand still, stop.
cōn-sōlor (1), console, comfort, solace.
cōn-spectus, -ūs, M., [cōnspiciō, *see*], a looking at, sight.
cōn-spicor, (1), perceive. 25.
cōn-stituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [statuō, *set*], set together, arrange, determine.
cōn-suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus, accustom, habituate; *in pf.*, to have become accustomed, be wont.
cōnsul, -ulis, M., consul.
cōn-sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, destroy, consume. LXXI
con-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [tendō, *stretch*], stretch tight; strive, fight; hasten.
continentur [contineō], continuously.
con-tineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus [teneō, *hold*], hold together, bound.
contrā, *prep. c. acc. and adv.*, opposite, against.
contumēlia, -ae, F., affront, indignity.
con-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come together, meet, assemble; **convenit** (*impers.*), it is fitting, it is agreed.
conventus, -ūs, M., a coming together, assembly.
con-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn, change front, wheel about.
con-vocō, (1), call together, summon, assemble.
cōpia, -ae, F., plenty; *in pl.*, forces, troops.
cōpiōsus, -a, -um, well supplied, plentiful, abounding.
cotīdiānus (quo-), **-a, -um,** daily, usual.
cotīdiē, daily. 16.
Crassus, -ī, M. 21.
creō (1), create, elect, appoint.
cremō (1), burn to ashes, consume.
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, grow, increase.
cultus, -ūs [colō, *cultivate*], M., style of living, civilization, culture.
cum, *prep. c. abl.*, with.
cum (quum), *conj.*, when, since, although.
cupidē, eagerly.
cupidītās, -tātis, F., eager desire, longing, cupidity.
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous of, eager for.
cupiō, -ere, -īvī, (iī), **-ītus,** desire; favor. 18.
cūrō (1), care for. LXXV.
custōs, -ōdis, M., F., guard, sentinel. 20.

D.

damnō (1), condemn.
dē, *prep. c. abl.*, down from, from, for, concerning.
dēbeō [dē + habeō], have *or* keep from, owe, be bound.
decem, *indecl. num.*, ten.
dē-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus, entrap, deceive. LXXIX
decuriō, -ōnis, M. *the leader of a squad of ten cavalry*, a decurion.
dēdīticius, -a, -um, surrendered, *as subst.*, prisoner. 27.
dēditiō, -ōnis, F., a giving up, surrender.
dē-fendō, -ere, dī, -sus, keep *or* ward off, defend.
dēfessus, -a, -um, [*pf. part. of* dēfetīscor], wearied, exhausted.
dē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, throw *or*

cast down, dislodge.
de-inde, *adv.*, from thence, then.
dē-līberō (1), ponder, deliberate. LVIII.
dē-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus [**legō**, *choose*], pick out, select.
dē-minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**minus**, *less*], lessèn, diminish.
dē-mōnstrō, (1), show plainly, point out.
dēmum, *adv.*, at length. 17.
dēnique, *adv.*, at length, lastly. 22.
dē-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, place *or* lay aside. LXXIX.
dē-populor (1), ravage, lay waste.
dē-precātor, -ōris, M. mediator. LXIII.
dē-sīgnō (1), signify. 18.
dē-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus, stand off; abandon. LXII.
dē-spērō (1), [**spēs**, *hope*], be hopeless, despair.
dēspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus, look down on, despise. LXXVI.
dē-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [**statuō**], set aside, forsake, abandon.
dē-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus [**stringō**, *draw*], draw off, unsheathe, draw.
dē-terreō (2), frighten off, deter, discourage.
deus, -ī, M. a god.
dexter, -tra (**tera**), **-trum**, the right; **dextra** (*sc.* **manus**, *hand*), the right hand.
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell, speak.
dictiō, -ōnis, F., a speaking, pleading, delivery.
diēs, -ēī, M. F. day; a set day *or* time.
dif-ferō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus (**dis**), carry *or* bear apart, differ, defer.
dif-ficilis, -e [**dis** + **facilis**], not easy, difficult.
dī-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send apart, dismiss.
dis-, dī-, *an inseparable prefix with the force of* apart, asunder.
dis-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, go apart, separate.
discō, -ere, didicī, learn.
dis-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, throw apart, cast asunder.
dis-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, place apart, arrange. LX.
ditissimus, -a, -um (*sup. of* **dīs**), richest.
diū, *adv.*, for a long time.
diūturnus, -a, -um [**diū**], of long duration, long.
Diviciacus, -ī, M. *a chief of the Aedui.*
Divicō, -ōnis, M. *a Helvetian chief.*
dī-vidō, -ere, vīsī, vīsus, divide, separate.
dō, dare, dedī, datus, give.
doleō (2), suffer pain, grieve.
dolor, -ōris, M. pain, grief.
dolus, -ī, M. treachery deceit.
domus, -ūs, house, home; **domī**, at home.
dubitō, (1), doubt, hesitate.
dubitātiō, -ōnis, F. hesitation. LXXVIII.
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful.
du-centī, -ae, -a [**duo**], two hundred.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, draw, consider.
dum, *conj.*, while, until.
Dumnorix, -īgis, M. *an Aeduan chieftain.*
duo, duae, duo, two.
duo-decim, (**decem**), *indecl. num.* twelve.
dux, ducis [**dūcō**], M. F. leader, guide.

E.

ē, ex, *prep. c. abl.*, from, out of.
ē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead forth, draw out.
effēminō, (1), weaken, enervate.
ef-ferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus, bear away *or* out, lift up, elate.
ego, I (*dat.*, **mihi**, *acc.*, **mē**).
ē-gredior, -ī, gressus sum, go out, march forth. 27.
ē-gregius, -a, -um, preeminent. 19.

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy. **16.**
ē-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send forth; discharge. **25.**
enim, *conj.*, for. LXXXI.
ē-nūntiō, (1) tell out, reveal, report.
eō, īre, īvī, itus, go.
eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
eques, equitis [**equitō,** *ride*], rider, horseman, knight; *in pl.*, cavalry.
equester, -tris, -tre [**eques**], belonging to a horseman, cavalry, equestrian.
equitātus, -ūs, M. cavalry. LXXXV.
equus, -ī, M. horse.
ē-ripiō, -ere, repuī, reptus [**rapiō**], snatch away, rescue; **sē ēripere,** to escape.
et, and.
etiam, [*conj.*], and also, even.
ē-vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsus, pull *or* tear out.
ex, see **ē.**
exemplum, -ī, N. example.
exercitus, -ūs [**exerceō,** *exercise*], an exercised, trained body; an army.
ex-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus, go out.
ex-īstimō (1) reckon, think. LIII.
ex-īstimātiō, -ōnis, F. opinion, **20.**
ex-pediō (4) [**pēs,** *foot*], extricate; *in pf. pass. part.*, unencumbered, (*of troops*) light armed.
explōrātor, -ōris, M. [**explōrō,** *investigate*], scout, spy, reconnoitrer.
ex-pūgnō (1), take by storm, overpower. LXIX.
ex-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow out *or* up, enforce.
ex-spectō (1), look out, await, expect.
extrā, *adv. and prep. c. acc.*, without, beyond.
extrēmus, -a, -um (**exter, exterus**), outermost, furthest, extreme.
ex-ūrō, -ere, ūssī, ūstus, burn up. XLIX.

F.

facile, easily.
facilis, -e, easy.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, make, do.
facultās, -tātis, F. [**faciō,**], means *or* opportunity of doing, opportunity.
famēs, -is, F. hunger, want.
familia, -ae, F. slaves of a household, household, retinue.
familiāris, -e [**familia**], belonging to the household, private; *as subst.*, friend. **rēs familiāris,** private property.
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus, favor.
ferē, *adv.*; almost.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, bring.
ferrum, -ī, N. iron.
fidēs, -ēī, F. confidence, faith; assurance of good faith, protection.
fīlia, -ae, F. daughter.
fīlius, -ī, M. son
fīnis, -is, M. end, limit, boundary; *in pl.*, territory, confines.
fīnitimus, -a, -um [**fīnēs**], bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; *as subst.*, neighbors.
fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made *or* done, happen; *used as pass. of* **faciō.**
fīrmus, -a, -um, strong, firm.
flāgitō (1), demand repeatedly, press for.
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, weep.
flūmen, -inis, N. [**fluō**], a flowing stream, river.
fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, flow.
fortis, -e, strong, brave.
fortitūdō, -inis, F. [**fortis**], bravery.
fortūna, -ae [**fors**], chance, fortune; *in pl.*, goods, possessions.
fossa, -ae F. [**fodiō,** *dig*], ditch, trench.
frāter, frātris, M. brother.
frāternus, -a, -um, pertaining to a brother, brotherly, fraternal.
frīgus, -oris N. coldness, cold.
frūctus, -ūs, M. enjoyment, crops, fruit.

frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum], abounding in grain, fruitful.
frūmentum, -ī, N. grain.
fuga, -ae, F. [fugiō, *flee*], flight.
fugitīvus, -ī, M. deserter. 23.

G.

Gabinius, -ī, M. *a Roman nomen.*
Gallia, -ae, F. Gaul.
Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic.
Gallus, -ī, M. a Gaul.
Garumna, -ae, M. the Garonne, *a river of Gaul.*
Genāva (Genua), -ae, F. Geneva.
Germānī, -ōrum, M. the Germans.
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, carry on, wage, do.
gladius, -ī, M. sword. 25.
glōria, -ae, F. glory.
glōrior, (1) glory, boast.
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek, Grecian.
Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M. LXVIII.
grātia, -ae, F. favor, popularity.
graviter (gravis), heavily, severely: **graviter ferre,** be annoyed *or* vexed.

H.

habeō (2), have, hold.
Helvētia, -ae, F. Helvetia, *now Switzerland.*
Helvētiī, -ōrum, M. the Helvetii, Helvetians.
Helvētius (Helvēticus), -a, -um, of the Helvetii, Helvetian.
hīberna, -ōrum, N. winter quarters. LXVII.
hīc, haec, hōc, this.
hiemō (1) [hiems], pass the winter, winter.
Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain.
homō, -inis, M. F. a human being *as a specimen of the race,* man.
honor, -ōris, M. honor, distinction, office.
hōra -ae, F. hour.
hortor (1), arouse, urge.
hostis, -is, stranger, (public) enemy; *in pl.,* the enemy.
hūmānitās, -tātis, F. refinement.

I.

iactō, (1), toss, discuss. 18.
iam, *adv.,* now, at length.
ibi, *adv.,* in that place, there.
ictus, -ūs [icō, *strike*], stroke, blow.
īdem, eadem, idem, the same.
Īdūs, -uum, F. *pl.,* the Ides. LVIII, LXIII.
īgnis, -is, M. fire.
īgnōrō, (1) [in, *neg.,* + gnārus, *knowing*], not know, be ignorant.
ille, illa, illud, that *used of what is remote.*
illic (ille), *adv.,* there. 18.
im-mortālis, -e, immortal. LXXIV.
im-pedimentum, -ī, N. [pēs], impediment, hindrance; *in pl.,* heavy baggage, baggage-train.
im-pediō (4), obstruct, hamper. LXXIII.
im-pendeō, -ēre [pendeō, *hang*], overhang, impend.
imperium, -ī, N. a command, right of command, supreme power.
imperō (1), command, enjoin, make requisition for.
impetrō(1), obtain by entreaty, accomplish.
im-petus, -ūs [peto], M. attack, assault.
im-portō (1), bring in, import.
im-probus, -a, -um, base, wicked. 17.
im-prōvīsō [prō + vīsus, *seen*], *adv.,* unawares, unexpectedly.
impūne [in + poena, *punishment*], *adv.,* without punishment, with impunity.
impūnitās, -tātis, F. freedom from punishment, impunity.
in, *prep. c. acc.* (*of motion*), into, to, against, *c. abl.* (*of rest*), in, on, over.
in- (**im-, un-** etc.), *inseparable negative particle,* not.
in-cendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, set fire to.

in-citō (1) [**citō**, *urge*], urge on, incite.
in-colō, -ere, -uī, cultus [**colō**, *cultivate*], dwell in, inhabit.
in-commodum, -ī, N. [**commodus**, *convenient*], an inconvenience, disadvantage, disaster.
in-crēdibilis, -e, [**crēdō**, *believe*], incredible. LXXII.
inde, *adv.*, from that place, thence.
indicium, -ī, N. information, evidence.
in-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead in *or* into, lead on, induce.
īnferior, -ius [**īnferus**], lower, *in place;* later, *in time.*
īn-ferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, bring into *or* upon, wage upon, attack.
īn-flecto, -ere, flēxī, flectus, bend in, curve. 25.
īn-fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluctus, flow into, flow.
in-imīcus, -a, -um [**amīcus**], unfriendly.
initium, -ī, N. [in + eo], beginning.
iniūria, -ae, F. [**iūs**, *right*], wrong, injustice.
iniūssū, *abl. of assumed* **iniūssus**, without command. 19.
inopia, -ae, need. 27.
in-opīnāns, -antis, unawares. LXXIII.
īn-sciēns, -entis, [**sciō**, *know*], not knowing, unaware.
īn-sequor, sequī, secūtus, follow up, pursue.
īnsidiae, -ārum, F. ambuscade, treachery. LXXVII.
in-signis, -e, remarkable; *as subst.*, sign, decoration. LXXIV.
īnsolenter, insultingly. LXXX.
īn-stituō, -ere, tuī, tūtus, set up, establish. LXXXII.
īnstitūtum, -ī, N. an established course, custom, institution.
īn-stō, stāre, stitī, stātus, stand upon *or* near, approach, attack.
īn-struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus, build, draw up. 22.
intellegō, (ligō), -ere, lēxī, lēctus, learn, understand. LXVI.
inter, *prep. c. acc.* between, among.
inter-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, go between, interpose, intercede.
inter-clūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus, shut off. 23.
inter-diū, *adv.*, during the day, by day.
inter-dum, *adv.*, between whiles, sometimes.
intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile.
inter-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus, kill. LXXIII.
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.
inter-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, leave *or* break off, interrupt.
inter-neciō, -ōnis, F., extermination. LXXVII.
interpres, -etis, M. F. interpreter.
inter-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be between, intervene.
inter-vāllum, -ī, N. [**vallum**, *rampart*], interval.
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *dem. pron.*, self, himself, herself, etc.
is, ea, id, *dem. pron.*, this, that, he, she, it.
ita, *adv.*, so, thus.
Ītalia, -ae, F. Italy.
itaque, *conj.* and so, therefore.
item, *adv.*, in like manner, likewise, so also.
iter, itineris, N. [**eō**, *go*], a going; way, journey, march.
iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus, order.
iūdicium, -ī, N. a judging, judgment, court.
iūdicō (1), judge. LXXII.
iugum, -ī, N. yoke; ridge.
iūmentum, -ī, N. yoke *or* draught animal, beast of burden.
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join. LXI.
Iūra, -ae, M. *The mountain range running from the Rhine to the Rhone.*
iūs, iūris, N. right, justice, law.
iūs-iūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, N. oath. XL.
iūstitia, -ae, F. justice. 19.
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid.
iuvat, *impers.* it pleases.

K.

Kalendae (Calendae), -ārum, F. The Calends, the first day of a month. LIV.

L.

L. see **Lūcius.**
Labiēnus, -ī, M. Caesar's lieutenant.
lacessō, -ere, -īvī, -itus, provoke, challenge, assault.
lacrima, -ae, F. tear.
lacus, -us, M. lake.
largior (4) **(largus),** give freely, bribe.
largiter, largely, freely.
largītiō, -ōnis, F. giving freely, bribery.
lātē (lātus), broadly, widely.
lātitūdō, -inis, F. [**lātus**], width.
Latovīcī, -ōrum, M. LI.
lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide.
latus, -eris, N. side, flank. **25.**
lēgātiō, -ōnis, F. embassy.
lēgātus, -ī, M. ambassador, lieutenant. LVI.
legiō, -ōnis, F. legion. LV.
Lemannus, -ī, M. *lake* Leman *or* Geneva.
lenitās, -tātis, F. smoothness, gentleness. LXXII.
lēx, lēgis, F. law.
līberalitās, -tātis, F. generosity, liberality.
līberē, freely. **18.**
līberī, -ōrum, children. LXIX.
lībertās, -tātis, F. freedom, liberty.
liceor (2), bid *at an auction.*
licet, -ēre, licuit, *impers.*, it is permitted. LVI.
Lingonēs, -um, M. the Lingones. **26.**
lingua, -ae, F. tongue, language.
linter, lintris, F. canoe, ferry-boat.
Liscus, -ī, M. *a chief of the Aedui.*
littera (lītera), -ae, F. a letter of the alphabet, a written character.
locus, -ī, M. place; *in nom. and acc. pl.*, **loca.**
longē [longus], *adv.*, far, by far, long.
longitūdō, -inis, F. [**longus**], length.
loquor, -ī, locūtus, speak.
Lūcius (L), -ī, *a Roman praenomen.*
lūx, lūcis, light. **22.**

M.

M, see **Marcus.**
magis, *compar. adv.*, more, rather; *sup.*, **māximē.**
magistrātus, -ūs, M. magistracy; magistrate.
māgnopere, *adv.*, greatly, especially. LXXVI.
māgnus, -a, -um, great, large; *comp.* **māior,** *sup.* **māximus.**
maleficium, -ī, N. mischief, wickedness. LVII.
mandō (1), entrust; order. LXXIII.
manus, -ūs, F. hand; armed force. *regarded as the instrument of war.*
Marcus, -ī, M. *a Roman praenomen.*
matara, -ae, F. a Gallic javelin.
māter, mātris, F. mother, matron.
mātrimōnium, -ī, N. marriage.
Mātrona, -ae, M. the Marne.
mātūrō (1), ripen; hasten.
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, complete, early.
māximē [māgnus], *sup. adv.*, very greatly, most, especially.
māximus, see **māgnus.**
mē (*acc. of* **ego**), me.
medius, -a, -um, in the middle, mid.
memoria, -ae, F. recollection, memory.
mēnsis, -is, M. month.
mercātor, -ōris, M. merchant.
mereor (2), deserve, earn, merit.
meritum, -ī, N. desert, merit.
Messāla, -ae, M. XVIII.
metior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, measure.
mihi, see **ego.**
mīles, -itis, M. F. soldier.
mīlitāris, -e, pertaining to a soldier, military.

mīlle, *num. adj.*, a thousand; *in pl. as subst.*, **mīlia (mīllia), -ium,** etc.; **mīlle passuum,** a mile.
minimē, *adv.*, least, by no means.
minimus, -a, -um (*sup. of* **parvus,** *small*), least, very little.
minor (*comp. of* **parvus**), smaller, less.
minuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**minus**], make smaller, lessen.
minus, *adv.* [**minor**], less.
mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send.
modo, *adv.* [**modus**], only.
molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, grind.
moneō (2), advise, remind, warn, admonish.
mōns, -tis, M. mountain.
morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum, die.
moror (1), tarry, delay.
mors, -tis [**morior**], death.
mōs, mōris, M. manner, custom; *in pl.*, customs, character.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move.
mulier, mulieris, F. woman.
multitūdō, -inis, F. [**multus**], great number, multitude.
multus, -a, -um, much; *in pl.*, many.
mūniō, (4), [**moenia,** *walls*], build a wall, fortify.
mūnītiō, -onis, F. fortification. LXII.
mūrus, -ī, M. wall.
nam, *conj.*, for.
Nammēius, -ī, M. LVI.
nātūra, -ae, F. nature, character.
nāvis, -is, F. ship.
nē, *conj.*, not, to, that . . . not, lest; *after words of fearing*, that.
-ne, *enclitic, interrog. particle.*
nec, see **neque.**
necessāriō, *adv.*, necessarily, unavoidably.
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary, *as subst.* kinsman, client, friend.
negō (1), say no, deny
nēmō, -inis, M. F. no one. 18.
neque (nec), *as adv.*, not; *as conj.*, and not, and also. **neque . . . neque,** neither . . . nor.
nervus, -ī, M. sinew, tendon, nerve; *in pl.* power, strength.
neve (neu), *adv.*, and not, nor. 26.
nex, necis, F. death. 16.
nihil (nihilum), *indecl. noun*, nothing.
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless.
nītor, -ī, nīsus *vel* **nīxus sum,** rest upon, rely upon, strive.
nōbilis, -e [**nōscō,** *know*], famous, high-born, noble.
nōbilitās, -tātis, F. nobility; nobles.
noctū (nox), *adv.*, by night.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [**nē**+**volo**], not wish, be unwilling.
nōmen, -inis, N. name.
nōminātim, *adv.*, by name.
nōn, *adv.*, not.
nōnāgintā, *card. num.*, ninety.
nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.
nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, not , none, some, *in pl. as subst.* some, several.
nōn-numquam, *not never:* sometimes.
Nōrēia, -ae, F. L.
Nōricus, -a, -um, of the Norici, Norican.
nōs, (*nom. and acc. pl. fr.* **ego**), we; us.
noster, -tra, -trum [**nōs**], our, ours.
novem, *card. num.*, nine.
novus, -a, -um, new; **novae rēs,** new state of affairs; revolution.
nox, noctis, F. night.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, veil one's self *as for marriage*, marry.
nūdus, -a, -um, naked, exposed, unprotected.
nūllus, -a, -um [**nē**+**ūllus,** *any*], not any, no, none.
num, *interrog. particle implying a neg. answer.*
numerus, -ī, M. number.
nūntiō (1), report, announce.
nūntium, -ī, N. report, message.
nūntius, -ī, M. one who reports, messenger.
nūper, recently.

O.

ob, *prep. c. acc.*, in front, before, on

account of.
ob-aerātus, -ī, M. one involved in debt; debtor.
ob-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, throw in front, oppose. 26.
oblīviscor, -ī, oblītus sum, forget.
ob-secrō (1) [**sacer,** *sacred*], beseech, implore.
ob-ses, -idis, M. F. hostage, LXIV.
ob-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus, bind. LXIV.
ob-tineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, hold, possess.
occāsus, -ūs, M. falling, setting.
oc-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus [**caedō,** *cut*], cut off, kill, slay.
oc-cultō (1) hide, conceal.
occupō (1) [**capiō**], take possession of, seize, occupy.
Oceanus, -ī, M. ocean.
Ocelum, -ī, N. a city of Gallia Cisalpina.
octō, *card. num.*, eight.
octōdecim, eighteen.
octōgintā, eighty.
oculus, -ī, M., eye.
ōdī, ōdisse, *def. verb*, hate. 18.
of-fendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, strike against, stumble, offend.
offēnsiō, -ōnis, F. a striking against, offence.
omnīnō [**omnis**], *adv.*, altogether, in all.
omnis, -e, all, every.
oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers. verb*, it is necessary, one ought.
oppidum, -ī, N. stronghold, town.
op-pūgnō, (1.) fight against, storm.
ops, opis (*not found in nom. sing.*), power, strength; *in pl.* resources, means.
opus, -eris, N. work.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. (ōrō), speaking, oration.
Orgetorīx, -īgis, M. a chief of the Helvetii.
oriēns, -entis [**orior**], rising.
orior, -īrī, ortus sum, rise.
ōrō (1), speak, plead, entreat.
os-tendō, -ere, -ī, -tus [**tendō,** *stretch*], expose to view, exhibit.

P.

pābulātiō, -ōnis, F. foraging. 15.
pābulum, -ī, N. food, fodder.
pācō, (1) [**pāx**], pacify, subdue.
paene, *adv.*, almost.
pāgus, -ī, M. canton, district.
pār, paris, equal.
parātus, -a, -um [**parō**], prepared, ready.
pāreō (2), obey.
parō (1), prepare, provide.
pars, -tis, F. part, direction.
parvus, -a, -um (*comp.* **minor,** *sup,* **minimus**), small, little.
passus, -ūs, M., step, pace (five Roman feet); **mīlle passus,** a mile.
pateō, -ēre, -uī, open, extend.
pater, patris, M. father.
patior, patī, passus sum, suffer, permit.
paucī, -ae, -a, few.
pāx, pācis, F. peace.
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, drive, beat.
per, *prep. c. acc.*, through, by means of.
per-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead through.
perfacilis, -e, very easy.
per-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], do thoroughly, accomplish, complete.
per-fringō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, break through. 25.
perfuga, -ae, M. deserter.
per-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, flee, desert.
perīculum, -ī, N. danger, risk.
perītus, -a, -um [**perior**], experienced, practised, skilled.
per-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move thoroughly, rouse. XXIX.
perniciēs, -ēī, F. destruction.
per-paucus, -a, -um, very little, very few.
per-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, break through.
per-sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, follow after, pursue.
persevērō (1), continue, persist.
per-solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, pay in full. LXXIV.

per-suādeō, -ēre, -sī, -sus, convince, persuade.
per-terreō (2), frighten thoroughly.
per-tineō, -ēre, -uī, reach through, tend, pertain.
per-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come through, arrive.
pēs, pedis, M. foot.
petō, -ere, -īvī (iī), -ītus, attack, aim at, seek.
phalanx, -gis, F. phalanx. **24.**
pīlum, -ī, N. javelin. **25.**
Pīsō, -ōnis, M. XVIII.
plēbs, plēbis (plēbēs, -ēī), F. common people, plebeians.
plūrimus, -a, -um (*sup. of* **multus**), very much, most, very many.
plūs, plūris (*comp. of* **multus**), more.
poena, -ae, F. punishment, penalty.
polliceor (2), promise.
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, put, place. LXXXVII.
pōns, -ntis, M. bridge.
populātiō, -ōnis, F. ravaging. **15.**
populor (1), devastate. LXIX.
populus, -ī, M. people.
portō (1), carry, bring.
portōrium, -ī, N. tax, tariff. **18.**
poscō, -ere, poposcī, demand. **27.**
possessiō, -ōnis, F. possession.
possum, posse, potuī [**potis,** *able* + **sum**], be able, can.
post, *prep. c. acc.*, behind, after.
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards. **21.**
posterus, -a, -um, following. LXXXV.
post-quam, *conj.*, after that, after, as soon as.
postrīdiē, *adv.*, on the day after. **23.**
potēns, -ntis, being able, powerful.
potentia, -ae, F. power, ability.
potestās, -tātis, F. power. **16.**
potior, -īrī, potītus sum, get *or* obtain possession of.
prae-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, go before, surpass, precede.
prae-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus, take in advance, give precepts, order.
prae-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear before, choose, prefer.
prae-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus, set before *or* over, place in command.
prae-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send before *or* in advance.
prae-optō (1), choose rather, prefer.
praesentia, -ae, F. the present moment. **15.**
praesertim, especially.
prae-sidium, -ī, N. protection, guard, garrison.
prae-stō, stāre, stitī, stitus, stand before; excel; present, furnish.
prae-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be before *or* over, command.
praeter, *prep. c. acc.*, past by, beyond, except.
praeter-eō, īre, īvī, (iī), itus, go by *or* beyond. *as subst.* **praeterita, -ōrum,** the past.
praeter-quam, *adv.*, except that, beyond, save.
prae-tor, -ōris, M. commander; governor; judge. **22.**
prēndō (**prehendō**), **-ere, -dī, -sus,** lay hold of, grasp.
pretium, -ī, N. price. **18.**
prex, precis, F. prayer. **16.**
prīdiē, *adv.*, on the day before. **23.**
prīmum, *adv.*, in the first place, first.
prīmus, -a, -um, *superl. adj.*, first.
prīnceps, -ipis, chief, *as subst.*, chief, leader.
prīncipātus, -ūs, M. leadership, chief position.
prīstinus, -a, -um, former.
prius, *comp. adv.*, sooner.
prius-quam, *adv.*, sooner than, before that. **19.**
prīvātim, privately, as private citizens.
prīvātus, -a, -um, private, personal.
prō, *prep. c. abl.*, before, for, in behalf of, in proportion to.
probō (1), try, prove, approve.
prō-dō, -ere, didī, ditus [**dō,** *give*], transmit, hand down.
proelium, -ī, N. battle.
profectiō, -ōnis, F. setting out, departure.

proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum, set out, depart.
pro-hibeō (2), keep from, prohibit.
prō-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, throw forth, cast down. **27.**
prope, *adv. and prep. c. acc.*, near.
prō-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus, drive before, propel.
propīnquus, -a, -um, near, neighboring; *as subst.* relative, kinsman.
prō-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, place *or* set forth, declare.
propter, *prep. c. acc.*, on account of.
propter-eā, *adv.*, for this reason.
prō-spiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus, look forth, look out for.
prōvincia, -ae, F. province.
proximē, *adv.* (**prope**), next, nearest, last.
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, last.
pūblicē, publicly, at state cost. **16.**
pūblicus, -a, -um, public.
Pūblius, -ī, (P.) M. a Roman praenomen.
puer, -ī, M. child, boy.
pūgna, -ae, F. fight, battle.
pūgnō (1), fight. **25.**
pūrgō (1), clear, acquit. **28.**
putō (1), compute, reckon, think.
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, of the Pyrenees, Pyrenean.

Q.

quā, *adv.*, where.
quadrāgintā, *card. num.*, forty.
quadringentī, -ae, -a, four hundred.
quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī (iī), quaesītus, seek.
quālis, -e, of what sort.
quam, *adv.* and *conj.*, how, as, than; *c. sup.*, as possible.
quantus, -a, -um, how great; **tantus . . . quantus,** so great . . . as.
quā-rē, *adv.*, wherefore. LXXVII.
quartus, -a, -um, fourth.
quattuor, *card. num.*, four.
-que, *enclitic*, and.
queror, -ī, questus sum, complain.
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron. and interrog. adj.*, who, which, what, that.
quidem, indeed; **nē . . . quidem,** not even.
quīn, *conj.* [quī+nē], that not, but that; *after expressions of doubt*, that.
quīndecim, *card. num.*, fifteen.
quīngentī, -ae, -a, five hundred.
quīnī, -ae, -a, *distr.*, five each, five. **15.**
quīnque, *card. num.*, five.
quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.
quis, quae, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? *as indef.*, any one, anything.
quis-quam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), any one, anything.
quis-que, quaeque, quidque (quodque), each one, every one, each, every.
quod, *conj.*, because.
quoque, *conj.*, also.
quum, see **cum.**

R.

rapīna, -ae, F. plunder, rapine. **15.**
ratiō, -ōnis, F. reckoning, plan, reason. **28.**
ratis, -is, F. raft.
Rauricī, -ōrum, M. L.
re- (**red-**), *inseparable prefix with the force of*, back, again.
recēns, -entis, fresh, recent.
re-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus, take back, receive.
red-eō, īre, iī, itus, go back, return.
red-imō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus (**emō,** *buy*), buy back, buy up.
red-integrō (1), restore, renew.
red-itiō, -ōnis, F. going back, return.
re-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead back, withdraw.
re-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bring *or* carry back, report.

rēgnum, -ī, N. (**rēx**), sovereignty, royal power.
rē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, throw back. **24.**
re-linquō, -ere, līquī, lictus, leave behind, abandon.
re-liquus, -a, -um, the rest of, remaining; *as subst.* remainder.
re-miniscor, -ī, call to mind, remember.
removeō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move back.
re-nūntiō (1), bring back word, report.
re-pellō, -ere, reppulī, pulsus, drive back, repulse.
repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden, unexpected.
re-periō, -īre, repperī, repertus, find out, discover.
re-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, hold back, blame, censure.
re-pūgnō (1), fight back, resist.
rēs, reī, F. thing, affair, matter.
re-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus, cut off, break down.
re-sciscō, -ere, scīvī (scii), scītus, learn. **28.**
re-sistō, -ere, stitī, stand back, stop, resist.
re-spondeō, -ēre, -dī, -sus, answer, reply. LX.
respōnsum, -ī, N. reply.
rēs-pūblica (rēspūblica), reī pūblicae, F. state. **20.**
re-stituō, -ere, -uī, ūtus, set up again, restore.
re-tineō, -ēre, uī, tentus [teneō], hold back, retain.
re-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, turn back, return; **revertor, -ī,** *dep., is generally used in the tenses of incomplete action.*
Rhēnus, -ī, M. the Rhine.
Rhodanus, -ī, M. the Rhone.
rīpa, -ae, F. bank *of a river.*
rogō (1), ask.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman: *as subst.,* **Rōmānī, -ōrum,** the Romans.
rota, -ae, F. wheel.
rūrsus, *adv.,* again.

S.

saepe, *adv.,* often.
salūs, -ūtis, F. safety. **27.**
Santonēs, -um (ī, -ōrum), M. LXVI.
sarcinae, -ārum, F. soldiers' packs, luggage. **24.**
satis, *adv. and adj.,* sufficiently, enough, sufficient.
satis-faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, do enough, satisfy, make amends.
scelus, -eris, N. crime.
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know.
scūtum, -ī, N. shield.
sēcrētō, *adv.,* secretly, in private.
secundus, -a, -um, second, following, favorable.
sed, *conj.,* but.
sēdecim [sex], sixteen.
sēditiōsus, -a, -um, seditious.
Segūsiāvī, -ōrum, M. LXVIII.
sēmentis, -is, F. sowing, planting.
semper, *adv.,* always.
senātus, -ūs, M. senate.
senex, senis, old, *as subst.* old man.
sēnī, -ae, -a, *distr.,* six each, six. **16.**
sentiō, -īre, -sī, -sus, be sensible of, feel, perceive, think.
sēparātim, separately. **19.**
septentriōnēs, -um (septentriō, -ōnis), M. seven stars, the Great Bear, the North.
septimus, -a, -um, seventh.
sepultūra, -ae, F. burial. **26.**
Sēquana, -ae, M. the Seine.
Sēquanī, -ōrum, M. the Sequani, Sequanians.
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, follow.
servitūs, -ūtis, F. slavery. LXIX.
servus, -ī, M. slave.
seu, see **sīve.**
sex, six.
sexāgintā, sixty.
sī, if.
sīgnum, -ī, N. signal, standard. **25.**
silva, -ae, F. forest.
simul, *adv.,* at the same time, at once.
sīn, but if. LXXVI.
sine, *prep. c. abl.,* without.
singulī, -ae, -a, *distr.,* one at a

time, one by one, single.
sinister, -tra, -trum, left. **25.**
sīve (seu), *conj.*, or if. LXXVI.
sīve . . . sīve, whether . . . or.
socer, socerī, M. father-in-law.
socius, -ī, M. ally.
sōl, sōlis, M. the sun.
sōlum, *adv.*, only. LXXV.
solum, -ī, N. soil, ground.
sōlus, -a, -um (*gen.* **-īus,** *dat.* **-ī**), alone, only.
soror, -ōris, F. sister.
spatium, -ī, N. space, period.
spectō (1), look, face.
spērō (1) [**spēs**], hope, look for.
spēs, -ēī, F. hope.
spontis, *gen.*, **sponte,** *abl.*, of one's own accord, willingly.
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, set up, establish, determine.
studeō, -ēre, -uī, be eager for, desire.
studium, -ī, N. eagerness, attachment.
sub, *prep. c. acc.* or *abl.*, under, near, beneath. **24.**
sub-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, draw up *or* away, withdraw.
sub-eō, īre, iī, itus, go under *or* near, undergo.
sub-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, throw below, discharge; subject. **26.**
sub-levō (1), lift up, aid. **16.**
sub-sistō, -ere, stitī, stand still, withstand, resist.
sub-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be under *or* near.
sub-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, carry *or* bring up, convey.
suc-cēdō, -ere, cessī, sessus, go under *or* near, approach, succeed.
suī, sibi, sē [**sēse**], *reflex. pron. of 3d person.*, himself, herself, etc.
Sulla, -ae, M. **21.**
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be.
summa, -ae, F. highest point, sum. **29.**
sum-(sub) moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, remove.
summus, -a, -um (*pos.* **superus**), highest.
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take, claim.
sūmptus, -ūs, M. expense. **18.**
super, *adv.*, *and prep. c. acc.*, above, over.
superō (1), surpass, conquer. **17.**
super-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be over, survive.
superus, -a, -um, upper, high (*comp.* **superior**; *sup.* **suprēmus, summus**).
sup- (sub) petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus, be at hand *or* in store.
suppliciter, humbly. **27.**
supplicium, -ī, N. punishment. **19.**
sus-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus (**sub-**), undertake; undergo.
suspīciō (-pitio), -ōnis, F. mistrust, suspicion.
sus-tineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, hold up *or* out, sustain.
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.

T.

T, see **Titus.**
tabula, -ae, F. board, writing tablet. **29.**
taceō (2), be silent, keep silent.
tam, *adv.*, so.
tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, yet.
tandem, *adv.*, at length.
tantus, -a, -um, so great.
tēlum, -ī, N. dart, missile. LXII.
temperantia, -ae, F. self-control, moderation.
temperō (1), control, refrain.
temptō (tentō) (1), try, attack.
tempus, -oris, N. time.
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, hold.
terra, -ae, F. earth.
tertius, -a, -um, third.
testis, -is, M., F. witness.
Tigurīnus, -a, -um, LXXV.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear.
timor, -ōris, M. fear. **23.**
Titus (T.), -ī, M. a Roman praenomen.
tolerō (1), endure, support.
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, lift up take away, destroy.
Tolosātēs, -um, M. LXVI.

tōtus, -a, -um (*gen.* **-īus**, *dat.* **-ī**), all the whole of, entire.
trā-dō, -ere, didī, ditus, give over, hand down, surrender. **29.**
trā-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead across. LXIX.
trāgula, -ae, F. a Gallic javelin. **26.**
trāns, *prep. c. acc.*, across.
trāns-eō, īre, iī, itus, go across, cross.
trāns-fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, thrust through, transfix. **25.**
trecentī, -ae, -a, three hundred.
trēs, tria, three.
tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, assign, bestow, attribute.
trīduum, -ī, N. three days. **26.**
trīgintā, thirty.
triplex, -icis, threefold, triple. **24.**
Troucillus, -ī, M. **19.**
Tulingī, -ōrum, M. LI
tum, *adv.*, then.
tuus, -a, -um [**tū**, *thou*], thy, your.

U.

ubi, when, where.
ulciscor, -ī, ultus sum, avenge, punish. LXXV.
ūllus, -a, -um (*gen.* **-īus**, *dat.* **-ī**), any.
ulterior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, farther, ulterior.
ūnā, *adv.*, together. L.
unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence. **28.**
undique (**unde**), *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides.
ūnus, -a, -um (*gen.* **-īus**, *dat.* **-ī**), one.
urbs, urbis, F. city.
ut [**utī**], *conj.*, *c. subj.*, that, in order that, to; *adv. c. indicative*, as.
uter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* **-īus**, *dat.* **-ī**), which of two, which.
ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, use. L.
uxor, -ōris, F. wife.

V.

vacō (1), be vacant *or* unoccupied.
vadum -ī, N. ford, shoal.
vagor (1), wander.
valeō (2), be strong *or* powerful, avail.
vāllum, -ī, N. palisade, rampart. **26.**
vāstō (1), lay waste, devastate.
vectīgal, -ālis, N. tax, revenue. **18.**
vel, or; **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or. LIII.
veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come.
Verbigēnus, -ī, M. *a canton of the Helvetii.* **27.**
verbum, -ī, N. word.
vereor (2), reverence, fear.
vergō, -ere, incline, verge, be situated.
vergobretus, -ī, M. *the title of the chief magistrate of the Aeduans.*
Verucloetius, -ī, M. LVI.
vērus, -a, -um, true.
vesper, -eris [**erī**], M. evening.
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours.
veterānus, -a, -um, old veteran; *as subst.*, veteran soldier, veteran.
vetus, -eris, old, former.
vexō (1), harass. LXXIX.
via, -ae, F. way.
victōria, -ae, F. victory.
vīcus, -ī, M. village.
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; *in pass.*, be seen, seem.
vigilia, -ae, F. watch of the night, watch. LXXII.
vīgintī, twenty.
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus, conquer. **25.**
vinculum, -ī, N. bond. XLIV.
virtūs, -ūtis, F. virtue, valor.
vīs, vīs, F. force, violence; *pl.*, **vīrēs,** strength. LIII.
vīta, -ae, F. life. **16.**
vītō (1), shun, avoid.
vix, with difficulty, scarcely.
vocō (1), call, summon.
Vocontiī, -ōrum, M. LXIX.
volō, velle, voluī, wish.
voluntās, -tātis, F. willingness, choice, desire.
vōs [**tū**], *nom. and acc. pl.*, you.
vulgus (**volg-**), **-ī,** N., M. the multitude, public, rabble.
vulnerō (**vol-**) (1), wound, injure.
vulnus (**vol-**), **-eris,** N. a wound.

GLOSSARY (GLOSSARIUM).

THE Glossary is intended to furnish the Latin forms of grammatical terms and of words convenient for class-room conversation.

ablative, **ablātīvus, -a, -um** (*adj., sc.* **cāsus**).
absolute, **absolūtus, -a, -um.**
accent (noun), **accentus, -ūs,** M.
according to, **secundum** (*prep. with acc.*).
accusative, **accūsātīvus** (*adj., sc.* **cāsus**).
active, **āctīvus, -a, -um; agēns, -entis.**
adjective, **adiectīvum, -ī,** N.
advance (noun), **prōgressus, -ūs,** M.
advance (verb), **prōgredior** (3), **-gressus.**
adverb, **adverbium, -iī,** N.
agent, **agēns, agentis.**
agree, **congruō** (3), (*c. abl.*); **concordō** (1).
agreement, **concordātiō, -ōnis,** F.
alphabet, **alphabētum, -ī,** N.; **elementa, -ōrum,** N.
American **Americānus, -a, -um.**
answer (noun), **respōnsum, -ī,** N.
answer verb), **respondeō** (2).
antecedent, **antecēdēns, -entis.**
apposition, **appositiō, -ōnis,** F.

begin, **incipiō** (3) (*imperative,* **incipe,** *pl.* **incipite**).
beginning, **initium -ī,** N.; **prīncipium, -ī,** N., (*from the beginning,* **ā prīncipiō**).
ball, **pila, -ae,** F.
bell, **tintinnābulum, -ī,** N.
book, **liber, -brī,** M.
boy, **puer, -ī,** M.
breakfast, **prandium, -iī,** N.
brother, **frāter, -tris,** M.

campus, **campus, -ī,** M.
cardinal, **cardinālis, -e.**
case, **cāsus, -ūs,** M.
causal, **causālis, -e.**
cause, **causa, -ae,** F.
chair, **sella, -ae,** F., *and* **sēdis -is** F.
chapter, **caput, -itis,** N.
class, **classis, -is,** F.
classmate, schoolmate, **condiscipulus, -ī,** M.
clause, **incisiō, -ōnis,** F.
close (verb), **claudō,** (3), **-sī, -sus.**
coat, **tunica, -ae,** F.; **tēgmen, -minis,** N.; **vestis, -is,** F.
college, **collegium, -iī,** N.
come, **veniō** (4), **vēnī, ventus.**
common, **commūnis, -e;** common, appellative; **appellātīvus, -a, -um.**
comparative, **comparātīvus, -a, -um.**
compare, **cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.**
compound, **compositus, -a, -um,**
concessive, **concessīvus, -a, -um.**
condition, **condiciō, -ōnis.** F.
conditional, **condicionālis, -e.**
conjugation, **coniugātiō, -ōnis,** F.
conjunction, **coniūnctiō, -ōnis,** F.
consecutive (of a clause), **contextus, -a, -um.**

consonant, **cōnsonāns, -antis,** F. (*sc.* **līter**a); **cōnsona, -ae,** F.
construction, **cōnstrūctiō, -ōnis,** F.
conversation, **colloquium, -ī,** N.
converse, **colloquor** (3).
copula, **copula, -ae,** F.
correct, **rēctus, -a, -um.**
correctly, **rēctē.**
crayon, pencil, **graphium, -ī,** N.

daily newspaper, **diurna urbis ācta.**
dative, **datīvus** (*adj., sc.* **cāsus**), (*of agent*) **agentis,** &c.
declarative, **dēclārātīvus, -a, -um.**
declension, **dēclīnātiō, -ōnis,** F.
decline, **dēclīnō** (1) (*used both with nouns and verbs*).
declinable, **dēclīnābilis, -e.**
defective, **dēfectīvus, -a, -um.**
degree, **gradus, -ūs,** M.
degree of difference, **mēnsūrae** (*sc.* **ablātīvus**).
demonstrative, **dēmōnstrātīvus, -a, -um.**
deponent, **dēpōnēns, dēpōnentis.**
derive, **trahō** (3).
description, **dēscrīptiō, -ōnis,** F.
desire, **optātiō, -ōnis,** F.; **dēsīderium, -ī,** N.
desk, **scrīnium, -ī,** N.
determinative, **dēfīnītus, -a, -um.**
dictation, **dictātiō, -ōnis,** F.
dinner, **coena, -ae,** F.
diphthong, **diphthongus, -ī,** M.
direct discourse, **ōrātiō rēcta.**
discuss, **tractō,** 1; **agō** (3), **ēgī, āctus.**
dissyllable, **dissyllabus, -ī,** M.
distributive, **distribūtīvus, -a, -um.**
door, **ianua, -ae,** F.
drink, **bibō** (3) (*pf.*, **bibī**).

end (noun), **fīnis, -is,** M.
English, **Anglicus, -a, -um**; *in Eng.*, **Anglicē.**
erase; besmear, **linō** (3), **līvī** (**lēvī**), **litus.**
erasure, **litūra, -ae,** F.
essay, **disputātiō, -ōnis,** F.
etymology, **etymologia, -ae,** F.
evening, **vesper, -erī,** M.
examination, **exāminātiō, -ōnis,** F.
example, **exemplum, -ī,** N.
exception, **exceptiō, -ōnis,** F.
exercise, practice, **exercitātiō, -ōnis,** F.
exhortation, **hortātiō, -ōnis,** F.

father, **pater, patris,** M.
feminine, **fēminīnus, -a, -um**; **fēmineus, -a, -um.**
find, **inveniō** (4); **reperiō** (4), **-perī, -pertus.**
finite, **fīnītus, -a, -um.**
floor, **tabulātiō, -ōnis,** F.
flower, **flōs, flōris,** M.
flower (a little flower), **flōsculus, -ī,** M.
formation, **fōrmātiō, -ōnis,** F.
future, **futūrus, -a, -um.**
future perfect, **futūrum exāctum** (*sc.* **tempus**).
gender, **genus, generis,** N.
genitive, **genetīvus** (*adj., sc.* **cāsus**), **genitivus.** (Quint.)
gerund, **gerundium, -ī,** N.
gerundive, **gerundīvus, -a, -um** (*sc.* **modus**).
girl, **puella, -ae,** F.
give, **dōnō** (1).
go, **eō, īre, īvī** (**iī**) **itus.**
go on, proceed, **perge** (*pl.* **pergite**, *imper. of* **pergō**).
good-by, **valē.**
good-morning, **salve** (a general greeting,—"How are you?" "Save you" etc.).
governs (is joined with), **iungitur**; **coniungitur** (**cum**); **regit.**
grammar, **grammatica, -ōrum** (*pl., n.*); **grammatica, -ae,** F.
grass, **grāmen, grāminis,** N.
Greek, **Graecus, -a, -um**: *in Greek*, **Graecē.**

hand, **manus, -ūs,** F.
hat, cap, **galērus, -ī,** M.; **pilleum, -ī,** N.
hence, **hinc.**
here, **hīc.**
historical, **historicus, -a, -um.**
history, **historia, -ae,** F.
hither, **hūc.**

house, **domus, -ūs,** *and* **-ī,** F.
how? **quōmodo** (also relative).
how great? how much? **quantus, -a, -um** (also relative).
how many? **quot** (also relative).

imperative, **imperātīvus, -a, -um.**
imperfect, **imperfectus, -a, -um.**
impersonal, **impersōnālis, -e.**
in English, **Anglicē.**
inflect, **īnflectō** (3).
in Gallic, in French, **Gallicē.**
in Greek, **Graecē.**
in Latin, **Latīnē.**
increase, **crēscō** (3).
indeclinable, **indēclīnābilis, -e.**
indicative, **indīcātīvus** (*adj. sc.* **modus**).
indirect, **indīrēctus, -a, -um**; **oblīquus, -a, -um.**
indirect discourse, **ōrātiō oblīqua.**
infinitive, **īnfīnītīvus, -a, -um.**

instrument, **īnstrūmentum, -ī,** N.
interjection, **interiectiō, -ōnis,** F.
intransitive, **intrānsitīvus, -a, -um.**
irregular, **irregulāris, -e.**

janitor, **ianitor, -ōris,** M.

Latin, **Latīnus, -a, -um**; *in Latin*, **Latīnē.**
labial, **labiālis, -e.**
language, **lingua, -ae,** F; **sermō, sermōnis,** M.
learn, **discō** (3), **didicī.**
letter (of the alphabet), **littera,** (**lītera**) **-ae,** F.
letter (a written document), **litterae,** *pl.*, and **epistola, -ae,** F.
library; book-case, **librārium, -iī,** N.
limit, **līmitō** (1).
lingual, **linguālis, -e** (assumed).
liquid, **liquidus, -a, -um.**
locative, **locātīvus, -a, -um.**
long, **longus, -a, -um**; **prōductus, -a, -um.**

man, **homō, -inis,** M; **vir, -ī,** M.
manner, **modus, -ī,** M.
masculine, **masculīnus, -a, -um.**
mean, **significō** (1).
means, **īnstrūmentum, -ī,** N.
meaning, **significātiō, -ōnis,** F.
mistake (noun), **error, -ōris,** M.
mistake (verb), **errō** (1).
mode or mood, **modus, -ī,** M; **status, -ūs,** M.
monosyllable, **monosyllabum, -ī,** N. (*sc.* **verbum**).
morning, **māne** (*indecl.*).
mother, **mater, -tris,** F.
mute, **mūtus, -a, -um.**

negative, **negātīvus, -a, -um.**
news, **nova, -ōrum,** *pl.* N.
neuter, **neuter, -tra, -trum.**
no, **nōn, nōn est, minimē, minimē vērō** (by no means, no indeed).
nominative, **nōminātīvus** (*adj.*, *sc.* **cāsus**).
note (noun), **notātum, -ī,** N. (assumed); **annotātiō, -ōnis,** F.
note (verb), **notō** (1).
noun, **nōmen, nōminis,** N.
numeral, **numerālis, -e.**

object (gram. term), **obiectum, -ī,** N. (*really adj.*, *sc.* **verbum**) (assumed.
officer, **officiālis, -is,** M.
open, **aperiō** (4), **-ruī, -rtus.**
open (adj.), **apertus, -a, -um.**
optative, **optātīvus** (*adj.*, *sc.* **modus**).
oration, **ōrātiō, -ōnis,** F.
ordinal, **ōrdinālis, -e.**

page, **pāgina, -ae,** F.
palatal, **palātālis, -e** (assumed).
paradigm, **paradigma, -atis.** N.
part (of speech), **pars** or **fōrma** (**ōrātiōnis**).
participle, **participium, -iī,** N.
partitive, **partitīvus, -a, -um.**
passive (see *voice*).
perfect, **perfectus, -a, -um.**
periphrastic, **circuitus, -a, -um.**
person, **persōna, -ae,** F.
personal, **persōnālis, -e.**
phrase, **locūtiō, -ōnis,** F; **phrasis, -is,** F.

play (noun), **lūsiō, -ōnis,** F.
play (verb), **lūdō** (3).
pluperfect, **plūsquam perfectum** (*adj., sc.* **tempus**).
plural, **plūrālis, -e.**
positive, **positīvus, -a, -um.**
practice (noun), **exercitātiō, -ōnis,** F.
practice (verb), **exercitō** (1).
predicate, **praedicātīvus, -a, -um** (*sc.* **pars** or **rēs**).
prefer, **mālō, mālle, maluī.**
preparatory, **praeparātōrius, -a, -um.**
preposition, **praepositiō, -ōnis,** F.
present (adj.), **praesēns, -entis.**
president, **praeses, -idis,** M.
principal parts, **partēs prīmae** or **prīmāriae.**
prize, **donum, -ī,** N.
professor, **professor, -ōris,** M. F.
pronoun, **prōnōmen, -inis,** N.
pronunciation, **ēnūntiātiō, -ōnis,** F.
proper, **proprius, -a, -um.**
pupil, **discipulus, -ī,** M.
purpose, **fīnis, -is,** M.

quality, **quālitās, -tātis,** F.
quantity, **quantitās, -tātis,** F.; **cōpia, -ae,** F.
question, **quaestiō, -ōnis,** F.; **interrogātiō, -ōnis,** F.

rains (it rains), **pluit.**
read, **legō** (3).
recitation, **recitātiō, -ōnis,** F.
recite, **recitō** (1).
reference, **relātiō, -ōnis,** F.
reflexive, **reflexīvum** (verbum *aut* **prōnōmen**).
regular, **regulāris, -e.**
relative, **relātīvus, -a, -um.**
remember, **memoriā teneō, reminīscor** (3).
reply, **respondeō** (2), **-dī, -sus.**
result, **cōnsecūtiō, -ōnis,** F; **ēventus, -ūs,** M.
review (noun), **recōgnitiō, -ōnis,** F.
review (verb), **recōgnōscō** (3), **-nōvī, -nitus**; (review lesson) **pēnsum recōgnōscendum.**
roof, **tēctum, -ī,** N.
root, **rādīx, -īcis,** F.
rule (noun), **rēgula, -ae,** F.
rule (verb), **regō** (3).

school, **lūdus, -ī,** M; **schola, ae,** M.
search for, **investīgō** (1).
secondary, **secondārius, -a, -um.**
sentence, **sententia -ae,** F.
separation, **sēparātiō, -ōnis,** F.
sequence, **continuātiō, -ōnis,** F.
short, **brevis, -e.**
sibilant, **sībilus, -a, -um.**
sick, **aeger, -gra, -grum; aegrōtus, -a, -um.**
singular, **singulāris, -e.**
sister, **soror, -ōris,** F.
sit, **sedeō** (2), **sedī, sessus.**
sound, **sonus, -ī,** M.
specification, **respectus, -ūs,** M.
speech, **ōrātiō, -ōnis** (*see part of speech*).
stand, **stō** (1), **stetī, status.**
statement, **assertiō, -ōnis,** F.
stem, **basis, -is,** F.
study (noun), **studium, -ī,** N.
study (verb), **studeō** (2), **studuī**
substantive, **substantīvum, -ī,** N.
substantively, **substantīvē.**
subject, **subiectīva** (*adj., sc.* **pars** or **rēs**); **subiectīvum,** (*adj., sc.* **verbum**).
subjunctive, **subiūnctīvus, -a, -um; coniūnctīvus, -a, -um.**
subjunctive of characteristic, **subiūnctīvus** (**coniūnctīvus**), **dēscrīptiōnis.**
subordinate, **subiectus, -a, -um.**
suffice, **sufficiō** (3); *it is sufficient*, **sufficit; satis est.**
superlative, **superlātīvus, -a, -um.**
supine, **supīnum** (*adj., sc.* **verbum**).
supper, **vesperna, -ae,** F.
syllable, **syllaba, -ae,** F.
syntax, **syntaxis, -is,** F.

table, **mēnsa, -ae,** F.
teacher, **magister, -trī,** M; **magistra, -ae,** F; **praeceptor, -ōris.** M.
temporal, **temporālis, -e.**
tense, **tempus, -oris,** N.
term, **terminus, -ī,** M.
termination, **terminātiō, -ōnis,** F.

text, **textus, -ūs,** M.
thence, **illinc.**
there, **illīc.**
thither, **illūc.**
to-day, **hodiē.**
to-morrow, **crās.**
transitive, **trānsitīvus, -a, -um.**
translate into Latin, **in Latīnum verte (transfer, redde).**
treat, **tractō** (1).
tutor, **tūtor, -ōris,** M.

university, **ūniversitās, -tātis,** F.

vacation, holidays, **fēriae, -ārum** F.
verb, **verbum, -ī,** N.
vocabulary, **vocābulārium, -ī,** N. **index vocābulōrum (verbōrum).**
vocative, **vocātīvus** (*adj.*, *sc.* **cāsus**).
voice, **vōx, -cis,** F.
voice, (gram.), **modus, -ī,** M., **vōx, -cis,** F.
voice, active, **faciendī modus; vōx actīva.**
voice, passive, **patiendī modus; vōx passīva.**
vowel, **vocālis** (*adj.*, *sc.* **lītera**).

walk, **ambulō** (1).
water, **aqua, -ae,** F.
well, be well, in good health, **valeō** (2), **-uī.**
what kind of? (*relative*, of which kind), **quālis, -e.**
when, **cum**; *interrog.*, **quandō.**
whence? **unde** (*also relative*).
where? **ubi, quō in locō** (*also relative*).
which? **quis** *et* **quī, quae, quod** (*also relative*).
whither? **quō** (*also relative*).
why?, **cūr, quārē, quā dē causā** (*also relative*).
window, **fenēstra, -ae,** F.
wish, **volō, velle, voluī.**
woman, **mulier, mulieris,** F.
word, **verbum, -ī,** N.; **vōx, vōcis,** F.

yesterday, **herī** (*adv.*), **hēsternō diē.**
yes, **certē, certissimō, ita, ita est, ista sunt.**

14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or on the date to which renewed.
Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

LIBRARY USE

ICLF (N)

JUL 22 1961
REC'D LD
JUL 22 1961
26Aug'61BS
IN STACKS
AUG 12 1961
REC'D LD
AUG 28 1961
DEC 1 1967 92
IN STACKS
AUG 30 1976

REC'D
DEC 15 '67-3 PM
LOAN DEPT.
SEP 24 1976
REC. CIR. OCT 5 '76

LD 21A–50m-12,'60
(B6221s10)476B

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

YB 38091